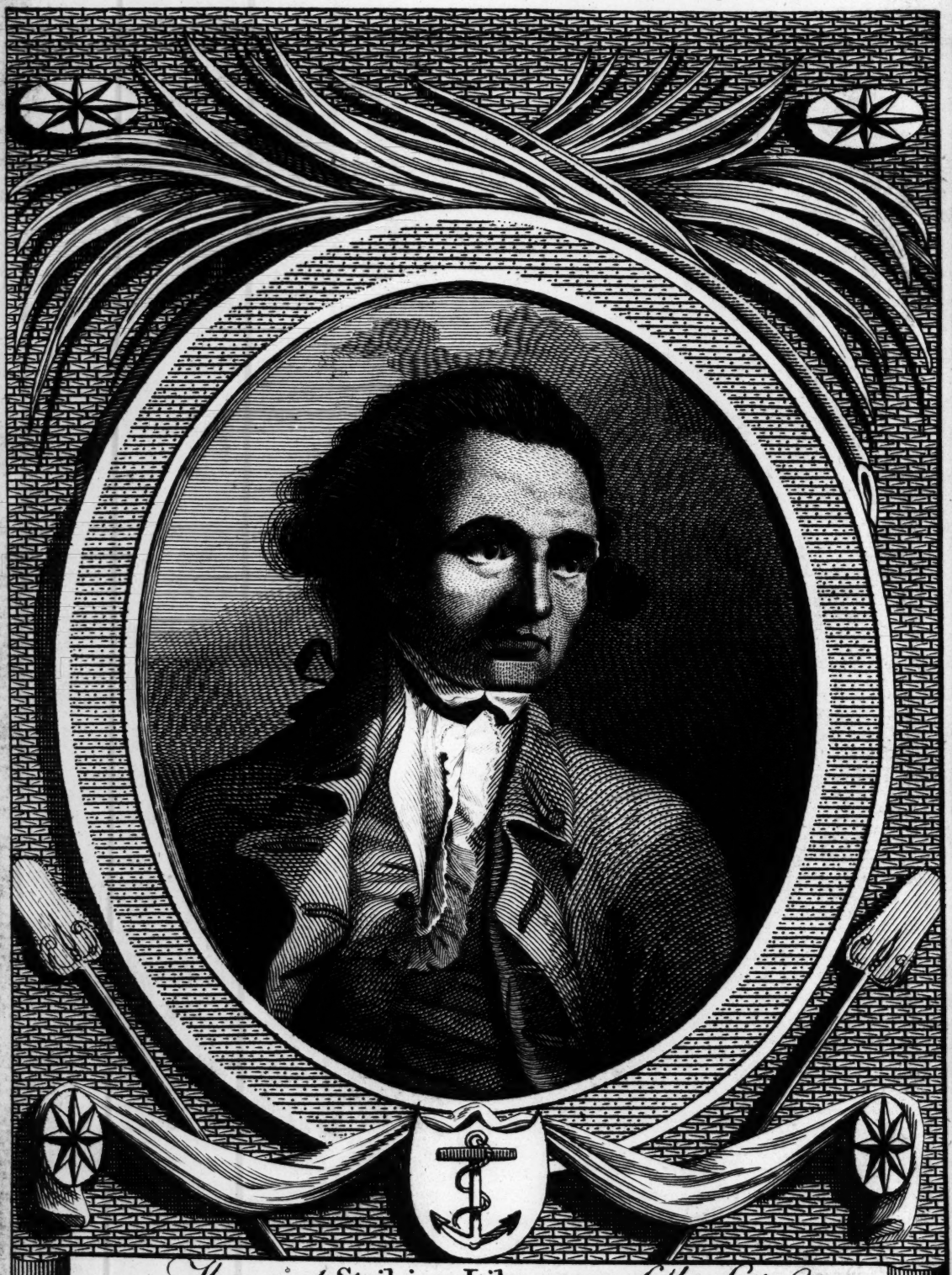
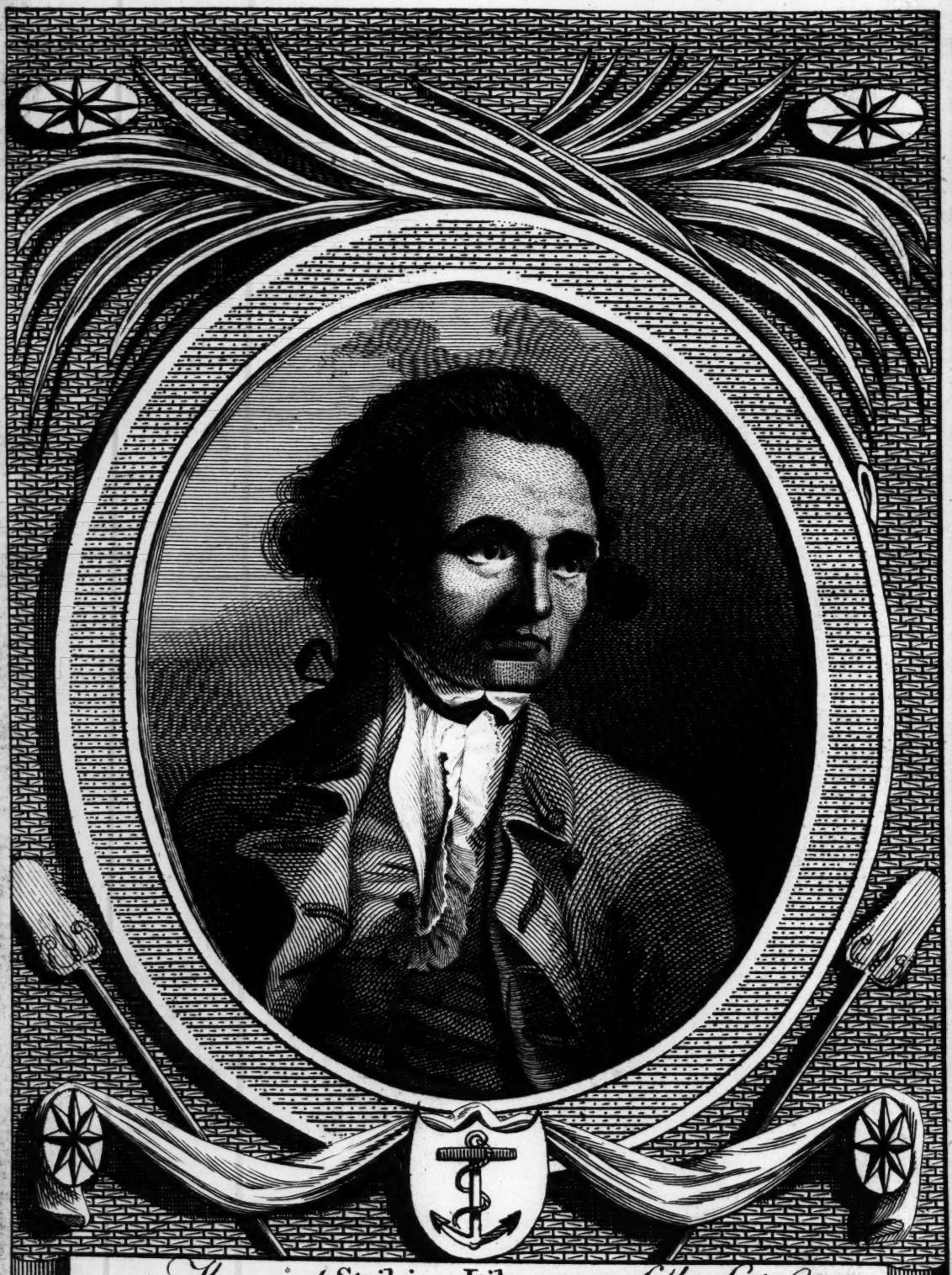
FRONTISPIECE *to*
HOGG's Cheap & Elegant OCTAVO Edition *of* COOK's VOYAGES, &c. Complete.



The most Striking Likeness *of the Late*
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, *F.R.S.*
HIS FIRST VOYAGE performed in the Years, 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771.
—— SECOND VOYAGE —— 1772, 1773, 1774, 1775.
—— THIRD VOYAGE —— 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, 1780.
He was Born at Marton in the North Riding of Yorkshire Nov.r 3. 1728, and unfortunately Killed by the Savages of the Island O Whyhee, Feb.y 14. 1779.

Accurately Engraved by M.r Thornton from the Original Picture in the Possession of G. M.r Anderson &c.
Published by Alex.r Hogg at the King's Arms, N.o 16 Paternoster Row, Jan. 21. 1784.

FRONTISPIECE *to*
HOGG's Cheap & Elegant OCTAVO Edition *of* COOK's VOYAGES, &c. Complete.



The most Striking Likeness *of the Late*
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, *F.R.S.*
HIS FIRST VOYAGE performed in the Years, 1768, 1769, 1770, 1771.
—— SECOND VOYAGE —— 1772, 1773, 1774, 1775.
—— THIRD VOYAGE —— 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, 1780.
He was Born at Marton in the North Riding of Yorkshire Nov.r 3. 1728, and unfortunately Killed by the Savages of the Island O Whyhee, Feb.y 14. 1779.

Accurately Engraved by M.r Thornton from the Original Picture in the Possession of G. M.r Anderson &c.
Published by Alex.r Hogg at the King's Arms, N.o 16 Paternoster Row, Jan. 21. 1784.

A NEW, AUTHENTIC, and COMPLETE COLLECTION of

Voyages Round the World:

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By ROYAL AUTHORITY.

Containing a NEW, AUTHENTIC, ENTERTAINING, INSTRUCTIVE, FULL, and COMPLETE HISTORICAL ACCOUNT OF

Captain COOK's

Firſt, Second, Third and Laſt

VOYAGES,

UNDERTAKEN

By Order of his PRESENT MAJESTY,

For making NEW DISCOVERIES, &c. *viz.*

His FIRST, *undertaken* and *performed* in the *Endeavour*, in the Years 1768, 1769, 1770, and 1771, for obſerving the Tranſit of Venus, and making *Diſcoveries* in the *Southern Hemiſphere*, &c.

His SECOND—in the *Reſolution* and *Adventure*, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775, for making further *Diſcoveries* towards the *South Pole*, and *round the World*.

His THIRD and LAST—in the *Reſolution* and *Diſcovery*, to the *Pacific Ocean*, in the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780, for making *Diſcoveries* in the *Northern Hemiſphere*, &c. Comprehending the *Life* and *Death* of *Capt. Cook*, &c. Together with *Capt. Furneaux's Narrative* of his *Proceedings* in the *Adventure* during the *Separation* of the Ships in the *Second Voyage*, during which Period *ſeveral* of his *people* were *deſtroyed* by the *Natives* of *Queen Charlotte's Sound*.

TO WHICH WILL BE ADDED,

Genuine *Narratives* of *other Voyages* of *Diſcovery Round* the *World*, &c. viz. thoſe of Lord BYRON, Capt. WALLIS, Capt. CARTERET, Lord MULGRAVE, Lord ANSON, Mr. PARKINSON, Capt. LUTWIDGE, Meſſ. IVES, MIDDLETON, SMITH, &c. &c. Including the Subſtance of all the moſt remarkable and important *Travels* and *Journeys*, which have been undertaken at various Times to the different Quarters of the World.

THE WHOLE COMPREHENDING

A full ACCOUNT, from the EARLIEST PERIOD, to the preſent Time, Of whatever is curious, entertaining, and uſeful, both by Sea and Land, in the various Countries of the known World; being the moſt elegant and perfect Work of the Kind. Illuſtrated with a vaſt Number of COPPER PLATES finely engraved by the moſt eminent Maſters.

This OCTAVO EDITION of COOK's VOYAGES, &c. Newly written by the EDITORS, from the AUTHENTIC JOURNALS of ſeveral PRINCIPAL OFFICERS and OTHER GENTLEMEN of the moſt diſtinguiſhed *Naval* and *Philoſophical Abilities*, who *ſailed* in the *various Ships*.

The WHOLE now *Reviſed*, *Corrected*, and *Improved*,

By Capt. JOHN HOGG, late of the Royal Navy.



LONDON:

Printed for ALEX. HOGG, at the KING's-ARMS, No. 16, Pater-noſter-Row.



The PREFACE.

THE great Utility and very intereſting Nature of the important FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD VOYAGES and DISCOVERIES of the late Capt. Cook, are acknowledged by all Ranks of People; conſequently it might be deemed impertinent here to attempt any Encomiums on the arduous but exact Reſearches of this eminent and valuable Navigator, in which Diſcoveries have been made far greater than thoſe of all the other Navigators in the World, from the Expedition of Columbus to the preſent Time. Capt. Cook is unqueſtionably allowed to have been the ableſt and moſt renowned Circumnavigator this or any other Country has produced; and every enlightened Nation muſt deplore his being unfortunately killed by the Savages of the Iſland Owhyhee on the 14th of February 1779, when proſecuting his THIRD VOYAGE round the Globe.

This great Man poſſeſſed, in an eminent Degree, all the Qualifications requiſite for his Profeſſion and great Undertakings. He was cool and deliberate in judging; ſagacious in determining; active in executing; ſteady and perſevering in Enterprizes; vigilant, with unremitting Caution; unſubdued by Labour, Difficulties, and Diſappointments; fertile in Expedients; never wanting Preſence of Mind; always poſſeſſing himſelf of the full Uſe of a ſound Underſtanding; mild, juſt, but exact in Diſcipline. His Knowledge, his Experience, his Sagacity, rendered him ſo intirely Maſter of his Subject, that the greateſt Obſtacles were ſurmounted, and the moſt dangerous Navigations became eaſy, and almoſt ſafe under his Direction. He explored the Southern Hemiſphere, &c. to a much higher Latitude than had ever been reached, and with fewer Accidents than frequently befall thoſe who navigate the Coaſts of Great Britain. By his Attention to the Welfare of his Ship's Company, he diſcovered and introduced

troduced a Syſtem for the Preſervation of the Health of Seamen in long Voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious: for in his SECOND VOYAGE round the World, which continued upwards of Three Years, he loſt only one Man by Diſtemper, of One Hundred and Eighteen Perſons, of whom his Company conſiſted.

The Death of this valuable Man was a Loſs to Mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored by every Nation that reſpects uſeful Accompliſhments, and honours Science. It is ſtill more to be deplored by this Country, which may juſtly boaſt of having produced a Man hitherto unequalled for nautical Talents; and that Sorrow is farther aggravated by the Reflection, that his Country was deprived of this Ornament by the Enmity of a People, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded, but from whom it was not deſerved: for, Capt. Cook frequently interpoſed, at the Hazard of his Life, to protect theſe very People from the ſudden Reſentment of his own injured Ship's Crew. Let us contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate this great Navigator; whoſe Skill and Labours have enlarged natural Philoſophy; have extended nautical Science; and have diſcloſed the long concealed and admirable Arrangements of the Almighty in the Formation of this Globe, and at the ſame Time the Arrogance of Mortals, in preſuming to account, by their Speculations, for the Laws by which he was pleaſed to create it. It is now diſcovered, beyond all doubt, that the ſame Great Being who created the Univerſe by his *Fiat*, by the ſame ordained our Earth to keep a juſt Poiſe, without a correſponding Southern Continent. The arduous and accurate Reſearches of this extraordinary Man, have diſcovered Seas unnavigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with Iſlands, People, and Productions, of which we had no Conception: and he will be revered, while there remains this authentic Account of his Three reſpective Voyages, and as long as Mariners and Geographers ſhall trace the various Courſes and Diſcoveries he has made.

During

During the *Three* long and tedious *Voyages* in which he was engaged, his Eagerneſs and Activity were never in the leaſt abated. No incidental Temptation could detain him for a Moment; even thoſe Intervals of Recreation, which ſometimes unavoidably occurred, and were looked for with a longing, that Perſons who have experienced the Fatigues of Service, will readily excuſe, were ſubmitted to by him with a certain Impatience, whenever they could not be employed in making further Proviſion for the more effectual Proſecution of his Deſigns.

It is not neceſſary here to enumerate the particular Inſtances in which theſe Qualities were diſplayed, during the great and important Enterprizes in which he was engaged. We ſhall content ourſelves now with ſtating the Reſult of thoſe Services, under the two principal Heads to which they may be referred, thoſe of Geography and Navigation, placing each in a ſeparate and diſtinct Point of View.

Perhaps no Science ever received greater Additions from the Labours of a ſingle Man, than Geography has done from thoſe of Captain Cook. In his *firſt Voyage* to the *South Seas*, he diſcovered the *Society Iſlands*; determined the Inſularity of *New Zealand*; diſcovered the *Straits* which ſeparate the *two Iſlands*, and are called *after* his *Name*, and made a *complete Survey* of *both*. He afterwards explored the *Eaſtern Coaſt* of *New Holland*, hitherto unknown, an Extent of Twenty-ſeven Degrees of Latitude, or upwards of Two Thouſand Miles.

In his *ſecond Voyage* round the World, he reſolved the great Problem of a *Southern Continent*; having traverſed that Hemiſphere between the Latitudes of Forty and Seventy Degrees, in ſuch a Manner, as not to leave a Poſſibility of its Exiſtence, unleſs near the Pole, and out of the Reach of Navigation. During this Voyage, he diſcovered *New Calidonia*, the largeſt Iſland in the *Southern Pacific*, except *New Zealand*; the *Iſland* of *Georgia*, and an *unknown Coaſt*, which he named *Sandwich Land*, the *Thule* of the *Southern Hemiſphere*; and having twice viſited the *Tropical Seas*, he

he ſettled the Situations of the *old*, and made ſeveral *new Diſcoveries*, all of which (as well as *thoſe* inthe *Firſt Voyage*) ſhall be particularized in the following Sheets.

But his *third Voyage* (a full Account of which we ſhall *alſo* give in this Work) is diſtinguiſhed by the Extent and Importance of its Diſcoveries. Beſides ſeveral *ſmaller Iſlands* in the *Southern Pacific*, he diſcovered to the *North* of the Equinoctial Line, the *Groupe* called the *Sandwich Iſlands*; which, from their Situations and Productions, bid fairer for becoming an Object of Conſequence, in the Syſtem of *European Navigation*, than any other *Diſcovery* in the *South Sea*. He afterwards explored, what had hitherto remained unknown, of the Weſtern Coaſt of America, from the Latitude of forty-three to ſeventy Degrees North, containing an Extent of *three Thouſand five Hundred Miles*; aſcertained the *Proximity* of the *Two great Continents* of *Aſia* and *America*; paſſed the *Streights* between *them*, and *ſurveyed* the *Coaſt* on *each Side*, to ſuch a Height of *Northern Latitude*, as to demonſtrate the *Impracticability* of a *Paſſage* in *that Hemiſphere*, from the *Atlantic* into the *Pacific Ocean*, either by an *Eaſtern* or a *Weſtern Courſe*. In ſhort, if we except the Sea of Amur, and the Japaneſe Archipelago, which ſtill remain but imperfectly known to Europeans, he has completed the Hydrography of the habitable Globe.

The Public Curioſity being excited to the higheſt Degree reſpecting Capt. Cook's Voyages (particularly his *Third* and *Laſt* Expedition to the Pacific Ocean) it is neceſſary to caution the Public againſt the Impoſition of all mutilated, imperfect, and ſpurious Editions, Abridgements, and Compendiums of theſe Works; ſuch Publications not being calculated to convey to the Reader that Satisfaction ſo naturally expected. The Work now reſpectfully offered to the Public, will contain a Full Account of Capt. Cook's Voyages Complete, with all the fine ſplendid Copper-plates. It is unneceſſary to point out the obvious Imperfections of all Publications which include only a *ſingle* Voyage of the very celebrated Capt. Cook; his *Three* different *Voyages* are ſo immediately connected together,

together, that owing to frequent References from one to another, no Perſon can form a ſatisfactory Idea of his valuable Diſcoveries, who does not read his *Firſt*, *Second*, and *Third Voyages*, in the order in which they were performed and written: In the preſent very *complete*, *improved*, and *genuine Edition* (for which numerous Readers have been waiting with Impatience) we therefore conſider it as our indiſpenſible Duty to begin with a full Account of his *Firſt Voyage* round the World; after which we ſhall record an authentic Hiſtory of his *Second Voyage*; and then proceed to a full, faithful and accurate Relation of his much admired *Third* and laſt *Voyage* round the Globe, being that principally undertaken for new Diſcoveries in the Pacific Ocean, &c. &c. and in the Proſecution of which he unfortunately loſt his Life, all the Particulars of which we ſhall hereafter relate.

This Work will be illuſtrated with (beſides the curious and intereſting Cuts for his FIRST and SECOND VOYAGES, &c. all the elegant, ſplendid, and fine COPPER-PLATES, belonging to his THIRD and LAST VOYAGE, being Views of Places, Portraits of Perſons, and hiſtorical Repreſentations of remarkable Incidents, during this celebrated Navigator's VOYAGE to the PACIFIC OCEAN; together with the neceſſary Maps, Charts, Plans, Draughts, &c. ſhewing the Tracks of the Ships, and relating to Countries now firſt diſcovered, or hitherto but imperfectly known; the Whole (amounting to between ONE and TWO HUNDRED moſt ELEGANT and SUPERB ENGRAVINGS) finely engraved and accurately copied from the Originals by the moſt eminent Maſters. Therefore, by the Publication of this Genuine and COMPLETE COLLECTION of the Whole of Captain COOK's VOYAGES, &c. in OCTAVO, all Ranks of Perſons whatever may be accommodated, and the Public Curioſity, ſo naturally excited by the Report of ſuch EXTRAORDINARY VOYAGES and DISCOVERIES, will be immediately and cheaply gratified.—The Poor as well as the Rich will thus become familiarly acquainted with theſe extraordinary and important Voy-

ages and Diſcoveries, in the Performance and Proſecution of which ſuch vaſt Sums of the Public Money have been expended.

To the Whole Diſcoveries and Voyages of Capt. Cook, we ſhall add (to make our *Collection* complete) Narratives of other Voyages of Diſcovery round the World, &c. undertaken, performed, and written by Engliſh Circumnavigators, &c. under the Sanction of Government, viz. thoſe of Lord Byron, Capt. Wallis, Capt. Carteret, Lord Mulgrave, Lord Anſon, Mr. Parkinſon, Capt. Lutwidge, Meſſ. Ives, Middleton, Smith, &c. &c. &c. Including alſo the Subſtance of all the moſt remarkable and important Travels and Journeys, which have been undertaken at various Times to the different Quarters of the World, particularly thoſe of Hanway, Hamilton, Herbert, Drummond, Pocock, Shaw, Stuart, Kalm, Carver, Dalrymple, Burnet, Addiſon, Barretti, Keyſler, Thickneſs, Twiſs, Brydone, Chandler, Johnſon, Smollet, Moore, Wraxall, &c.

To the KING,

To the LORDS COMMISSIONERS of the ADMIRALTY,

To the CAPTAINS and OFFICERS of the Royal Navy,

AND

To the PUBLIC at Large;

The following New, Genuine, and Complete HISTORICAL ACCOUNT of

The WHOLE of Capt. COOK's VOYAGES, &c.

In large OCTAVO, embelliſhed with elegant and ſplendid COPPER-PLATES,

Is moſt humbly Dedicated,

By his MAJESTY'S

And the PUBLIC'S

Moſt obedient and devoted Servants,

The EDITOR and PUBLISHER.

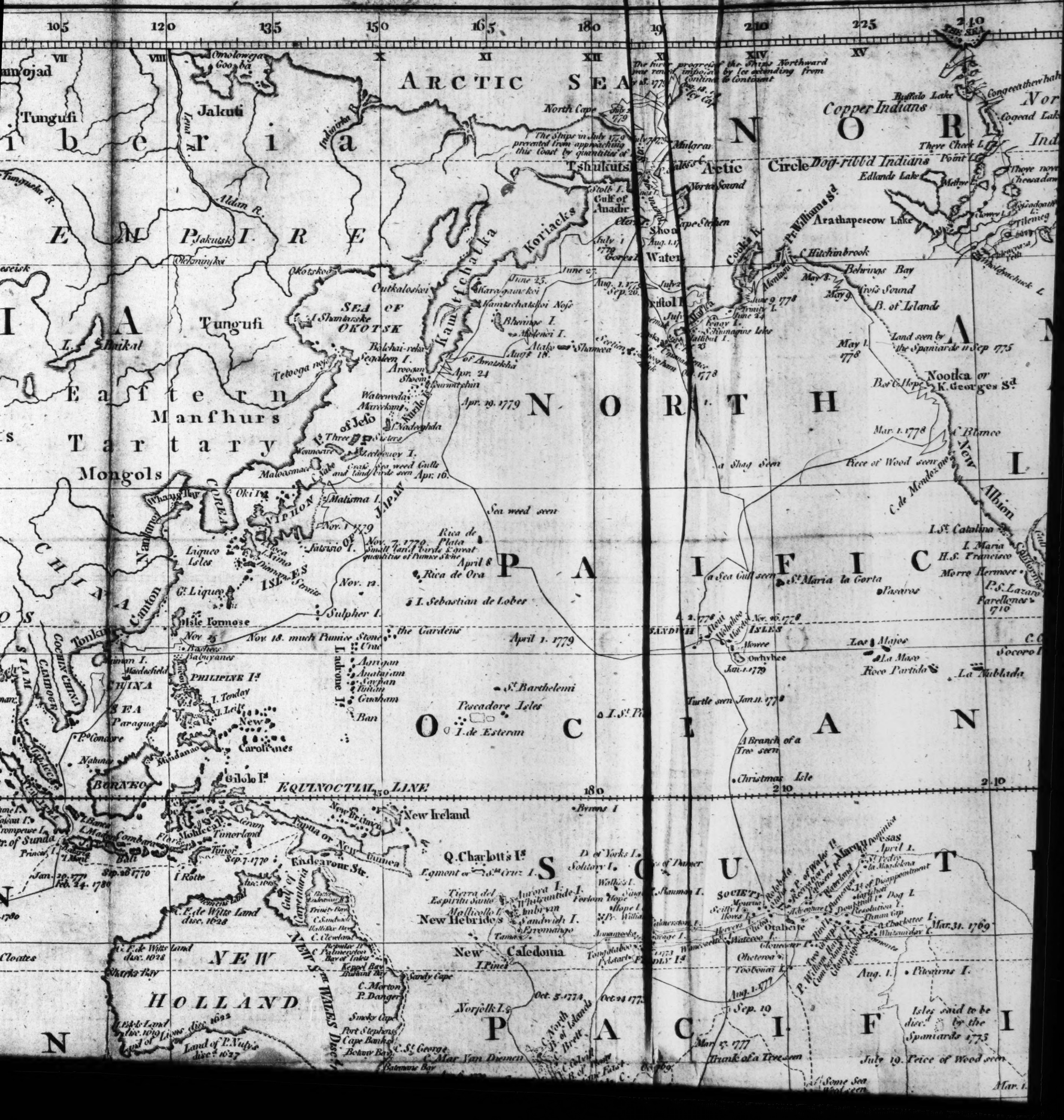
A New

xhibiting the DISCOVERIES made by Capt.n Ja

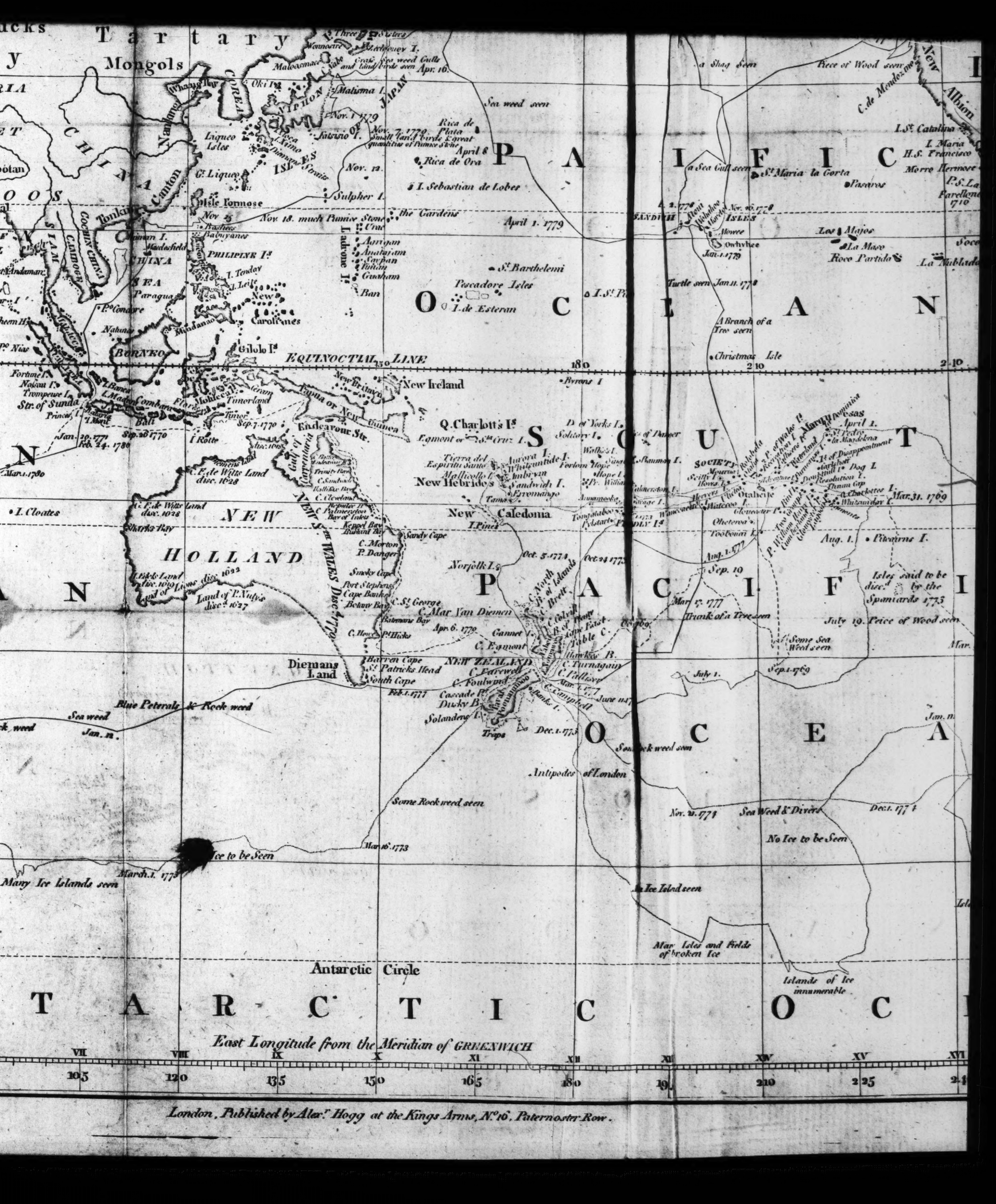
ARCTIC SEA
Greenland
Iceland
North Cape
Nova Zembla
Samojad
Archangel
RUSSIAN E
Tobolsk
Jeneseisk
Kalmucks
Kalmucks Tartary
Aral L.
L. Tengis
L. Telleguil
Caspian Sea
Sea of Azof
Wolga R.
Kama R.
Obiana G.
Inter Tungusha R.
Lena R.
Tunguf
Lapland
Finland
Sweden
Gulf of Bothnia
Baltic Sea
Riga
Narva
Petersburg
Moscow
Warsaw
Poland
Germany
Hungary
Vienna
Turkey in Europe
France
Paris
Rochefort
Genoa
Corsica
Minorca
Majorca
Sicily
Candy I.
Spain
Madrid
Gibraltar
Azores
Canary Isles
Madeira
Algiers
Barbary
Tripoli
Morocco
Mediterranean Sea
Desart of Barbary or Zahara
Egypt
Nile R.
Turkey in Asia
Armenia
Euphrates
Syria
Persia
Cabul
Bukaria
Thibet
Delhi
Makran
Sindy
Agra
Oude
Bootan
Hindoos
Bengal
Bay of Bengal
Arabia
Mecca
Deriabe
Straits of Bab el mandeb
Socotra
Lackadive Is.
Ceylon I.
Maldive Is.
Malabar
Coromandel
Ethiopia
Negroland
Nubia
Guinea
Africa
Ocean
Atlantic Ocean
Indian Ocean
Southern Ocean
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
Equator
Cape Verd
Cape Verd Is.
Cape Palmas
Cape Lopez Gonsalves
Cape Negro
Cape Padron
Cape Lobos
Cape Bojador
Cape Blanco
Cape Barbas
Cape Corrientes
Cape Agulhas
Cape Good Hope
Cape Comorin
Cape Guardafui
Cape Delgado
Cape Antonio Viana
Cape St Mary
Cape Lopez
Cape Formosa
Cape Three Points
Cape Lahou
Cape Lopez
Cape Negro
Cape Lopez
Cape Lopez
Cape Lopez

A GENERAL CHART:

...t. JAMES COOK in his FIRST, SECOND and THIRD VOYAG... with the TRACKS of the SHIPS under his Com...

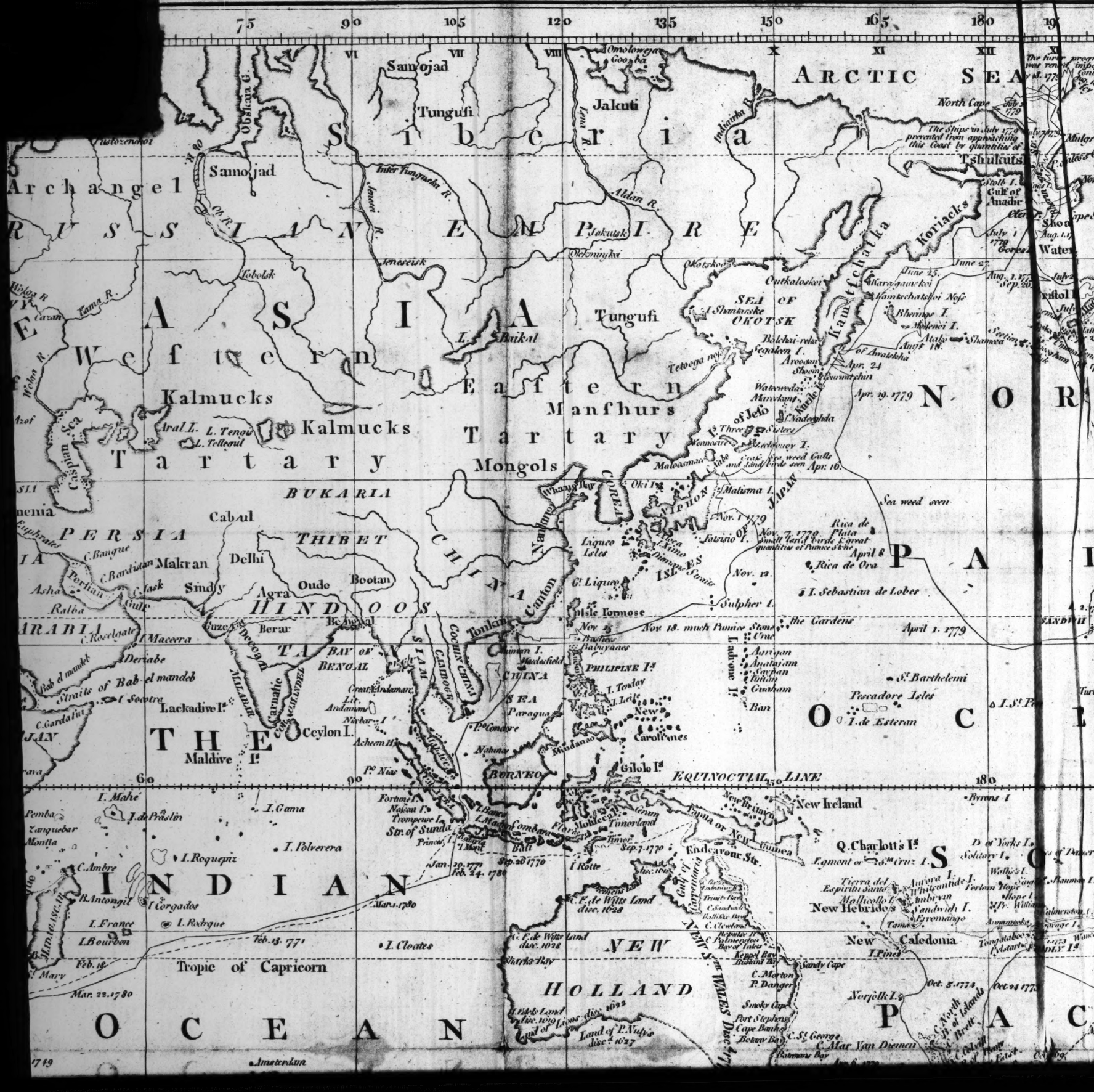



EUROPE
ASIA
AFRICA
Tartary
Kalmucks
BUKARIA
PERSIA
THIBET
HINDOOS
TAN
Armenia
Cabul
Delhi
Makran
Sindy
Agra
Oude
Bootan
Bengal
BAY OF BENGAL
ARABIA
EGYPT
NUBIA
ABYSSINIA
NEGROLAND
GUINEA
ETHIOPIA
BARBARY
MOROCCO
SAHARA or Desart of Barbary
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
Equator
SPAIN
Madrid
Algiers
Azores
Canary Isles
C. Verd Is.
Maldive Is.
Ceylon I.
Lackadive Is.
Socotra
Mozambique
Madagascar
Comorro Is.
Amsterdam
St. Paul
Desert Isles
Prince Edward Isles
Sea Weed & Divers
North Cape
I. of Desolation
Rock weed
Signs of Land
An Ice Island seen
Many Islands of Ice
Many Ice Is
Many Islands & firm fields of Ice
Islands of Ice
Sandwich Land
Southern Thule
Coughs I.
Tristan da Cunha
I. Diego Alvarez
Ascention I.
St. Helena
Trinidada I.
Saxenburg I.
Table B.
Falso B.
Soldanha B.
Walvish B.
Esperitu Santo
HOTENTOTS
C. of GOOD HOPE
Str. of Gibraltar
Str. of Babelmandeb
Str. of Mozambique
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Malabar Coast
Carnatic
Coromandel Coast
Deccan
Ganges R.
Nile R.
Niger R.
R. Gambia
R. Senegal
R. Congo
R. Mozambique
Maberia Lake
Bournon
Denia
Aug. 26. 1771
June 1780
Sep. 10
May 5. 1775
Oct. 11. 1772
Oct. 22. 1772
Dec. 1. 1772
Dec. 7. 1772
Dec. 11. 1776
Dec. 14
Dec. 24
Dec. 25.
Jan. 25.
Feb. 1. 1773
Feb. 17. 1775
Feb. 17
Jan. 1. 1777
Jan. 1773
Mar. 1. 1775
Mar. 10. 1771
Mar. 22. 1780
Feb. 18
Feb. 23. 1771
Mar. 1780
Sep. 8 1772
May 5. 1771
Oct. 25. 1768
Oct. 11. 1776
dec. 1749
Many Islands of Ice
Many Islands & firm fields of Ice
Islands & small fields of broken Ice
Islands & vast Fields of broken Ice
330
345
0
15
30
45
60
75
90
XXII
XXIII
I
II
III
IV
V
VI
10
20
30
40
50
60
70

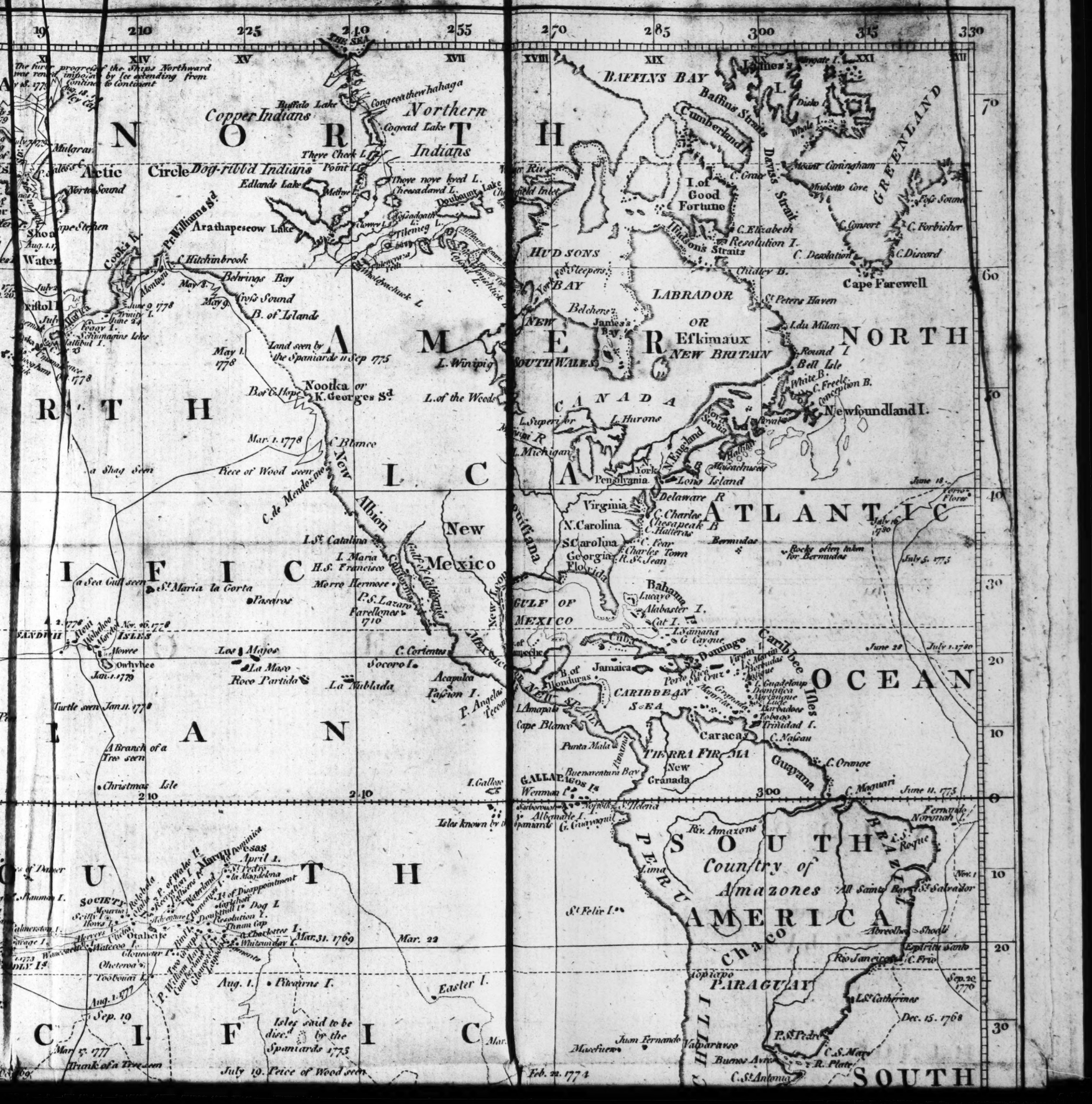

Tartary
Mongols
CHINA
COREA
JAPAN
Nankin
Canton
Cochin China
Siam
Tonkin
Philippine Is
Bornéo
Gilolo Is
Moluccas
Celebes
Timor
Java
Sumatra
Str. of Sunda
Banda
Ceram
Mindanao
Carolines
Pelew Is
Ladrone Is
Marianne Is
Bashees
Babuyanes
Formosa
Matsima I.
Sulphur I.
Isle Pomose
Pescadore Isles
Gaspar I.
Mandelsfield I.
Andaman
Paragua
Natuna
Nias
Fortune I.
Natoua I.
Trompeuse I.
Prince's I.
Mauritius
Bourbon
Madagascar
Cambaye
Malacca
Aleutian Is
Oki I.
Whaling Bay
Malcosmacs Lake
Liqueo Isles
C. Liqueo
Equinoctial Line
New Britain
New Ireland
Byrons I.
Papua or New Guinea
Endeavour Str.
Gulf of Carpentaria
New Hebrides
Tierra del Espiritu Santo
Malicollo I.
Aurora I.
Whitsuntide I.
Imbrean
Sandwich I.
Erromango
Tanna
New Caledonia
I. Pines
Norfolk I.
Q. Charlotte's Is
Egmont or Sta Cruz I.
Solitary I.
D. of Yorks I.
Walkes I.
Pr. William Henry's I.
Pr. Williams I.
Lagoon I.
Palmerston I.
Duke of Glocester I.
Duke of Clarence I.
Queen Charlotte's I.
Prince of Wales I.
Resolution I.
Duke of Cumberland I.
Hervey I.
Scilly I.
Mowrie
Hows
Otaheite
Matavai
Oheteroa's
Toobouai I.
Tongatabou
Feejee Is
Society Is
Saumarez I.
Bird I.
Dog I.
Whitsunday I.
Thurston I.
Isles of Disappointment
Isles of Danger
Isles of Navigators
Isles of Traitors
Isles of Contrariety
Isles of Monkeys
Isles of Prospect
Isles of Misfortune
Isles of Sacrifices
Isles of Harmony
Isles of Hope
Isles of Reconciliation
Isles of Thieves
Isles of Treachery
Isles of Sandwich
Isles of Mendana
Isles of Solomon
Isles of Queen Mary
Isles of Queen Charlotte
Isles of Queen Elizabeth
Isles of Queen Sophia
Isles of Queen Augusta
Isles of Queen Caroline
Isles of Queen Amelia
Isles of Queen Anne
Isles of Queen Mary

A GENERAL CHART:

COVERIES made by Capt.n JAMES COOK in his FIRST, SECOND and THIRD VOYAG with the T


75
90
105
120
135
150
165
180
VI
VII
VIII
X
XI
XII
ARCTIC SEA
Samojad
Tunguſi
Jakuti
Siberia
Archangel
RUSSIAN EMPIRE
Obſkaia G.
Jenisei R.
Lena R.
Indigirka
Aldan R.
Yakutsk
Tobolsk
Jeneseisk
Okotsk
Kamtſchatka
Koriacks
North Cape
Tshukutskoi
Gulf of Anadir
SEA OF OKOTSK
Shantzkoi I.
Kamtſchatkoi Noſe
Beering I.
Medenei I.
Awatska
Shamſka
Outkaloskoi
Marygangskoi
Balchai-reka
Segalen I.
Aroogan
Shoom
Paramuſhir
Watenwdai
Marekant
Kurile Is.
Nadeshda
Is. Three Sisters
Wonnocutte
Maloasmack
Crake
Sea weed Gulls and Land birds ſeen Apr. 16.
Apr. 19. 1779
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
Aſia
Weſtern Tartary
Eaſtern Tartary
Kalmucks
Manſhurs
Mongols
Aral L.
L. Tengis
L. Telleguil
Caſpian Sea
Baikal L.
Tetuega R.
BUKARIA
Cabul
PERSIA
THIBET
CHINA
Delhi
Makran
Sindy
Agra
Oude
Bootan
HINDOOS
Canton
Nankang
Pekin
Ohio I.
Matisma I.
Sea weed ſeen
Nov. 1 1779
Rica de Plata
Liqueo Isles
Diamond Iſlands
Nov. 12.
Rica de Ora
I. Sebaſtian de Lobos
Iſle Formoſe
Sulpher I.
the Gardens
April 1. 1779
Nov. 18. much Pumice Stone
Bashees
Babuyanes
PHILIPINE Is
Ladrone Is
Aarigan
Anatajam
Guaham
St. Bartholemi
Pescadore Isles
I. de Eſteran
I. Tenday
I. Leite
New Carolines
Gilolo I.
BORNEO
EQUINOCTIAL LINE
Celebes
Banda Is.
Timor
Timorland
Molucca Is.
Ceram
Papua or New Guinea
New Ireland
Byrons I.
Q. Charlott's Is.
Egmont or Sta Cruz I.
Endeavour Str.
New Hebrides
Tierra del Eſpiritu Santo
Malliccollo I.
Imbrian
Sandwich I.
Eſtromango
Tanna
New Caledonia
I. Pines
Norfolk I.
Whitſuntide I.
Aurora I.
Montpelier I.
Portlock Hope I.
Hope I.
Palmerſton I.
Savage I.
Mallicolo
Tongataboo
Middleburg I.
Amſterdam
INDIAN OCEAN
Pemba
Zanquebar
Monfia
I. Mahe
I. de Praslin
I. Gama
I. Polverera
I. Roquepiz
C. Ambre
B. Antongil
I. Corgados
I. France
I. Bourbon
I. Rodrigue
I. Cloates
Tropic of Capricorn
Mar. 22. 1780
Feb. 13. 1771
Feb. 19.
Mar. 1. 1780
Jan. 20. 1771
Feb. 24. 1780
Sep. 28 1770
Sep. 7. 1770
Fortune I.
Natoua I.
Trompeuſe I.
Str. of Sunda
Java
Bali
Lombock
Princes I.
I. Rotte
C. de Witts Land diſc. 1628
C. de Witts Land diſc. 1628
Shark's Bay
NEW HOLLAND
Land of Eendracht diſc. 1616
Land of P. Nuyts diſc. 1627
Land of Leeuwins diſc. 1622
C. Leeuwin
Gulph of Carpentaria
C. Cleveland
Sandy Cape
C. Morton
P. Dangers
Smoky Cape
Port Stephens
Cape Banks
Botany Bay
C. St. George
C. Mar. Van Diemen
Balmains Bay
Oct. 5. 1774
Oct. 21 1773
Dec. 1773
Dec. 1774
Dec. 1773
Dec. 1774
Dec. 1773
Dec. 1774

with the TRACKS of the SHIPS under his Command


NORTH AMERICA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
SOUTH AMERICA
SOUTH PACIFIC OCEAN
BAFFINS BAY
Baffins Straits
Cumberland Strait
Davis Strait
GREENLAND
HUDSONS BAY
Hudsons Straits
LABRADOR
NEW SOUTH WALES
NEW BRITAIN
CANADA
Newfoundland I.
Cape Farewell
Arctic Circle
Northern Indians
Copper Indians
Dog-ribbd Indians
Arathapescow Lake
Nootka or K. Georges Sd
New Albion
New Mexico
Sandwich Isles
Owhyhee
Mowee
Christmas Isle
Easter I.
Pitcairns I.
Society Isles
Otaheite
Mataveo I.
Oheteroa
Toobouai I.
Maitea I.
Huaheine I.
Ulietea I.
Otaha I.
Bolabola
Cook's R.
Behrings Bay
Cooks Sound
B. of Islands
Land seen by the Spaniards in Sep 1775
Bor. C. Hope
C. Blanco
C. de Mendozano
Isles said to be discd by the Spaniards 1775
Peice of Wood seen
Piece of Wood seen
A Shag Seen
A Sea Gull seen
Turtle seen Jan 11. 1778
A Branch of a Tree seen
Bank of a Tree seen
Isles known by the Spaniards
Los Majos
La Mase
Roco Partido
La Nublada
Socoro I.
C. Corrientes
Acapulco
Pasion I.
P. Angelas
Morro Hermoso
P. S. Lazaro
Farellones
Pasaros
St Maria la Gorta
L. St Catalina
I. Maria
H. S. Francisco
C. de Galifornia
Gulf of California
L. Winipig
L. of the Woods
L. Superior
L. Huron
L. Michigan
L. Erie
L. Ontario
Hudsons R.
Delaware R.
Virginia
N. Carolina
S. Carolina
Georgia
Florida
C. Charles
Chesapeak B.
C. Hatteras
C. Fear
Charles Town
R. St Jean
Bermudas
Rocky often taken for Bermudas
Bahama
Lucayo
Alabaster I.
Cat I.
I. Samana
Cuba
Jamaica
B. of Honduras
Gulf of Mexico
Caribbee Isles
Barbadoes
Trinidad I.
Tobago
Caracas
C. Nassau
C. Orinoco
C. Magnari
Guayana
Tierra Firma
New Granada
Caribbean Sea
Cape Blanco
Punta Mala
Buenaventura Bay
Gallapagos Is
Wenman I.
Albemarle I.
Narborough I.
Chatham I.
I. Gallopagos
Amazons R.
Rio Janeiro
Espiritu Santo
C. Frio
Abrolhos Shoals
All Saints Bay
St Salvador
Fernando Noronha I.
Rocas
St Felix I.
Peru
Lima
Chile
Paraguay
Rio de la Plata
Buenos Ayres
C. St Antonio
C. St Mary
P. St Pedro
Valparaiso
Juan Fernandez
Masafuera
St Helena
Ascension
Isle of Palmas
Mauna I.
Palmerston I.
Savage I.
Hervey I.
Matthew I.
Prince William Sd
Cook R.
Montagues I.
Hitchinbrook
Trinity I.
Kayak I.
Shumagins Lake
Unalaska
Mulgrave
Norton Sound
Cape Stephen
Shoal Water
Bristol Bay
Cape Newenham
Cape Prince of Wales
Cape Lisburne
Icy Cape
Point Lay
Thetis Lake
Edlands Lake
Thlewey Lake
Doubtful L.
Cogead Lake
Congecathewhahaga
Buffalo Lake
Melville Sd
Lancaster Sd
Baffins Bay
Disco I.
Whale
Cumberland
Good Fortune I.
C. Elizabeth
Resolution I.
C. Desolation
C. Discord
C. Farewell
C. Grace
Mount Cuningham
Musketo Cove
Fosl Sound
C. Forbisher
C. Comfort
Chidley B.
St Peters Haven
Belchers
James's Bay
Ldu Milan
Round I.
Bell Isle
White B.
C. Freels
Conception B.
Nova Scotia
Halifax
Boston
New England
York
Pensylvania
Long Island
Fort Steepers
Fort Prince of Wales
Churchill R.
Severn R.
Albany R.
Moose R.
Rupert R.
Nelson R.
Hayes R.
Severn
Albany
Moose
Rupert
Nelson
Hayes
Churchill
Knights I.
Port Nelson
Port Bourbon
Port Severn
Port Albany
Port Rupert
Port Churchill

rp®

Artary Mongols
BUKARIA
Cabul
SIA
THIBET
Delhi
Makran
Sindy
Agra
Oude
Bootan
HINDOOS
Guzerat
Decca
Berar
Bengal
TA
BAY of BENGAL
Malabar
Carnatic
Coromandel
Lackadive Is.
Ceylon I.
Maldive Is
THE
INDIAN
OCEAN
Tropic of Capricorn
Str. of Mozambique
I. Mahé
Pemba
I. Zanquebar
I. Montta
I. de Praslin
I. Gama
I. Roquepiz
I. Polverera
C. Ambre
B. Antongil
I. Corgados
I. France
I. Bourbon
I. Rodrigue
C. St. Mary
I. Cloates
Mar. 22. 1780
Feb. 18
Feb. 13. 1771
Mar. 1. 1780
Jan. 20. 1771
Feb. 24. 1780
Sep. 28 1770
Sep. 7. 1770
CHILA
Nankan
COREA
Oki Is
NIPHON
Matisma I.
JAPAN
Malcosmac Lake
Sea weed Gulls and land birds seen Apr. 10.
Sea weed seen
Nov. 1. 1779
Rica de Plata
Nov. 7. 1779
Smith Land birds & great quantities of Pumice Stone
April 8
Rica de Ora
Liqueo Isles
Fatsisio I.
Nov. 12.
Ct. Liqueo
I. Sebastian de Lobos
Sulpher I.
Isle Formose
Nov. 15
Nov. 18. much Pumice Stone
the Gardens
April 1. 1779
Bashee
Babuyanes
PHILIPINE Is
Aringan
Anatajan
Saypan
Tinian
Guaham
St. Barthelemi
Pescadore Isles
I. de Esteran
Ban
I. Tenday
I. Leil
New
Carolines
Gilolo Is
BORNEO
Pt. Nuw
Pt. Condore
Natuna
Paragua
CHINA SEA
Cochin China
Tonkin
Canton
Chinan I.
Madesfield
Great Andaman
Lit. Andaman
Nicobar I
Acheem Hd
Malacca
Siam
Ladrone Is
Fortune I.
Natoa I.
Trompewe I.
Str. of Sunda
Prince I.
Banca
I. Mascombar
Flores
Timor
Celebes
Gilolo
Moluccas
Gilolo
Ceram
Tuner Land
Banda
I. Rotte
Endeavour Str.
New Britain
New Ireland
Papua or New Guinea
Byrons I
Q. Charlotts Is
Egmont or St. Cruz I.
D. of Yorks I.
Solitary I.
Wallis I.
Tierra del Espiritu Santo
Aurora I.
Whitsuntide I.
Malicollo I.
Imbrivan
Sandwich I.
Erromango
New Hebrides
Tana
New Caledonia
I. Pines
Sandy Cape
C. Morton
P. Dangers
Norfolk I.
Oct. 5. 1774
Oct. 24 1773
Smoky Cape
Port Stephens
Cape Banks
Botany Bay
C. St. George
C. Mar Van Diemen
Balmains Bay
Apr. 6. 1779
Gannet I.
C. Egmont
C. Howe
Pt. Hicks
Table C.
Hawkes B.
C. Turnagain
C. Palliser
Banks I.
Campbell I.
June 1. 1
Dec. 1. 1773
Traps
Solanders I.
Dusky B.
Cascade Pt.
Pt. Farewell
C. Foulwind
Barren Cape
St. Patricks Head
South Cape
Feb. 1. 1777
NEW ZEALAND
Diemans Land
Blue Peterals & Rock weed
Sea weed
Jan. 11.
Rock weed
Jan. 1. 1777
Sea Weed & Divers
North Cape
Feb. 1. 1773
L. of Desolation
Signs of Land
An Ice Island seen
Desert Isles
Edward
Islands of Ice
Feb. 17
Jan. 25.
Many Ice Islands seen
March 1. 1773
Ice to be Seen
Mar. 16. 1773
Some Rock weed seen
Antipodes of London
Antarctic Circle
ANTARCTIC
East Longitude from the Meridian of GREENWICH
III IV V VI VII VIII IX X XI XII
45 60 75 90 105 120 135 150 165 180
60 90 120 150 180
London, Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms, N.o 16, Paternoster Row.

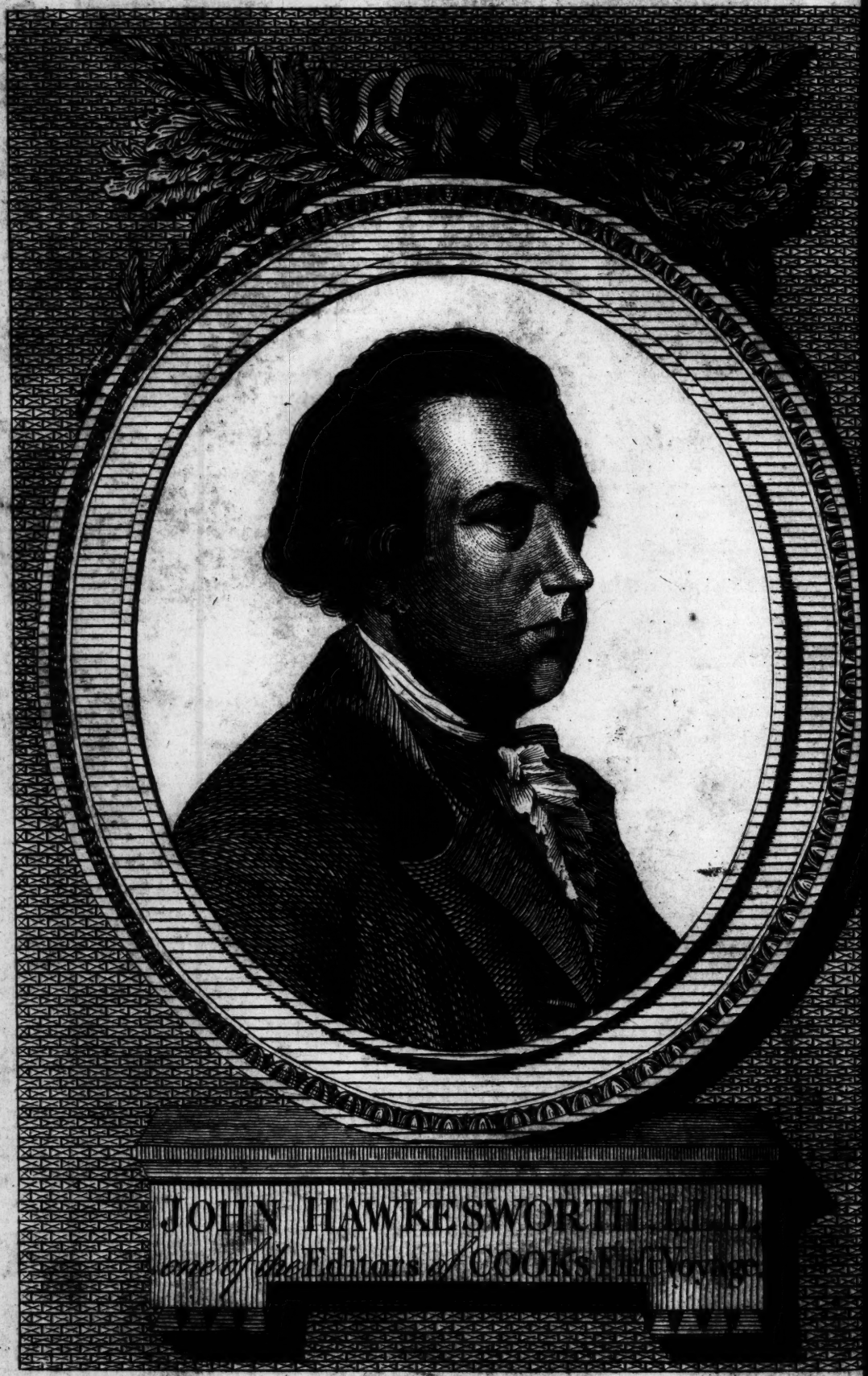
Explanation.

The Endeavour's Track in 1768.1769.1770 & 1771.

Resolution's First Voyage in 1772.1773.1774 & 1775.

Resolution's Second Voyage in 1776.1777.1778.1779 & 1780.

T. Conder Sculp.



JOHN HAWKESWORTH LL.D.
One of the Editors of COOK's Ist Voyage

A New, Genuine, and Complete

HISTORY of

THE WHOLE OF

Capt. Cook's Voyages,

UNDERTAKEN AND PERFORMED

By ROYAL AUTHORITY.

Being the moſt Accurate, Elegant, and Perfect Edition of the whole WORKS and DISCOVERIES of that celebrated Circumnavigator, ever publiſhed.

The whole Written in a more pleaſing and elegant Stile than any other Work of the Kind and Size.

A Full and Satisfactory HISTORY of

Capt. COOK's FIRST VOYAGE round the WORLD, undertaken and performed by Order of his preſent MAJESTY, in his MAJESTY's Ship, the ENDEAVOUR, principally for making Diſcoveries in the SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE, &c. &c.

Begun the latter End of Auguſt 1768, and concluded the 12th of June 1771; containing a Period of nearly THREE YEARS, in which was compleated the Circumnavigation of the Globe.

INTRODUCTION.

VOYAGES being conſidered as the grand repoſitory of uſeful and intereſting knowledge, have juſtly engaged the attention of mankind in all ages. In this ample field the attention of curioſity

is gratified by a vaſt variety of intereſting ſcenes; and works of this kind are of national conſequence, while, at the ſame time, they afford a rich fund of pleaſure to all thoſe who delight to ſpend a leiſure hour in rational amuſement. With reſpect to Captain Cook's *firſt** *Voyage* round the world, which was in the ENDEAVOUR, it has ſo much attracted the notice of the world, that it cannot be too particularly related, nor too nicely examined; and a principal advantage accruing from the following narrative is, that the ſame ſtories ſet in different lights as they ſtrike the obſerver, cannot fail of being a ſource of freſh intelligence; of ſhewing former accounts through a new medium, and of placing them in a more ſtriking point of accuracy, by judicious corrections, and additional improvements.

The firſt voyage, which is the ſubject of our preſent narrative, was undertaken by order of his preſent majeſty, for making diſcoveries in the ſouthern hemiſphere, &c. *Captain Cook* was appointed commander of the Endeavour; and with him embarked Mr. (now Sir *Joſeph*) *Banks* and Dr. *Solander*, whoſe principal objects in this expedition were, to obſerve the tranſit of Venus, and to attempt afterwards farther diſcoveries. Mr. Joſeph Banks and Dr. Solander were men of diſtinguiſhed abilities. The firſt of theſe gentlemen was poſſeſſed of conſiderable landed property in Lincolnſhire; and, upon his leaving the Univerſity of Oxford, A. D. 1763, he made a voyage to the

* It is unneceſſary to point out the obvious imperfections of all publications which include only a *ſingle* voyage of the very celebrated Capt. Cook; his *three* different *voyages* are ſo immediately connected together, that owing to frequent references from one to another, no perſon can form a ſatisfactory idea of his valuable diſcoveries, who does not read his *firſt*, *ſecond*, and *third voyages* in the *order* in which they were *performed* and *written*: in the preſent very *complete*, *improved* and *genuine Edition* (for which numerous readers have been waiting with impatience) we therefore conſider it as our indiſpenſible duty to *begin* with a *full account* of his *Firſt Voyage*; after which we ſhall record an authentic hiſtory of his *Second Voyage*; and then proceed to a *faithful* and *accurate relation* of his much admired *Third* and laſt *Voyage* round the world, being that principally undertaken for *new diſcoveries* in the *Pacific ocean*, &c. &c. and in the proſecution of which he unfortunately *loſt* his *life*.

coaſts

coaſts of Newfoundland and Labradore. Notwithſtanding the dangers and difficulties that attended his firſt expedition, Mr. Banks returned undiſcouraged; and when the Endeavour was equipping for a voyage to the South Seas, he determined to embark with the adventurers, from the laudable motive of enriching his native country with the knowledge of unknown productions, and new diſcoveries.

Dr. Solander, whom Mr. Banks engaged to accompany him, had been appointed to a place in the Britiſh Muſeum, then juſt eſtabliſhed, which he filled with credit to himſelf, and in which he gave univerſal ſatisfaction. The Doctor was a native of Sweden, and a man of great learning, being an adept in natural philoſophy, and who had ſtudied under the famous Linnæus. Mr. Banks, beſides the important and valuable acquiſition of this gentleman, took with him two draughtſmen, the one being intended to paint ſubjects of natural hiſtory, and the other to delineate figures and landſcapes. He had likewiſe four ſervants, two of whom were negroes, and a ſecretary in his retinue. Both Capt. Cook and Mr. Banks kept accurate and circumſtantial journals of this voyage. The papers of Capt. Cook contained a minute account of all nautical incidents, and a very particular deſcription of the figure and extent of the countries he had viſited; and in thoſe of Mr. Banks were found a great variety of incidents which had not come under the inſpection of Capt. Cook; beſides, ſome officers, and the more intelligent of the ſhip's crew, have communicated to their friends, innumerable natural and artificial curioſities, with deſcriptions of the people, and countries, their productions, manners, cuſtoms, religion, policy, and language. Materials ſo intereſting and copious, will be thought quite ſufficient to furniſh the public with the following New and Complete Edition of the whole of Capt. Cook's Voyages, &c. in which will be contained all the curious remarks made by ſeveral gentlemen engaged in theſe celebrated expeditions; and it is our intention

to place every important incident in various points of view, that our readers may be complete judges of the valuable nature of the new diſcoveries, and of the preference which is due to this elegant, though Cheap Edition.

The preparations for this important work have been ſuitable to its ineſtimable value, and our earneſt concern for its credit; while wealth and ſcience have united their powers for the purpoſes of public benefit. Many of the firſt literary characters of the age have favoured us with their aſſiſtance: not only the great outlines of nature, but the variety of ſhades within have been carefully attended to, and not a ſingle material ſhall be neglected which may embelliſh the narratives, and give life and beauty particularly to all the *Three reſpective Voyages* of this unparalleled Navigator. We therefore ſubmit this undertaking to the judgment of the public, founding our claims to their favour on MERIT ALONE, knowing, it is only on THIS ſolid foundation we can hope and expect their encouragement and protection.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

The departure of the Endeavour from Plymouth—Her paſſage to the iſland of Madeira—A deſcription of its natural curioſities and trade—A particular account of Funchiale, the capital of Madeira—The paſſage from Madeira to Rio de Janeiro—An account of this capital of the Portugueſe dominions in South America, and of the circumjacent country—Incidents that happened while the Endeavour lay in the harbour of Rio de Janeiro.

THE Endeavour, a bark of three hundred and twenty tons, which had been originally built for the Coal-trade, was appointed to the ſervice of Capt. Cook's firſt voyage round the world, having on board ten carriage and twelve ſwivel guns. On Auguſt the 26th, 1768, we therefore got under ſail, and took our departure from Plymouth. On the 31ſt, we ſaw ſeveral of thoſe birds, called by ſeamen Mother Carey's Chickens, and which they think progniſticate a ſtorm. On the 2d of September we ſaw land between Cape Finiſterre, and Cape Ortegal, on the coaſt of Gallicia in Spain. In this courſe ſome marine animals were diſcovered, hitherto unnoticed by naturaliſts. One of theſe, deſcribed as a new ſpecies, is of an angular form, near three inches in length, and one thick. It has a hollow paſſage quite through it, and a brown ſpot at one end. Four of theſe animals appeared to adhere together by their ſides; but when put into water, they ſeparated, and ſwam about, ſhining with a brightneſs reſembling the vivid colour of a gem. We alſo diſcovered another animal, exceeding in variety and brightneſs any thing we had ſeen; even in colour and ſplendor equal to thoſe of an opal. At the diſtance of about ten leagues from Cape Finiſterre, we caught among the rigging of the ſhip ſeveral birds not deſcribed by Linnæus.

On

On the 12th we diſcovered Puerto Santo and Madeira, and on the day following, moored with the ſtream anchor in the road of Funchiale. In heaving up the anchor, Mr. Weir, the maſter's mate, was unfortunately carried overboard and drowned.

Upon approaching the iſland of Madeira from the ſea, it appears exceeding beautiful, the ſides of the hills being covered with plantations of vines, which are green when all kinds of herbage, except here and there, are burnt up, which was the caſe at this time.

On the 13th in the forenoon the boat came from the officers of health, no one being ſuffered to land from on board a ſhip without their permiſſion. When this was granted, we landed at Funchiale, the chief town in the iſland, and proceeded directly to the houſe of Mr. Cheap, a conſiderable merchant, and at that time the Engliſh conſul there, who received us with a brotherly kindneſs, and treated us with a princely liberality. We continued on the iſland only five days, during which time the ſeaſon was the worſt in the year for ſearching after natural curioſities; however, the two gentlemen, Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks, puſhed their excurſions about three miles from the town, and collected a few plants in flower, by the obliging attention of Dr. Heberden, the chief phyſician of the iſland, and brother to Dr. Heberden of London. Mr. Banks enquired after and found the tree called Laura Indicus, the wood of which he ſuppoſes to be what is called the Madeira mahogany, as there is no real mahogany upon the iſland.

The inhabitants of Madeira have no other article of trade than wine, which is made by preſſing the juice out in a ſquare wooden veſſel. The ſize of this is proportioned to the quantity of wine; and the ſervants, having taken off their ſtockings and jackets, get into it, and with their elbows and feet preſs out as much of the juice as they can. In like manner the ſtalks, being tied together, are preſſed under a ſquare piece of wood, by a lever with a ſtone faſtened to the end of it.

During

During our ſtay upon this iſland we ſaw no wheel-carriages of any ſort, nor have the people any thing that reſembles them, except a hollow board, or ſledge, upon which thoſe wine veſſels are drawn that are too big to be carried by hand. They have alſo horſes and mules very proper for their roads, but their wine is, notwithſtanding, brought to town from the vine-yards where it is made, in veſſels of goat-ſkins, which are carried by men on their heads.

Nature has been very liberal in her gifts to Madeira. The inhabitants are not without ingenuity, but they want induſtry. The ſoil is ſo very rich, and there is ſuch a variety in the climate, that there is ſcarcely any article either of the neceſſaries or luxuries of life, which cannot probably be cultivated here. On the hills, walnuts, cheſnuts, and apples flouriſh, almoſt without culture. Pine-apples, mangoes, guanas, and bananas, grow almoſt ſpontaneouſly in the town. They have corn which is large grained and fine, and it might be produced in plenty; but for want of being attended to, all they conſume is imported from other countries. Beef, mutton, and pork are remarkably good, and the captain took ſome of the former on board for his own uſe.

Funchiale (which took its name from Foncho) ſignifying fennel in the Portugueſe language) is ſituate at the bottom of a bay, and though it is extenſive in proportion to the reſt of the iſland, it is but poorly built, and the ſtreets are narrow and badly paved. The churches are full of ornaments, with pictures and images of ſaints; the firſt are, for the moſt part, wretchedly executed, and the latter are dreſſed in laced cloaths. The taſte of the convents, eſpecially of the Franciſcans, is better; neatneſs and ſimplicity being united in moſt of the deſigns of the latter. The infirmary alſo is a piece of good architecture, and one of the moſt conſiderable in this place. In this convent is a ſmall chapel, the whole lining of which, both ſides and ceiling, is compoſed of human ſculls and thigh bones: the thigh bones are laid acroſs

each other, and a ſcull is placed in each of the four angles. When we viſited the good fathers, juſt before ſupper-time, they received us with great civility. "We will not aſk you," ſaid they, "to ſupper with us, becauſe we are not prepared; but if you will come to-morrow, though it is a faſt-day, we will have a turkey roaſted for you." This polite invitation it was not in our power to accept. There are many high hills in this iſland; Pico Ruivo in particular is near 5100 feet high. To a certain height theſe hills are covered with vines, above which are numbers of cheſnuts and pine trees; and above theſe again whole foreſts of various ſorts of trees. The Mirmulano and Paobranco which are found among them, are unknown in Europe. The latter of theſe is very beautiful, and would be a great ornament to our gardens. The number of inhabitants in Madeira are computed to amount to about eighty thouſand; and the cuſtom-houſe duties produce to the king of Portugal a revenue of 20,000l. a year, clear of all expences. But the balance of trade is againſt the people; for all their money going to Liſbon, the currency of the iſland is in Spaniſh. This coin conſiſteth of piſtereens, worth about a ſhilling; bitts about ſixpence, and half bitts worth about three-pence.

On the 19th of September the Endeavour ſailed from Madeira, and on the 21ſt we ſaw the iſlands called the Salvages, northward of the Canaries. The principal of theſe was about five leagues to the ſouth half weſt. On the 23d the Peak of Teneriffe bore weſt by ſouth half ſouth. Its appearance at ſun ſet was very ſtriking; for when moſt part of the iſland appeared of a deep black, the mountain ſtill reflected rays, and glowed with a warmth of colour which no painting can expreſs. There is no eruption of viſible fire, but a heat iſſues from the chinks near the top, too ſtrong to be borne by the hand when held near them. The height of this mountain is 15,396 feet, which is but one hundred and forty-eight yards leſs than three miles.

On

On the 30th we ſaw Bona Viſta, one of the Cape de Verd iſlands, in latitude 16 deg. north, and longitude 21 deg. 51 min. weſt. In our courſe to Teneriffe, we obſerved numbers of flying fiſh, which appeared very beautiful, their ſides reſembling burniſhed ſilver.

On the 7th of October Mr. Banks went out in a boat, and caught what our ſailors call a Portugueſe man of war; together with ſeveral ſhell fiſhes, or teſtaceous animals, which are always found floating upon the water; and on the 25th this gentleman ſhot a black-toed gull, not deſcribed by Linnæus, and whoſe dung is of a red colour. We had now variable winds, with ſome ſhowers of rain, and the air was ſo damp as to damage our utenſils conſiderably.

On the 25th we croſſed the line with the uſual ceremonies; and on the 28th when the ſhip was in the latitude of Ferdinand Noronha, longitude 32 deg. 5 min. weſt, we began to look out for the iſland, and for the ſhoals which are laid down as lying between it and the main; but neither the iſland nor ſhoals could be diſcovered. On the 29th we perceived that luminous appearance of the ſea mentioned by navigators, which emitted rays like thoſe of lightning. As Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were not thoroughly ſatisfied with any of the cauſes hitherto aſſigned for this phænomenon, and ſuppoſing it was occaſioned by ſome luminous animals, they threw out a caſting net, in order to try by experiment whether they were right in their conjectures. A ſpecies of the Meduſa was taken, which bore ſome reſemblance to metalline ſubſtance greatly heated, and emitted a whitiſh light; they caught alſo ſome crabs which glittered very much; animals which had not before been taken notice of by the curious reſearchers into the ſecrets of nature.

As proviſions by this time began to grow ſhort, we reſolved to put into the harbour of Rio de Janeiro; and on the 8th of November we ſaw the coaſt of

Braſil. Upon ſpeaking with the crew of a Portugueſe fiſhing boat, we were informed by them, that the land which we ſaw was to the ſouth of Santo Eſpirito. Mr. Banks, having bought of theſe people ſome fiſh, was ſurprized, that they required Engliſh ſhillings: he gave them two which he happened to have about him; for he imagined Spaniſh ſilver to have been the only currency, and it was not without ſome diſpute that they took the reſt of the money in piſtereens. The freſh fiſh, which was bought for about nineteen ſhillings, ſerved the whole ſhip's company. We ſtood off and on along ſhore till the 12th, having in view ſucceſſively Cape Thomas, and an iſland juſt without Cape Frio, and then made ſail for Rio de Janeiro on the 13th in the morning. Capt. Cook ſent his firſt lieutenant in the pinnace before to the city, to inform the governor, that we had put into that port in order to procure refreſhments, and a pilot to bring us into proper anchoring ground. The pinnace returned, but the lieutenant had been detained by the viceroy, till the captain ſhould come on ſhore. When the ſhip had come to an anchor, a ten-oared boat filled with ſoldiers approached, and rowed round her, but no converſation took place. Afterwards another boat appeared, which had ſeveral of the viceroy's officers on board. They enquired from whence the Endeavour came? what was her cargo? what number of men and guns ſhe carried? and to what port ſhe was bound? which queſtions having been punctually and truly anſwered, the Portugueſe officers apologized for having detained the lieutenant, and pleaded the cuſtom of the place in excuſe for their behaviour.

On the 14th Captain Cook went on ſhore, and obtained leave to furniſh the ſhip with proviſions; but this permiſſion was clogged with the conditions of employing an inhabitant as a factor, and of ſending a ſoldier in the Endeavour's boat every time ſhe came from ſhore to the veſſel. To theſe uncivil terms the Captain made many objections; but the viceroy was determined

determined to inſiſt on them, neither would he permit Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to remain on ſhore, nor ſuffer the former to go up the country to collect plants. Captain Cook conceiving from theſe and other marks of jealouſy, that the viceroy thought they were come to trade, uſed all his endeavours to convince him of the contrary; and acquainted him, that they were bound to the South Seas, to obſerve the tranſit of Venus over the diſk of the ſun, an object of great conſequence to the improvement of navigation; but the viceroy by his anſwer ſeemed to be entirely ignorant of this phænomenon. An officer was now appointed to attend the captain, which order he was deſired to underſtand as an intended compliment: however, when he would have declined ſuch a ceremony, the viceroy very politely forced it upon him.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were not a little chagrined on hearing that they would not be permitted to reſide on ſhore, and ſtill more ſo when they underſtood, that they were not even allowed to quit the ſhip; for the viceroy had ordered, that the captain only, with ſuch ſailors as were required by their duty, ſhould come on ſhore. Whether this aroſe from his jealouſy in regard to trade, or from the apprehenſions he entertained of the extraordinary abilities of the two gentlemen in ſearch of new diſcoveries, it is certain that they were highly diſagreeable to Mr. Banks and the Doctor, who were reſolved, if poſſible, to evade the order. With this view they attempted to go on ſhore, but were ſtopped by the guard-boat; yet ſeveral of the crew, without the knowledge of the centinel, let themſelves down by a rope from the cabin window into the boat about midnight, and drove away with the tide, till they were out of hearing. They afterwards landed on an unfrequented part of the country, and were treated by the inhabitants with great civility.

Capt. Cook, uneaſy under the reſtrictions of the viceroy, remonſtrated with him; but the latter would

return no other anſwer, than that the king his maſter's orders muſt be obeyed. The captain, thus repulſed, and much diſpleaſed, reſolved to go no more on ſhore, rather than, whenever he did ſo, to be treated as a priſoner in his own boat; for the officer who was ſo polite as to accompany him, conſtantly attended him, both to and from the ſhore. Two memorials were now drawn up and preſented to the viceroy, one written by the captain, and the other by Mr. Banks; but the anſwers returned were by no means ſatisfactory. Several papers paſſed between them and the viceroy to no good purpoſe, the prohibition ſtill remaining as before; from whence the captain thought it neceſſary in order to vindicate his own compliance, to urge the viceroy to an act of force in the execution of his orders. For this purpoſe he ſent lieutenant Hicks with a packet, giving him his order not to admit of a guard in his boat. As this gentleman was reſolved to obey his captain's commands, the officer of the guard boat did not oppoſe him by force, but acquainted the viceroy with what had happened, on which the lieutenant was ſent away with the packet unopened. When returned, he found a guard of ſoldiers placed in the boat, and inſiſted on their quitting it. Whereupon the officer ſeized the boat's crew, and conducted them under an eſcort to priſon, and the lieutenant was ſent back to the ſhip guarded. When the captain was informed of this tranſaction, he wrote to the viceroy to demand his boat and her crew, incloſing the memorial which Mr. Hicks his lieutenant had brought back. Theſe papers he ſent by a petty officer, to avoid continuing the diſpute concerning the guard, which muſt have been kept up by a commiſſioned officer. An anſwer was now promiſed by the viceroy; but before this could arrive, the long boat, which had four pipes of rum on board, was driven to windward, (the rope breaking that was thrown from the ſhip,) together with a ſmall ſkiff that was faſtened to the boat. Immediate orders were given for manning the yawl,

yawl, which being diſpatched accordingly with proper directions, returned, and brought the people on board the next morning; from whom Capt. Cook learned, that the long-boat having filled with water, they had brought her to a grapling, and quitted her, and falling in with a reef of rocks on ther return, they were forced to cut the faſtening of Mr. Banks's little boat, and ſend her adrift. The captain now diſpatched another letter to his excellency, wherein he informed him of the accident, deſired he would aſſiſt him with a boat to recover his own, and, at the ſame time, renewed his demand of the delivery of the pinnace and her crew. The viceroy granted the requeſt, but in his anſwer to the captain's remonſtrance, ſuggeſted ſome doubts that he entertained, whether the Endeavour was really a king's ſhip, and alſo accuſed the crew of ſmuggling. Capt. Cook, in his reply, ſaid, that he was willing to ſhew his commiſſion, adding, if any attempt ſhould be made to carry on a contraband trade, he requeſted his excellency would order the offender to be taken into cuſtody. The diſpute being thus terminated, Mr. Banks attempted to elude the vigilance of the guard, which he found means to do, and got ſafe on ſhore on the 26th in the morning. He took care to avoid the town, and paſſed the day in the fields, where he could beſt gratify his curioſity. Mr. Banks found the country people inclined to treat him with civility, and was invited to their habitations. But it was afterwards heard, that ſearch had been making for this gentleman when abſent. He and Dr. Solander therefore reſolved to run no more riſques in going on ſhore, while they remained at this place.

On the 1ſt of December, having taken in water and proviſions, we got, with leave from the viceroy, a pilot on board; but the wind prevented us from putting to ſea. A Spaniſh packet from Buenos Ayres, bound for Spain, arriving the next day, the captain of her with great politeneſs offered to take our letters to

Europe.

Europe. The favour was accepted, and Captain Cook delivered into his hands a packet for the ſeccretary of the Admiralty, containing copies of all the papers that had paſſed between him and the viceroy, leaving the duplicates with his excellency. On the 5th we weighed anchor, and towed down the bay, but were ſtopped at Santa Cruz, the principal fortification, the order from the viceroy, to let us paſs, by an unaccountable negligence, not having been ſent; ſo that it was not till the 7th that we got under ſail. When we had paſſed the fort the guard-boat left us, and our pilot was diſcharged. It was obſerved, during our ſtay in this harbour, that the air was filled with butterflies, chiefly of one kind, and the greateſt part above our maſt-head. Of the town and neighbouring country we ſhall give the following deſcription.

Rio de Janeiro was probably ſo called becauſe diſcovered on the feſtival of St. Januarius, from whence we may ſuppoſe the river Januarius took its name, and alſo the town, which is the capital of the Portugueſe in America. This town is ſituated on the weſt ſide of the river, from which it is extended about three quarters of a mile. The ground whereon it ſtands is a level plain. It is defended on the north ſide by a hill, that extends from the river, having a ſmall plain, which contains the ſuburbs and king's dock. On the ſouth is another hill running towards the mountains which are behind the town. This is neither ill deſigned nor ill built; the houſes in general are of ſtone, and two ſtories high; every houſe having, after the manner of the Portugueſe, a ſmall balcony before its windows, and a lattice of wood before the balcony; its circuit is about three miles; and it appears to be equal in ſize to the largeſt country towns in England. The ſtreets are ſtraight, and of a convenient breadth, interſecting each other at right angles; the greater part, however, lie in a line with the citadel, called St. Sebaſtian, which ſtands on the top of a hill that commands the town. The principal

ſtreet is near 100 feet in width, and extends from St. Benedict to the foot of Caſtle-hill. The other ſtreets are commonly twenty or thirty feet wide. The houſes adjoining to the principal ſtreet are three ſtories high, but in other places they are very irregular, though built after the ſame manner as at Liſbon. Water is conveyed to a fountain in the great ſquare, from an aqueduct, raiſed upon two ſtories of arches. The water at this fountain, however, is ſo bad, that we could not drink it with pleaſure. The churches are richly ornamented, and there is more religious parade in this place than in any of the popiſh countries in Europe. Not a day paſſes without a proceſſion of ſome pariſh, with various inſignia, ſplendid and coſtly in the higheſt degree. But the inhabitants may pay their devotions at the ſhrine of any ſaint, without waiting for a proceſſion; for a ſmall cupboard, having a glaſs window, and in which is one of theſe tutelary gods, is placed before almoſt every houſe, and a lamp is kept conſtantly burning, leſt the old proverb ſhould be verified, "Out of ſight, out of mind." Before theſe ſaints the people pray and ſing with ſuch vehemence, that in the night they were diſtinctly heard by our ſailors on board the ſhip.

In this town are four convents, the firſt is that of the Benedictines, ſituated near its northern extremity; the ſtructure affords an agreeable proſpect, and contains an elegant chapel, ornamented with ſeveral valuable paintings. The ſecond is that of the Carmelites, which forms the centre angle of the royal ſquare, and fronts the harbour; its church was rebuilding in a very elegant manner, with fine free ſtone brought thither from Liſbon. The third is that of St. Anthony, ſituated on the top of a hill, on the ſouth ſide of the town; before this convent ſtands a large baſon of brown granite, in the form of a parallelogram, which is employed in waſhing. The fourth is ſituated at the eaſtern extremity of the

town,

town, and was formerly the jeſuit's convent, but is now converted into a military hoſpital.

In the right angle of the royal ſquare ſtands the viceroy's palace; this with the mint, ſtables, gaol, &c. compoſe one large building, which has two ſtories, and is 90 feet from the water. In paſſing through the palace, the firſt entrance is to a large hall or guard-room, to which there is an aſcent of three or four ſteps. In the guard-room are ſtationed the viceroy's body-guards, who are relieved every morning between eight and nine; and adjoining to the hall are the ſtables, the priſon being in the back part of the building. Within the guard-room is a flight of ſtairs for aſcending to the upper ſtory, which divides at a landing-place about half way, and forms two branches, one leading to the right, and the other to the left. The former leads to a ſaloon, where there are two officers in conſtant attendance; the viceroy's aid-de-camp at the ſame time waiting in the anti-chamber to receive meſſages and deliver orders.

The left wing of the royal ſquare is an irregular building, which conſiſts chiefly of ſhops occupied by trading people. In the centre of this ſquare is the fountain, of which we have made mention, as being ſupplied with water from a ſpring at the diſtance of three miles, from which it is brought by an aqueduct. The place is continually crowded with negroes of both ſexes waiting to fill their jars. At the corner of every ſtreet is an altar. The market place extends from the north-eaſt end of the ſquare along the ſhore, and this ſituation is very convenient for the fiſhing boats, and thoſe who bring vegetables from the other ſide of the river to market. Negroes are almoſt the only people who ſell the different commodities expoſed in the market, and they employ their leiſure time in ſpinning cotton.

The form of government is in its conſtitution mixed, but in fact very deſpotic; the viceroy and civil magiſtrate of the town frequently committing perſons to priſon,

priſon, or tranſporting them to Liſbon, at their own pleaſure. In order to prevent the people from making excurſions into the country, in ſearch after gold and diamonds, certain bounds are preſcribed them, ſometimes at a few, and ſometimes at many miles diſtance from the town; and if a man is taken up by the guard without the bounds, where they conſtantly patrole, he is immediately ſent to priſon.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro are exceeding numerous, and conſiſt of Portugueſe, Negroes, and Indians, which laſt were the original natives of the country. The townſhip of Rio is but a ſmall part of the Capitanea, or province; yet it is ſaid to contain 37,000 white people, and 629,000 blacks, many of whom are free, making together 666,000, in the proportion of 17 to 1.

The military is compoſed of twelve regiments of regular troops, ſix being Portugueſe, and ſix Creoles, and twelve regiments of provincial militia. The inhabitants are ſervilely ſubmiſſive to the regulars, and it has been ſaid, that if any of them ſhould omit the compliment of taking off his hat, when he meets an officer, he would be immediately knocked down. But the ſubordination of the officers to the viceroy is equally mortifying, for they are obliged to wait three times every day to know, or receive his commands: the anſwer frequently is, "there is nothing new."

In Rio de Janeiro the gentry keep their chaiſes, which are drawn by mules; the ladies however uſe a ſedan chair, boarded before and behind, with curtains on each ſide, which is carried by two negroes on a pole connected with the top of the chair, by two rods, coming from under its bottom, one on each ſide, and reſting to the top. The apothecaries ſhops commonly ſerve the purpoſes of coffee-houſes, as the people meet in them to drink capillaire, and play at back-gammon. When the gentry are ſeen abroad, they are well dreſſed, though at home but looſely covered. The ſhop-keepers have generally ſhort hair,

and wear linen jackets with ſleeves. The women in general, as in moſt of the Portugueſe and Spaniſh ſettlements in South America, are more ready to grant amorous favours than thoſe of any other civilized parts of the world. As ſoon as the evening began, females appeared at the windows on every ſide, who diſtinguiſhed ſuch of the men as beſt pleaſed their fancies by throwing down noſegays; and Dr. Solander and two other gentlemen received ſo many of theſe love-tokens, that they threw them away by hat-fulls.

Without the Jeſuits college on the ſhore, is a village called Neuſtra Seignora del Gloria, which is joined to the town by a very few intervening houſes. Three or four hundred yards, within the Jeſuit's-college, ſtands a very high caſtle, but it is falling to decay. The biſhop's palace is about three hundred yards behind the Benedictine convent, and contiguous to it is a magazine of arms, ſurrounded by a rampart.

The inhabitants of Rio de Janeiro maintain a whale-fiſhery, which ſupplies them with lamp oil. They import brandy from the Azores, and their ſlaves and Eaſt India goods from their ſettlements in Africa, their wine from Madeira, and their European goods from Liſbon. The current coin is Portugueſe, which is ſtruck here; the ſilver pieces are called petacks, of different value; and the copper are five and ten ree pieces. This place is very uſeful for ſhips that are in want of refreſhment. They water, as we have before obſerved, at the fountain in the great ſquare, but the water is not good. We landed our caſks on a ſmooth ſandy beach, which is not more than a hundred yards diſtant from the fountain, and upon application to the viceroy a centinel is appointed to look after them. The harbour is ſafe and commodious, and diſtinguiſhed by a remarkable hill, in the ſhape of a cone, at the weſt point of the bay. The entrance is not wide, but it is eaſy, from the ſea breeze which prevails from noon to ſun-ſet, for

any

any ſhip to enter before the wind. The entrance of the narrow part is defended by two forts, La Cruz, and Lozia; they are about three quarters of a mile from each other. The bottom being rocky, renders it dangerous to anchor there, but to avoid it ſhips muſt keep in the mid-channel. The coaſt abounds with a variety of fiſh, among which are dolphins and mackarel. Proviſions, except wheaten bread and flour, are eaſily procured. Yams and caſſada are in plenty. Beef both freſh and jerked may be bought at two-pence farthing a pound, but it is very lean. The people jerk their beef, by taking out the bones, and cutting it into large but thin ſlices. They then cure it with ſalt, and dry it in the ſhade. It eats very well, and, if kept dry, will remain good a long time at ſea. Mutton is ſcarcely to be procured. Hogs and poultry are dear. Garden ſtuff and fruit are in abundance, but the pumkin only can be preſerved at ſea. Tobacco alſo is cheap, though not good. Rum, ſugar, and molaſſes are all excellent, and to be had at reaſonable prices.

The climate of Rio de Janeiro is healthy, and free from moſt of thoſe inconveniencies incident to tropical countries. The air is ſeldom immoderately hot, as the ſea breeze is generally ſucceeded by a land wind. The ſeaſons are divided into dry and rainy, though their commencement of late has been irregular and uncertain, for the latter had failed for near four years preceding our arrival; but at this time the rain had juſt began, and fell in heavy ſhowers during our ſtay: formerly the ſtreets have been overflowed by the rain, and rendered impaſſable with canoes.

The adjacent country is mountainous, and chiefly covered with wood, a ſmall part of it only being cultivated. Near the town the ſoil is looſe and ſandy, but farther from the river it is a fine black mould. It produces all the tropical fruits in great plenty, and without much cultivation, a circumſtance exceeding agreeable to the inhabitants, who are very indolent.

The mines, which lie far up in the country, are very rich. Their ſituation is carefully concealed, and no one can view them, except thoſe concerned in working and guarding them. About twelve months before our arrival, the government had detected ſeveral jewellers in carrying on an illicit trade for diamonds, with ſlaves in the mines; and immediately afterwards a law paſſed, making it felony to work at the trade, or to have any tools fit for it in poſſeſſion, the civil officers having indiſcriminately ſeized on all that could be found. Near 40,000 negroes are annually imported to dig in the mines, ſo pernicious to the human frame are thoſe works. In 1776, 20,000 more were draughted from the town to ſupply the deficiency of the former number.

CHAP. II.

The departure of the Endeavour from Rio de Janeiro—Her paſſage to the entrance of the Streight of Le Maire—The inhabitants of Terra del Fuego deſcribed—Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander aſcend a mountain in ſearch of plants—An account of what happened to them in this excurſion—The Endeavour paſſes through the Streight Le Maire—An account of her paſſage, and a further deſcription of the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, and its productions—Remarks reſpecting the ſouth eaſt part of Terra del Fuego, and the Streight of Le Maire—Directions for the paſſage weſtward round this part of America, into the South Seas—The paſſage of the Endeavour from Cape Horn to the newly diſcovered iſlands—An account of their figure and appearance—The inhabitants deſcribed; with a narrative of the various incidents during the courſe, and on the Endeavour's arrival among them.

ON the 8th of December, 1768, having procured all neceſſary ſupplies, we took our departure from Rio de Janeiro; and on the 9th an amazing number of atoms were taken out of the ſea. Theſe were of a yellowiſh colour, and few of them were more than the 5th part of an inch long; nor could the beſt microſcope on board the Endeavour diſcover whether they belonged to the vegetable or animal creation. The ſea was tinged in ſuch a manner with theſe equivocal ſubſtances, as to exhibit broad ſtreaks of a ſimilar colour, for near the ſpace of a mile in length, and for ſeveral hundred yards in breadth. Whence they came, or for what deſigned, neither Mr. Banks nor Dr. Solander could determine. Perhaps they might be the ſpawn of ſome marine animal, unknown to either antient or modern philoſophers.

On the 11th we hooked a ſhark. It proved to be a female. When opened we took ſix young ones out of

it, five of which were alive, and ſwam briſkly in a tub of water, but the ſixth appeared to have been dead ſome time. From this time we met with no material occurrence till the 22d, when we diſcovered numerous birds of the proſillaria kind, in latitude 39 deg. 37 min. ſouth, and longitude 49 deg. 16 min. weſt; we alſo diſcovered great numbers of porpoiſes of a ſingular ſpecies, of about 15 feet in length, and of an aſh colour. On the 23d we obſerved an eclipſe of the moon; and about ſeven o'clock in the morning, a ſmall white cloud appeared in the weſt, from which a train of fire iſſued, extending itſelf weſterly: about two minutes after, we heard two diſtinct loud exploſions, immediately ſucceeding each other, like thoſe of cannon, after which the cloud diſappeared. On the 24th we caught a large loggerhead tortoiſe, weighing one hundred and fifty pounds. We likewiſe ſhot ſeveral birds, one an albetroſs, which meaſured between the tips of its wings nine feet and an inch, and from its beak to the tail two feet one inch and an half. On the 30th we ran upwards of fifty leagues, through vaſt numbers of land inſects; ſome in the air, and others upon the water; they appeared to reſemble exactly the flies that are ſeen in England, though they were thirty leagues from land, and ſome of theſe inſects are known not to quit it beyond three yards. At this time we judged ourſelves to be nearly oppoſite to the bay called Sans Fond (without bottom) where it is ſuppoſed by ſome writers, that the continent of America is divided by a paſſage; but it was the opinion of our circumnavigators, that there might be a large river, which probably had occaſioned an inundation. On the 31ſt we had much thunder, lightning and rain. This day and the three following, we ſaw ſeveral whales; likewiſe a number of birds about the ſize of a pigeon, with white bellies and grey beaks.

On the 3d of January, 1769, we ſaw the appearance of land, in latitude 47 deg. 17 min. ſouth, and longitude

longitude 61 deg. 29 min. 45 ſec. weſt, which we miſtook for Pepy's iſland. In appearance it ſo much reſembled land, that we bore away for it; and it was near two hours and an half before we were convinced, that it was one of thoſe deceptions which ſailors call a Fog-bank. At this time our ſeamen beginning to complain of cold, they were furniſhed with a pair of trowſers, and a Magellanic jacket, made of a thick woollen ſtuff called Fearnought. On the 11th, after having paſſed Falkland's Iſland, we ſaw the coaſt of Terra del Fuego, at the diſtance of about four leagues from the weſt to ſouth-eaſt by ſouth. As we ranged along the ſhore to the ſouth-eaſt, ſmoke was perceived, made, probably, by the natives as a ſignal, for it was not to be ſeen after we had paſſed by.

On the 14th we entered the Streight of Le Maire, but were afterwards driven out again with ſuch violence (the tide being againſt us) that the ſhip's bowſprit was frequently under water. At length, however, we got anchorage in a ſmall cove, on the eaſt of Cape St. Vincent, the entrance to which our captain named St. Vincent's Bay. The weeds which grow here upon rocky ground are very remarkable; they appear above the ſurface in eight and nine fathoms water. The leaves are four feet in length; and many of the ſtalks, though not more than an inch and a half in circumference, above one hundred.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks went on ſhore, where, having continued four hours, they returned about nine in the evening, with upwards of an hundred different plants and flowers, of which none of the European botaniſts had taken any notice near this bay. The country in general was flat, and the bottom, in particular, was a graſſy plain. Here was plenty of wood, water, and fowl, and winter bark was found in great plenty. The trees appeared to be a ſpecies of the birch, but neither large nor lofty. The wood was white, and they bore a ſmall leaf. White and red cranberries were found in theſe parts.

On

On the 18th we came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, upon coral rocks, before a ſmall cove, at the diſtance of about a mile from the ſhore. At this time two of the natives came down upon the beach, as if they expected that the ſtrangers would land; but as there was no ſhelter here, the ſhip was got under ſail again, and the Indians retired diſappointed. The ſame afternoon about two o'clock, we came into the bay of Good Succeſs, and the veſſel coming to an anchor, the captain went on ſhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to ſearch for a watering place, and diſcourſe with the Indians. Theſe gentlemen had not proceeded above one hundred yards before the captain, when two of the Indians that had ſeated themſelves roſe up, and threw away the ſmall ſticks which they held in their hands, as a token of amity. They afterwards returned to their companions, who had remained at ſome diſtance behind them, and made ſigns to their gueſts to advance, whom they received in a friendly, though uncouth manner. In return for their civility, ſome ribbands and beads were diſtributed among them. Thus a ſort of mutual confidence was eſtabliſhed, and the reſt of the Engliſh joined the party, the Indians converſing with them in their way, in an amicable manner. Capt. Cook and his friends took three of them to the ſhip, dreſſed them in jackets, and gave them bread and other proviſions, part of which they carried on ſhore with them; but they refuſed to drink rum or brandy, making ſigns that it burned their throats, as their proper drink was water. One of theſe people made ſeveral long and loud ſpeeches, but no part of them was intelligible to any of us. Another ſtole the covering of a globe, which he concealed under his garment that was made of ſkin. After having remained on board about two hours, they returned on ſhore, Mr. Banks accompanying them. He conducted them to their companions, who ſeemed no way curious to know what their friends had ſeen, and the latter were

were as little diſpoſed to relate, as the former were to enquire. None of theſe people exceeded five feet ten inches in height, but their bodies appeared large and robuſt, though their limbs were ſmall. They had broad flat faces, high cheeks, noſes inclining to flatneſs, wide noſtrils, ſmall black eyes, large mouths, ſmall, but indifferent teeth, and ſtraight black hair, falling down over their ears and foreheads, the latter being generally smeared with brown and red paints, and like all the original natives of America, they were beardleſs. Their garments were the ſkins of ſeals and guanicoes, which they wrapped round their ſhoulders. The men likewiſe wore on their heads a bunch of yarn, which fell over their foreheads, and was tied behind with the ſinews or tendons of ſome animals. Many of both ſexes were painted on different parts of their bodies with red, white, and brown colours, and had alſo three or four perpendicular lines pricked acroſs their cheeks and noſes. The women had a ſmall ſtring tied round each ancle, and each wore a flap of ſkin faſtened round the middle. They carried their children upon their backs, and were generally employed in domeſtic labour and drudgery.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, attended by their ſervants, ſet out from the ſhip on the 16th, with a deſign of going into the country as far as they could that day, and returning in the evening. Having entered a wood, they aſcended a hill through a pathleſs wilderneſs till the afternoon. After they had reached what they took for a plain, they were greatly diſappointed to find it a ſwamp, covered with birch, the buſhes interwoven and ſo inflexible that they could not be divided: however, as they were not above three feet high, they ſtepped over them, but were up to the ancles in boggy ground. The morning had been very fine, but now the weather became cold and diſagreeable; the blaſts of wind were very piercing, and the ſnow fell thick; nevertheleſs they purſued their route in hope of finding a better road. Before they had got

over this ſwamp, an accident happened that greatly diſconcerted them: Mr. Buchan, one of the draughtſmen whom Mr. Banks had taken with him, fell into a fit. It was abſolutely neceſſary to ſtop and kindle a fire, and ſuch as were moſt fatigued remained to aſſiſt him; but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Monkhouſe proceeded, and attained the ſpot they had in view, where they found a great variety of plants that gratified their curioſity and repaid their toil. On returning to the company amidſt the ſnow which now fell in great abundance, they found Mr. Buchan much recovered. They had previouſly ſent Mr. Monkhouſe and Mr. Green back to him and thoſe that remained with him, in order to bring them to a hill which was conjectured to lie in a better track for returning to the wood, and which was accordingly fixed on as a place of rendezvous. They reſolved from this hill to paſs through the ſwamp, which this way did not appear to be more than half a mile in extent, into the covert of the wood, in which they propoſed building a hut, and kindling a fire, to defend themſelves from the ſeverity of the weather. Accordingly, the whole party met at the place appointed, about eight in the evening, whilſt it was ſtill day-light, and proceeded towards the next valley.

Dr. Solander having often paſſed over mountains in cold countries, was ſenſible, that extreme cold, when joined with fatigue, occaſions a drowſineſs that is not eaſily reſiſted; he therefore intreated his friends to keep in motion, however diſagreeable it might be to them. His words were—Whoever ſits down will ſleep, and whoever ſleeps will wake no more. — Every one ſeemed accordingly armed with reſolution; but, on a ſudden, the cold became ſo very intenſe as to threaten the moſt dreadful effects. It was now very remarkable, that the Doctor himſelf, who had ſo forcibly admoniſhed and alarmed his party, was the firſt that inſiſted to be ſuffered to repoſe. In ſpite of the moſt earneſt intreaties of his friends, he lay down amidſt the ſnow,

nd it was with difficulty that they kept him awake. ne of the black ſervants alſo became weak and faint, nd was on the point of following this bad example. r. Buchan was therefore detached with a party to ake a fire at the firſt commodious ſpot they could nd. Mr. Banks and four more remained with the octor and Richmond the black, who with the utmoſt ifficulty were perſuaded to come on; and when they ad traverſed the greateſt part of the ſwamp, they ex-reſſed their inability of going any farther. When he black was told that if he remained there he would oon be frozen to death, his reply was, That he was ſo uch exhauſted with fatigue, that death would be a elief to him. Doctor Solander ſaid, he was not un-illing to go, but that he muſt firſt take ſome ſleep, ill perſiſting in acting contrary to the opinion which e himſelf had delivered to the company. Thus re-olved, they both ſat down, ſupported by ſome buſhes, nd in a ſhort time fell aſleep. Intelligence now came rom the advanced party, that a fire was kindled about quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks hen awakened the Doctor, who had already almoſt loſt he uſe of his limbs, though it was but a few minutes nce he ſat down; nevertheleſs, he conſented to go n, but every meaſure taken to relieve the black proved effectual. He remained motionleſs, and they were bliged to leave him to the care of a ſailor, and the ther black ſervant, who appeared to be the leaſt hurt y the cold, and they were to be relieved as ſoon as wo others were ſufficiently warmed, to fill their places. he Doctor, with much difficulty, was got to the fire; nd as to thoſe who were ſent to relieve the companions f Richmond, they returned without having been able o find them. What rendered the mortification ſtill reater was, that a bottle of rum (the whole ſtock of he party) could not be found, and was judged to have een left with one of the three that were miſſing.

A fall of ſnow continuing for near two hours, there ow remained no hopes of ſeeing the three abſent per-

ſons again. At twelve o'clock, however, a great ſhouting was heard at a diſtance, which gave inexpreſſible ſatisfaction to every one preſent. Mr. Banks and four others went forward and met the ſailor, who had juſt ſtrength enough left to walk. He was immediately ſent to the fire, and they proceeded to ſeek for the other two. They found Richmond upon his legs, but incapable of moving them; the other black was lying ſenſeleſs upon the ground. All endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitleſs; nor was it poſſible to kindle one upon the ſpot, on account of the ſnow that had fallen, and was falling; ſo that there remained no alternative, and they were compelled to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate, after they had made them a bed of the boughs of ſome trees, and covered them over thick with the ſame. As all hands had been employed in endeavouring to move theſe poor blacks to the fire, and had been expoſed to the cold for near an hour and an half in the attempt, ſome of them began to be afflicted in the ſame manner as thoſe whom they were to relieve. Briſcoe, another ſervant of Mr. Banks, in particular, began to loſe his ſenſibility. At laſt they reached the fire, and paſſed the night in a very diſagreeable manner.

The party that ſet out from the ſhip had conſiſted of twelve; two of theſe were already judged to be dead, it was doubtful whether the third would be able to return on board, and Mr. Buchan, a fourth, ſeemed to be threatened with a return of his fits. The ſhip they reckoned to be at the diſtance of a long day's journey, through an unfrequented wood, in which they might probably be bewildered till night, and having been equipped only for a journey of a few hours, they had not a ſufficiency of proviſions left to afford the company a ſingle meal.

At day-break on the 17th, nothing preſented itſelf to the view all around but ſnow, which covered alike the trees and the ground; and the blaſts of wind were ſo frequent and violent, that their journey ſeemed to be rendered



Grainger sculp.t

View of a Town, in the Island of TERRA DEL FUEGO.

endered impracticable, and they had reaſon to dread eriſhing with cold and famine. However, about ſix the morning, they were flattered with a dawn of ope of being delivered, by diſcovering the ſun through e clouds, which gradually diminiſhed. Before their tting out, meſſengers were diſpatched to the unappy negroes; but theſe returned with the melanholy news of their death. Though the ſky had flatered the hopes of the ſurvivors, the ſnow continued alling very faſt, a circumſtance which impeded their ourney; but a breeze ſpringing up about eight o'clock, dded to the influence of the ſun, began to clear the ir, and the ſnow falling in large flakes from the trees, ave tokens of a thaw. Hunger prevailing over every ther conſideration, induced our travellers to divide the mall remainder of their proviſions, and to ſet forward n their journey about ten in the morning. To their reat aſtoniſhment and ſatisfaction, in about three ours they found themſelves on the ſhore, and much earer to the ſhip than their moſt ſanguine expectations ould have ſuggeſted. When they looked back upon heir former route from the ſea, they found, that nſtead of aſcending the hill in a direct line, they had ade a circle almoſt round the country. On their eturn, theſe wanderers received ſuch congratulations rom thoſe on board, as can more eaſily be imagined han expreſſed.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on ſhore again on he 20th of this month, landing in the bottom of the ay, where they collected a number of ſhells and plants, itherto unknown. After having returned to dinner, hey went to viſit an Indian town, about two miles up he country, the acceſs to which, on account of the mud, was difficult. When they approached the town, wo of the natives came out to meet them, who began o ſhout in their uſual manner. They afterwards conducted Mr. Banks and the Doctor to their town. It was ſituate on a ſmall hill, over-ſhaded with wood, and conſiſted of about a dozen huts, conſtructed without

are

art or regularity. They were compoſed of a few poles inclining to each other in the ſhape of a ſugar-loaf, which were covered on the weather ſide with graſs and boughs, and on the other ſide a ſpace was left open, which ſerved at once for a fire-place and a door. They were of the ſame nature of the huts that had been ſeen at St. Vincent's Bay. A little graſs ſerved for beds and chairs, and their utenſils were a baſket for the hand, a ſatchel to hang upon the back, and a bladder for water, out of which they drank through a hole near the top. This town was inhabited by a tribe of about fifty men, women, and children. Their bows and arrows were conſtructed with neatneſs and ingenuity, being made of wood highly poliſhed; and the point, which was either glaſs or flint, very ſkilfully fitted. Theſe latter ſubſtances were obſerved among them unwrought, as alſo cloth, rings, buttons, &c. from whence it was concluded that they ſometimes travelled to the northward, as no ſhip, for years paſt, had touched at this part of Terra del Fuego. The natives here did not ſhew any ſurpriſe at the ſight of fire arms, but appeared to be well acquainted with their uſe. It is likely that the ſpot on which the Doctor and Mr. Banks met them, was not a fixed habitation, as their houſes did not ſeem as if they were erected to ſtand for any long time, and they had no boats or canoes among them. They did not appear to have any form of government, or any ideas of ſubordination. They ſeemed to be the very outcaſts of men, and a people that paſſed their lives in wandering in a forlorn manner over dreary waſtes; their dwelling being a thatched hovel, and their cloathing ſcarcely ſufficient to keep them from periſhing with cold, even in theſe climates. Their only food was ſhell-fiſh, which on any one ſpot muſt ſoon be exhauſted; nor had they the rudeſt implement of art, not even ſo much as was neceſſary to dreſs their food; yet amidſt all this, we are told, that they appeared to enjoy that content, which is ſeldom found

INDIANS *of* TERRA DEL FUEGO, *with their* manner *of* living *in their* HUTS.

Morris sculp.

ound in great and populous cities; a ſpecies of con-
ent, which if they really enjoyed, it muſt have ariſen
om ſtupidity, a ſatisfaction the offspring of the
reateſt ignorance. Such is the ſtate of uncultivated
ature; ſuch the rude form which uncivilized man
uts on. The wants of theſe people ſeemed to be
ew; but ſome wants all mankind muſt have, and
ven the moſt ſimple of them, theſe poor ſavages ap-
eared ſcarcely in a condition to gratify. The calls
f hunger and thirſt muſt be obeyed, or man muſt
eriſh; yet the people in queſtion ſeemed to depend
n chance for the means of anſwering them. Thoſe
ho can be happy in ſuch a ſituation, can only be ſo,
ecauſe they have not a due feeling of their miſery.
e know that there have been admirers of ſimple
ature amongſt the philoſophers of all ages and na-
ons; and certainly ſimple nature has her beauties.
n regard to the vegetative and brute creation, ſhe
perates with reſiſtleſs energy; her power is prevalent,
her pencil is inimitable; but when we aſcend in
he ſcale of beings, and come to examine the human
ce, what ſhall we find *them*, without cultivation?
is here that inſtinct ends, and reaſon begins; and
ithout entering into the queſtion, Whether a ſtate
nature is a ſtate of war? when we obſerve the in-
merable inconveniences to which thoſe are ſubject
whom the light of ſcience never dawned, we may
ſily determine in the favour of thoſe arts which
ve civilized mankind, formed them into ſocieties,
fined their manners, and taught the nations where
ey have prevailed, to protect thoſe rights which
e untutored ſavages have ever been obliged to
ield to the ſuperior abilities of their better inſtructed
vaders, and have thus fallen a prey to European
yranny.

We obſerved in this place ſeals, ſea-lions, and dogs,
nd no other quadrupeds; nevertheleſs it is probable
here are other kinds of animals in the country; for
Mr. Banks remarked, from a hill, an impreſſion of the
foot-

foot-ſteps of a large animal on the ſurface of a bog, but of what kind it was he could not determine. Not any land-birds were ſeen larger than an Engliſh black-bird, hawks and vultures excepted. Ducks and other water fowls we ſaw in abundance; alſo ſhell-fiſh, clams, and limpets. The country, though uncleared, had neither gnat, muſquito, nor any other noxious or troubleſome animals. A great variety of plants were found by the Doctor and Mr. Banks. The wild celery and ſcurvy-graſs are ſuppoſed to contain antiſcorbutic qualities, which will therefore be of ſervice to the crews of ſuch ſhips as hereafter may touch at this place, after a long voyage. The latter is found in abundance near ſprings and in damp places, particularly at the watering place in the bay of Good Succeſs, and it reſembles the Engliſh cuckow flower, or lady's-ſmock. The wild celery is like what grows in our gardens in England, but the leaves are of a deeper green. This plant may be found in plenty near the beach, and upon the land above the ſpring tides. In taſte it is between that of celery and parſley. The grateful ſeaman, long confined to ſalt proviſions, enjoy this healing vegetable diet, as a ſpecial bleſſing of an all gracious Providence, particularly viſible in providing in different climates different food and nouriſhment, ſuitable to his nature, wants and neceſſities.

On Sunday, Jan. 22, having got in our wood and water, we ſailed out of the bay, and continued our courſe through the Streight; and in paſſing this, notwithſtanding the deſcription which ſome voyagers have given of Terra del Fuego, we did not find that it had, agreeable to their repreſentations, ſuch a forbidding aſpect. On the contrary, we found the ſea coaſts and the ſides of the hills cloathed with verdure. Indeed the ſummits of the hills were barren, but the valleys appeared rich, and a brook was generally found at the foot of almoſt every hill; and though the water had a reddiſh tinge, yet it was far from being ill taſted. Upon the whole it was the beſt we took on board during our voyage.

oyage. Nine miles weſtward of cape St. Diego, the w point that forms the north entrance of the Streight Le Maire, are three hills, called the Three Brothers; and on Terra del Fuego is another hill, in the rm of a ſugar-loaf, which ſtands on the weſt ſide not r from the ſea. We had not that difficulty mentioned the hiſtory of Lord Anſon's voyage, in finding where e ſtreight of Le Maire lies. No ſhip can well miſs e ſtreight that keeps Terra del Fuego in ſight, for it ill then be eaſily diſcovered; and Staten iſland which es on the eaſt ſide will be ſtill more plainly perceived, or there is no land on Terra del Fuego like it. And t it be further particularly obſerved, that the entrance f the ſtreight ſhould be attempted only with a fair ind, when the weather too is moderate, and likewiſe, pon the beginning of the tide of flood, which here lls out upon the full and change of the moon, about ne or two o'clock; let it alſo be remembered, to keep s near the ſhore of Terra del Fuego as the winds will ermit.

The ſtreight of Le Maire is bounded on the weſt by erra del Fuego, and on the eaſt by the weſt end of taten iſland, and is nearly five leagues in length, nor ſs in breadth. The bay of Good Succeſs is ſeated bout the middle of it, on the ſide of Terra del Fuego, hich preſents itſelf at the entrance of the ſtreight om the northward; and the ſouth end of it may be ſtinguiſhed by a land mark, reſembling a road from e ſea to the country. It affords good anchorage, and lenty of wood and water. Staten land did not appear to Captain Cook in the ſame manner as it did to Commodore Anſon. That horror and wildneſs, mentioned by the Commodore, were not obſerved by our gentlemen; on the contrary, the land appeared to be neither deſtitute of wood nor verdure, nor was it covered with ſnow; and on the north ſide we ſaw the appearances of bays and harbours. It is probable, that he ſeaſon of the year and other circumſtances might concur to occaſion ſuch different repreſentations of a

land, which all our circumnavigators muſt own to be unfriendly and diſagreeably ſituated. On the weſt ſide of the cape of Good Succeſs, whereby is formed the ſouth weſt entrance of the ſtreight, we ſaw the mouth of Valentine's bay; from whence the land lies in a direction weſt ſouth-weſt for more than twenty leagues, appearing high and mountainous, with ſeveral inlets and bays. Fourteen leagues from the bay of Good Succeſs, ſouth-weſt half-weſt, and nearly three leagues from the ſhore, is New Iſland; terminating to the north-eaſt in a remarkable hillock; and ſeven leagues from hence, ſouth-weſt, lies Evout's iſle; a little to the weſt of the ſouth of which are two ſmall low iſlands, near to each other, called Barnevelt's. Theſe are partly ſurrounded with rocks, which riſe to different heights above the water, and are twenty-four leagues from the ſtreight of Le Maire. Three leagues ſouth weſt by ſouth, from Barnevelt's iſlands, is the ſouth-eaſt point of Hermit's iſlands, which lie ſouth-eaſt and north-weſt. They appeared to us in different points of view, ſometimes as one iſland, and at others as part of the main. From the ſouth-eaſt point of theſe iſlands to Cape Horn, the courſe is ſouth-weſt by ſouth, diſtant three leagues. Hermit, who commanded the Dutch ſquadron in 1624, certainly put into ſome of them, and Chapenham, vice admiral of this ſquadron, firſt diſcovered that Cape Horn was formed by a cluſter of iſlands. Between the ſtreight Le Maire and Cape Horn we found, when near the ſhore, the current ſetting generally ſtrong to the north-eaſt; but we loſt it at the diſtance of fifteen or twenty leagues from land.

January the 26th we took our departure from Cape Horn, and the fartheſt ſouthern latitude we made was 60 deg. 10 min. and our longitude was then 74 deg. 30 min. weſt. Cape Horn is ſituated in 55 deg. 53 min. ſouth latitude, and 68 deg. 13 min. weſt longitude. The weather being very calm, Mr. Banks ſailed in a ſmall boat to ſhoot birds, when he killed ſome ſheer-waters, and albatroſſes. The latter were larger than

View of HORN ISLAND.

an thoſe which had been taken to the northward of e ſtreight, and proved to be very good food. At is time we found ourſelves to be 12 deg. to the weſt- ard, and three and a half to the northward of the eight of Magellan, having, from the eaſt entrance the ſtreight, been three and thirty days in ſailing ound Cape Horn. Notwithſtanding the doubling of ape Horn is repreſented as a very dangerous courſe, nd that it is generally thought paſſing through the reight of Magellan is leſs perilous, yet the Endea- our doubled it with as little danger as ſhe would the orth Foreland on the Kentiſh coaſt; the heavens were erenely fair, the wind temperate, the weather plea- nt, and, being near ſhore, we had a very diſtinct iew of the coaſt. The Dolphin, in her laſt voyage, hich was performed at the ſame ſeaſon with ours, was ot leſs than three months in paſſing through the reight of Magellan, not including the time that ſhe ay in Port Famine; and it was the opinion of Captain ook, that if we had come through the ſtreight, we ould not at this time have been in theſe ſeas; nd ſhould have ſuffered many inconveniences which ve have not experienced. It is a queſtion, Whe- her it is better to go through the ſtreight of Le Maire, r to ſtand to the eaſtward, and go round Staten land? his can only be determined according to particular ircumſtances, which may make one or the other more ligible. The ſtreight may be paſſed with ſafety by at- ending to the directions already given; but if the and is fallen in with to the eaſtward of the ſtreight, nd the wind ſhould prove tempeſtuous, it would be beſt, in our opinion, to go round Staten land. In any caſe, however, we cannot approve of running into the latitude of 61 or 62, before any attempt is made to ſtand to the weſtward.

March the 1ſt we found ourſelves, both by obſerva- tion and the log, in latitude 38 deg. 44 min. ſouth, and 110 deg. 33 min. weſt longitude, a concurrence very ſingular in a run of 660 leagues; and which

proved, that no current had affected the ſhip in her courſe; and it was likewiſe concluded, that we had not come near land of any conſiderable extent; for currents are always found at no great diſtance from the ſhore. Mr. Banks killed above ſixty birds in one day; alſo two foreſt flies, ſuch as had never yet been deſcribed; he alſo found a cuttle-fiſh of a ſpecies different from thoſe generally known in Europe. This fiſh had a double row of talons, reſembling thoſe of a cat, which it could put forth or withdraw at pleaſure. When dreſſed it made excellent ſoup. On the 24th our latitude was 22 deg. 11 min. ſouth, and 127 deg. 55 min. weſt longitude. On the 25th a young marine about twenty threw himſelf overboard, on account of a quarrel about a piece of ſeal ſkin, which he took by way of frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he took the accuſation ſo much to heart, that in the duſk of the evening he threw himſelf into the ſea and was drowned.

On the 4th of April about 10 o'clock, A. M. Peter Briſcoe, ſervant to Mr. Banks, diſcovered land to the ſouth, at the diſtance of about three or four leagues. Capt. Cook immediately gave orders to haul for it, when we found an iſland of an oval form, having a lagoon or lake in the center, that extended over the greater part of it. The ſurrounding border of land was low and narrow in many places, eſpecially towards the ſouth, where the beach conſiſted of a reef of rocks. Three places on the north ſide had the ſame appearance, ſo that on the whole the land ſeemed to reſemble ſeveral woody iſlands. To the weſt was a large clump of trees, and in the center two cocoa-nut trees. When within a mile of the north ſide, though we caſt out a line, no bottom could be found at 130 fathom, nor any good anchorage. This iſland was covered with trees, but we could diſcern no other ſpecies than the palm and the cocoa-nut. Several of the natives were diſcovered on ſhore; they appeared to be tall, with heads remarkable large, which probably ſome bandage might have

increaſed.

creaſed. Their complexion was of the copper colour, and their hair was black. Some of theſe people were ſeen abreaſt of the ſhip, holding poles or pikes of twice their own height. They appeared alſo naked; but when they retired, on the ſhip's paſſing by the iſlands, they put on a light-coloured covering. Some clumps of palm-trees ſerved them for habitations, which at a diſtance appeared like hilly ground, and the view of the groves was a very agreeable one. Our captain called this place Lagoon Iſland. It lay in 18 degrees ſouth latitude, and 139 weſt longitude. In the afternoon we again ſaw land to the north-weſt; by ſun-ſet we reached it, when it appeared to be a low iſland of a circular form, and about a mile in circumference. The land was covered with verdure of various kinds, but no inhabitants were viſible, nor any cocoa-nut trees. This iſland is diſtant from that of Lagoon about ſeven leagues north, and 62 weſt, which our gentlemen on board named Thumb Cap.

On the 5th we continued our courſe with a favourable wind, and about three o'clock diſcovered land to the weſtward. It was low, in form reſembling a bow, and in circumference ſeemed to be ten or twelve leagues. Its length is about three or four leagues, and its width about two hundred yards. The beach was flat, and ſeemed to have no other herbage upon it than ſea-weeds. The reſemblance of a bow was preſerved in the arch and cord forming the land, while the intermediate ſpace was taken up by water. The arch, in general, was covered with trees of various verdure and different heights. This iſland, from the ſmoke that was diſcovered, appeared to be inhabited, and we gave it the name of Bow Iſland.

On the 6th about noon, we again ſaw land to the weſt, and at three o'clock we came up with it. This land ſeemed to be divided into two parts, or rather a collection of iſlands (to which we gave the name of the Groups) to the extent of about nine leagues. The two weſt were divided from the others by a ſtreight, the

breadth of which was about half a mile. Some of theſe iſlands were ten miles or more in length, but appeared like long narrow ſtrings of land, not above a quarter of a mile in breadth; but they produced trees, however, of different kinds, among which was the cocoa-nut tree. Several of the inhabitants came out in their canoes, and two of them ſhewed an intention of coming on board; but theſe, like the reſt, ſtopped at the reef. From the obſervations made, theſe people appeared to be about our ſize, and well made. Their complexion was brown, and they were naked. In general, they had two weapons; one was a long pole, ſpear pointed, and the other reſembled a paddle. Several of their canoes were conſtructed in ſuch a manner, as not to carry more than three perſons; others were fitted up for ſix or ſeven; and one of theſe boats hoiſted a ſail, which was converted into an awning when a ſhower of rain fell. Capt. Cook would not ſtay for any of them, neither could we determine, whether the ſignals made were meant for defiance, or for invitation; one party waving their hats, and another anſwering by ſhouting. In this reſpect it was not judged prudent to try the experiment, in order to be convinced, as the iſland appeared of no importance, and the crew not being in want of any thing it could produce. This curioſity was therefore laid aſide, in expectation of ſoon diſcovering the iſland, where we had been directed to make our aſtronomical obſervations, the natives of which, it was reaſonable to conjecture, would make no reſiſtance, having already experienced the danger of oppoſing an European force.

On the 7th we diſcovered another iſland, judged to be in compaſs about five miles, being very low, and having a piece of water in the center. It appeared to abound in wood, and to be covered with verdure, but we ſaw no inhabitants upon it. It was named Bird Iſland, from the number of birds that were ſeen flying about. This lies in latitude 17 deg. 48 min. ſouth and 143 deg. 35 min. weſt longitude; diſtant ten leagues

gues, in the direction weſt half north from the weſt d of the Groups.

On the 8th in the afternoon we ſaw land to the north-rd, and came abreaſt of it in the evening, at about miles diſtance. This land ſeemed to be a chain low iſlands, of an oval figure, and conſiſted of coral d ſand, with a few clumps of ſmall trees, and in middle of it was a lagoon. On account of its pearance, it was called Chain Iſland.

On the 10th, after a tempeſtuous night, we came ſight of Oſnaburgh iſland, called by the natives itea. This iſland is circular, about four miles in cumference, partly rocky, and partly covered with es.



CHAP.

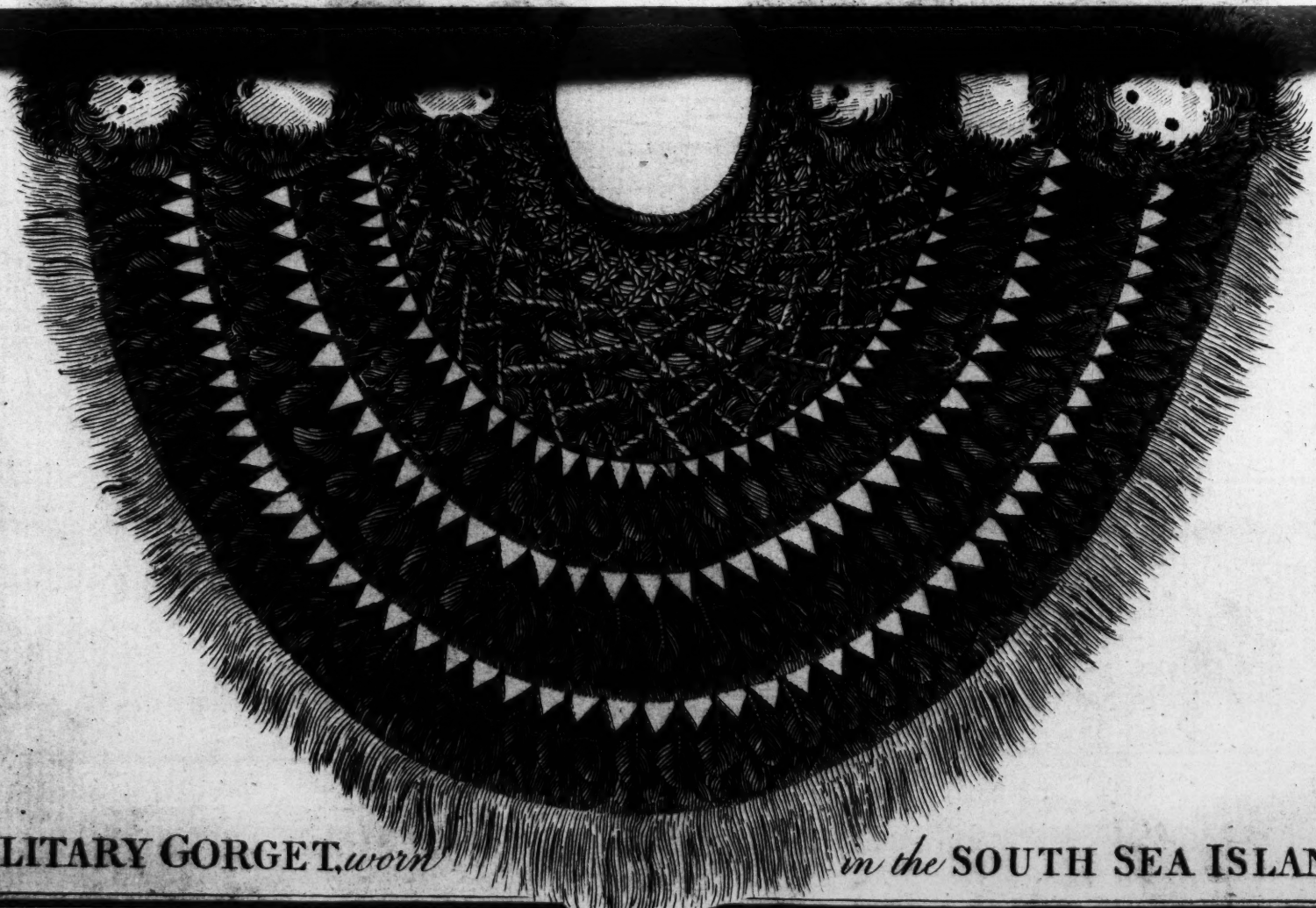
CHAP. III.

The Endeavour arrives at Otaheite, or George the Third's Iſland—Rules eſtabliſhed by Capt. Cook for conducting a trade with the natives—An account of ſeveral incidents during his ſtay in this iſland—An obſervatory and fort erected—Excurſions into the woods—Viſits from ſeveral of the chiefs—The muſic of the natives, and their manner of burying their dead, deſcribed—Other excurſions and incidents, both on board and on ſhore—Firſt interview with Oberea, the ſuppoſed Queen of the iſland—The fort deſcribed—The quadrant ſtolen, and the conſequences—A viſit to Tootahah, an Indian chief—A wreſtling match deſcribed—European ſeeds are ſown—The Indians give our people names.

ON the 11th we made Otaheite, or, as captain Wallis had named it, king George the Third's Iſland. The calms prevented our approaching it till the morning of the 12th, when a breeze ſprung up, and ſeveral canoes were ſeen making towards the ſhip. Few of them, however, would come near, and thoſe who did could not be perſuaded to come on board. They had brought with them young plantains and branches of trees, which were handed up the ſhip's ſide, and, by their deſire, were ſtuck in conſpicuous parts of the rigging as tokens of peace and friendſhip. We then purchaſed their commodities, conſiſting of cocoa-nuts, bananas, bread-fruit, apples and figs, which were very acceptable to the crew. On the evening of the ſame day we opened the north-weſt point of the iſle, to which the Dolphin's people had given the name of York Iſland. We lay off and on all night, and in the morning of the 13th we entered Port Royal Harbour in the iſland of Otaheite, and anchored within half a mile of the ſhore. Many of the natives came off immediately in their canoes, and brought with them bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, apples, and ſome hogs, which



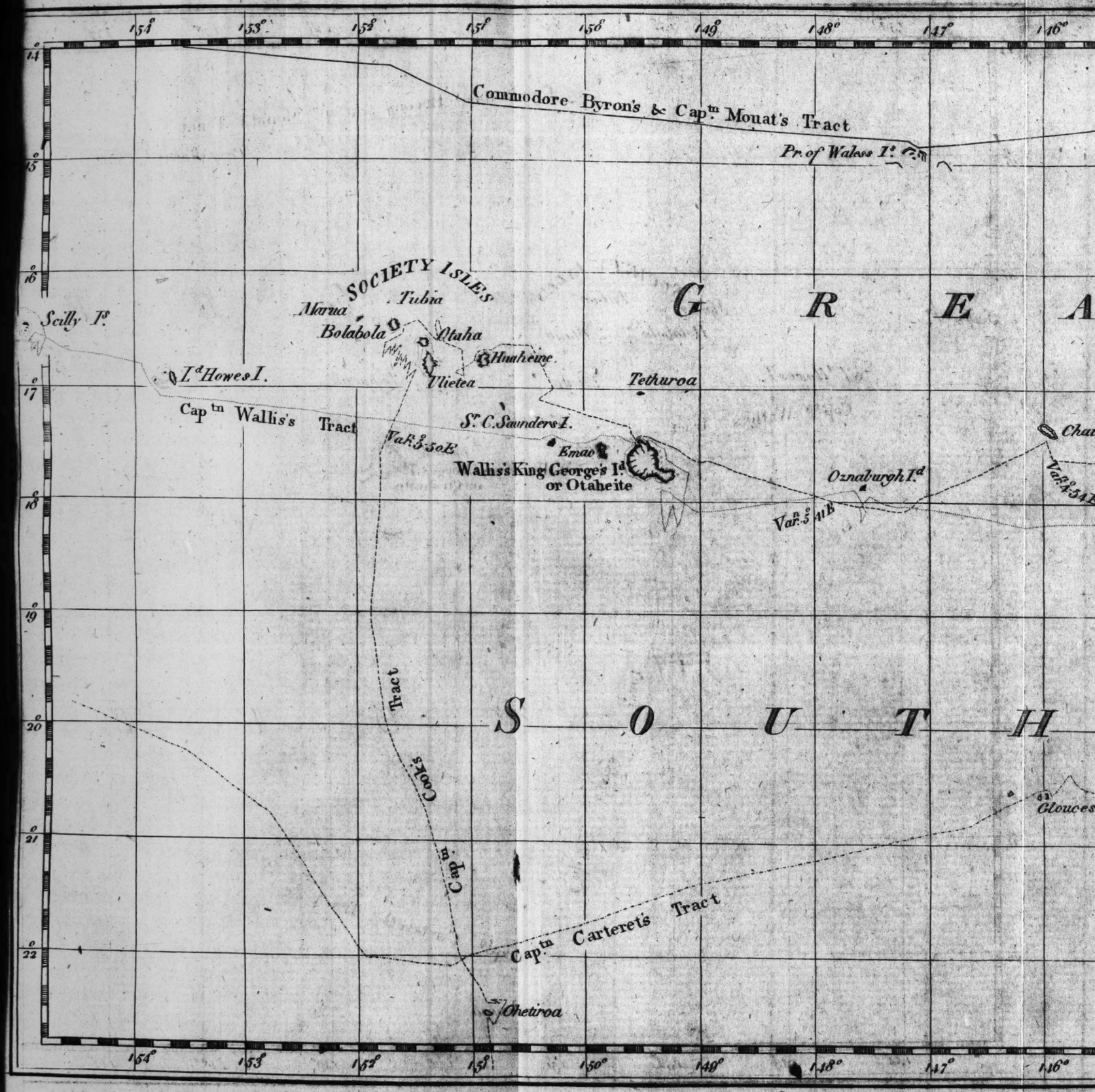
A View of the Island *of* OTAHEITE, *with a* Representation *of several* Vessels *belonging to that Island.*



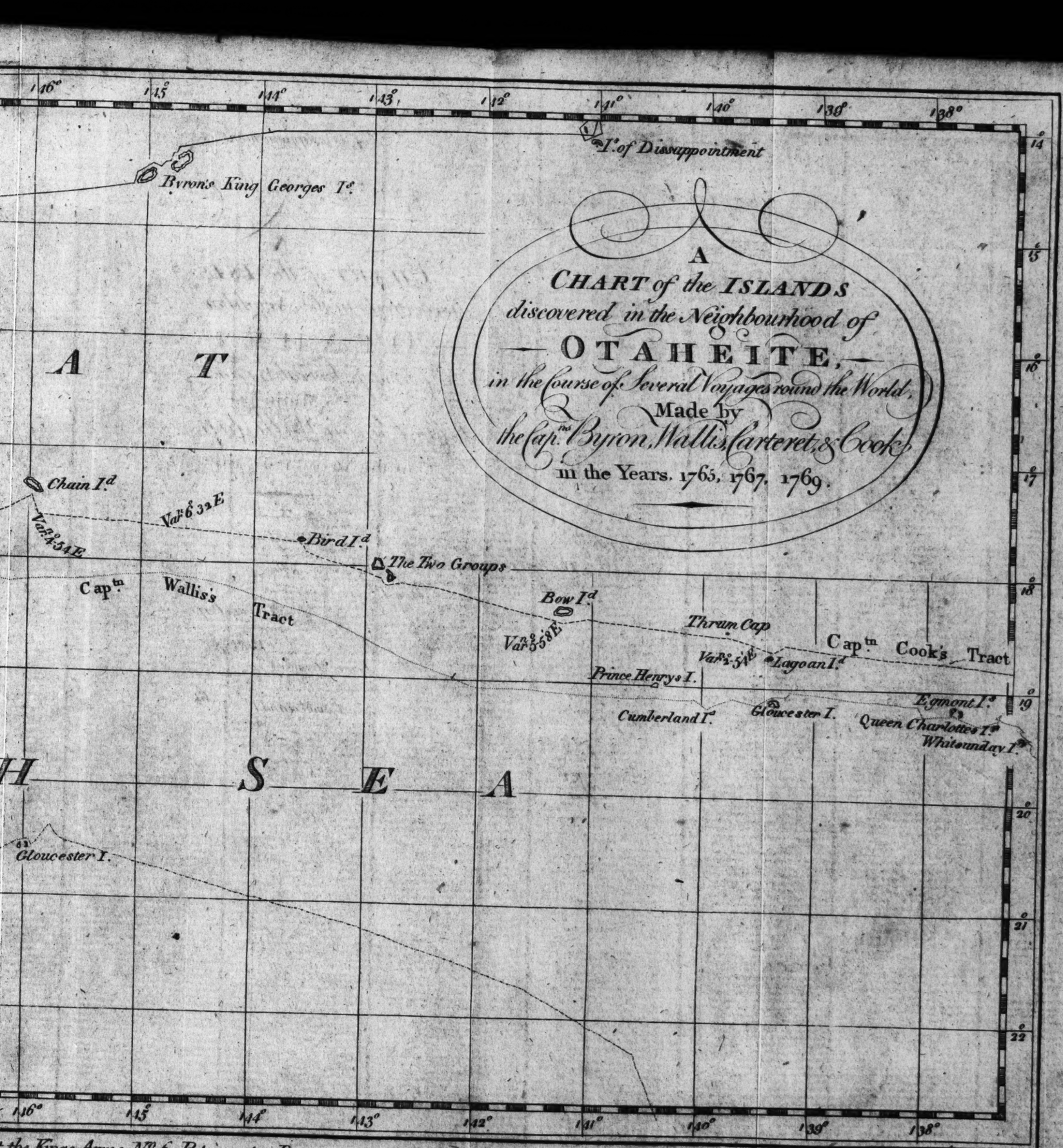
a MILITARY GORGET, *worn in the* SOUTH SEA ISLANDS.

Smith sculp.

London, Published as the Act directs, by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N.o 16, Paternoster Row.



London. Published by Alex.r Hogg. at the King



the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.

they bartered for beads and other trinkets with the ship's company. The tree which bears the bread-fruit is about the size of a horſe-cheſnut: its leaves are near a foot and a half in length, in ſhape oblong, and very much reſemble thoſe of the fig-tree. The fruit is not unlike the cantaloupe melon: it is incloſed in a thin rind, and its core is as large as a man's thumb. The ſubſtance of this fruit is ſomewhat like that of new bread, and as white as the blanched almond. It muſt be roaſted, and when eaten it has the taſte of a ſlight ſweetneſs.

Among thoſe who came on board the Endeavour, was an elderly man, named Owhaw, known to Mr. Cook and others who had viſited this iſland with captain Wallis. Owhaw being conſidered by our gentlemen as a very uſeful man, they ſtudied to pleaſe him, and to gratify all his wiſhes. As our continuance in George's Iſland was not likely to be very ſhort, certain rules were drawn up to be obſerved by every perſon on board his majeſty's bark the Endeavour, for the better eſtabliſhing a regular trade with the natives. The ſubſtance of theſe rules were, "That in order to prevent quarrels and confuſion, every one of the ſhip's crew ſhould endeavour to treat the inhabitants of Otaheite with humanity, and by all fair means to cultivate a friendſhip with them. That no officer, ſeaman, or other perſon, belonging to the ſhip, excepting ſuch only who were appointed to barter with the natives, ſhould trade, or offer to trade, for any kinds of proviſions, fruit, or other produce of the iſland, without having expreſs leave ſo to do. That no perſon ſhould embezzle, trade, or offer to trade with any part of the ſhip's ſtores: and, that no ſort of iron, or any thing made of iron, nor any ſort of cloth, or other uſeful articles in the ſhip, ſhould be given in exchange for any thing but proviſion." Theſe neceſſary rules were ſigned by Capt. Cook, and, being his orders, to the non-obſervance of them were annexed certain penalties, beſides the puniſhment according to the uſual cuſtom of the navy.

When the bark was properly ſecured, Capt. Cook Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on ſhore, with party under arms, and their friend the old Indian They were received by ſome hundreds of the native with awe and reverence, who exchanged the tokens peace, and offered to conduct them to a ſpot of ground which would be more convenient for them to occupy than that where they had landed. On their way, th Engliſh made the Indians ſome preſents, which th latter very thankfully received. They now took a cir cuit of about four miles through groves of the bread fruit and cocoa-trees. Intermingled with theſe wer the dwellings of the natives, which conſiſted of hu without walls. In the courſe of their journey the found but few fowls or hogs, and underſtood, that non of their conductors, nor any of the people they ha hitherto ſeen, were perſons of rank in the iſland Thoſe of our crew, who had before been at Otaheite i the Dolphin, were likewiſe of opinion, that the queen reſidence had been removed, as no traces of it wer now to be diſcovered.

Next day, in the morning, before they could leav the ſhip, ſeveral canoes came about her filled with peo ple, whoſe dreſs denoted them to be of the ſuperio claſs. Two of theſe came on board, and each of the fixed upon a friend: one of them choſe Mr. Bank and the other Captain Cook. The ceremonials conſiſte of taking off their cloaths in great part, and puttin them upon their adopted friends. This compliment was returned by our gentlemen preſenting them wit ſome trinkets. They then made ſigns for their ne friends to go with them to the place of their abode; an the latter being deſirous of being acquainted with th people, and finding out a more convenient harbou accepted the invitation, and went with them, accom panied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook and others. We all landed in two boats at the diſtanc of about three miles, among a great number of the na tives, who conducted us to a large habitation, wher we were introduced to a middle-aged man, name

Tootaha



Mr. BANKS *receiving a* Visit *from the* KING *of* DUKE *of* YORK'S ISLAND.

Tootahah. When we were ſeated, he preſented to Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of perfumed cloth, which compliment was returned by a preſent from Mr. Banks. We were then conducted to ſeveral other large dwellings, wherein we walked about with great freedom. The ladies, ſo far from ſhunning, invited, and even preſſed us to be ſeated. By frequently pointing to the mats upon the ground, and ſometimes drawing us down upon them, we had no doubt of their being leſs jealous of obſervation than we were; but the huts that are all open, except a roof, afforded no place of requiſite retirement. Walking afterwards along the ſhore, we met, accompanied by a great number of natives, another chief, named Tubourai Tamaide, with whom we ſettled a treaty of peace, in the manner before deſcribed. This chief gave us to underſtand, that he had proviſions at our ſervice, if we choſe to eat, which he produced, and we dined heartily upon bread-fruit, plantains, and fiſh. During this viſit, Tomio, the chief's wife, placed herſelf upon the ſame mat with Mr. Banks, cloſe by him; but as ſhe was not young, nor appeared ever to have poſſeſſed many charms, this gentleman paid little attention to her; and Tomio received an additional mortification, when Mr. Banks beckoned to a pretty girl, who, with ſome reluctance, came and placed herſelf by him. The princeſs was ſomewhat chagrined at this preference given to her rival; nevertheleſs ſhe continued her aſſiduities to her gueſt. This whimſical ſcene was interrupted by an event of a more ſerious nature; Dr. Solander having miſſed his opera glaſs, a complaint was made to the chief, which interrupted the convivial party. The complaint was inforced by Mr. Banks's ſtarting up and ſtriking the butt-end of his muſquet againſt the ground, which ſtruck the Indians with ſuch a panic, that all of them ran precipitately out of the houſe, except the chief and a few others of the ſuperior claſs. That no diſadvantageous notions might be entertained of them on account of this circumſtance, the chief obſerved, with an air of

great probity, That the place which the Doctor had mentioned on this occaſion, was not within his diſtrict, but that he would ſend to the chief of it, and endeavour to recover it, adding, that if this could not be done, he would make the Doctor compenſation, by giving him as much new cloth (of which he produced large quantities) as ſhould be thought equal to the value. The caſe however was brought in a little time, and the glaſs itſelf ſoon after, which deprived us of the merit we ſhould otherwiſe have had in refuſing the cloth which had been offered us. But it afforded an opportunity of convincing the natives of our generoſity, by laviſhing rewards upon them for an action, to which ſelf-intereſt had been the motive, rather than any ſentiment of probity; to which, from numerous tranſactions, they appeared to be abſolutely ſtrangers. After this adventure was amicably terminated, we returned to the ſhip about ſix o'clock in the evening. On Saturday the 15th, in the morning, ſeveral of the chiefs, one of whom was very corpulent, came on board from the other point, bringing with them hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreſhments, in exchange for which they received linen, beads, and other trinkets; but ſome of them took the liberty of ſtealing the lightening chain. This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks, and ſome of the other gentlemen, went on ſhore, to fix on a proper ſpot to erect a fort for their defence, during their ſtay on the iſland, and the ground was accordingly marked out for that purpoſe; a great number of the natives looking on all the while, and behaving in the moſt peaceable and friendly manner.

Mr. Banks and his friends having ſeen few hogs and poultry in their walks, they ſuſpected that they had been driven up the country; for which reaſon they determined to penetrate into the woods, the tent being guarded by a petty officer and a party of marines. On this excurſion ſeveral of the natives accompanied the Engliſh. While the party were on their march, they were alarmed by the diſcharge of two pieces fired by the guard of the tent. Owhaw having now called together

together the captain's party, diſperſed all the Indians, except three, who in token of their fidelity broke branches of trees, according to their cuſtom, and whom it was thought proper to retain. When they returned to the tent, they found that an Indian having ſnatched away one of the centinel's muſquets, a young midſhipman, who commanded the party, was ſo imprudent as to give the marines orders to fire, which were obeyed, and many of the natives were wounded; but this did not ſatisfy them, as the offender had not fallen, they therefore purſued him and revenged the theft by his death. This action, which was equally inconſiſtent with policy and humanity, could not but be very diſpleaſing to Mr. Banks; but as what had paſſed could not be recalled, nothing remained but to endeavour to accommodate matters with the Indians. Accordingly he croſſed the river, where he met an old man, through whoſe mediation ſeveral of the natives were prevailed to come over to them, and to give the uſual tokens of friendſhip. The next morning, however, they ſaw but few of the natives on the banks, and none came on board, from whence it was concluded that the treatment they had received the former day was not yet forgotten, and the Engliſh were confirmed in this opinion by Owhaw's having left them. In conſequence of theſe circumſtances, the captain brought the ſhip nearer to the ſhore, and moored her in ſuch a manner as to make her broad-ſide bear on the ſpot which they had marked out for erecting their little fortification. But in the evening the captain and ſome of the gentlemen going on ſhore, the Indians came round them, and trafficked with them as uſual.

Mr. Banks on the 17th, had the misfortune to loſe Mr. Buchan. The ſame day they received a viſit from Tubourai Tamaide, and Tootahah. They brought with them ſome plantain branches, and till theſe were received, they would not venture on board. They bartered ſome bread-fruit and a hog, which was ready dreſſed, for nails, with the Engliſh.

The fort began to be erected on the 18th. And now

ſome

ſome of the company were employed in throwing up intrenchments, whilſt others were buſied in cutting faſcines and pickets, in which work the Indians aſſiſted them. They fortified three ſides of the place, with intrenchments and palliſadoes, and upon the other which was flanked by a river, where a breaſt-work was formed by the water-caſks. The natives brought down ſuch quantities of bread fruit and cocoa-nuts this day, that it was neceſſary to refuſe them, and to let them know that none would be wanting for two days. Mr. Banks ſlept for the firſt time on ſhore this night. None of the Indians attempted to approach his tent, he had however taken the precaution of placing centinels about it, for its defence, in caſe any attack ſhould be meditated.

Tubourai Tamaide viſited Mr. Banks at his tent on Wedneſday the 19th, and brought with him his wife and family with the materials for erecting a houſe, intending to build it near the fort. He afterwards aſked that gentleman to accompany him to the woods. On their arrival at a place where he ſometimes reſided, he preſented his gueſts with two garments, one of which was of red cloth, and the other was made of fine matting; having thus clothed Mr. Banks, he conducted him to the ſhip, and ſtaid to dinner with his wife and ſon. They had a diſh ſerved up that day, which was prepared by the attendants of Tubourai Tamaide, which ſeemed like wheat flour, and being mixed with cocoa-nut liquor, it was ſtirred about till it became a jelly. Its flavour was ſomething like blanc mange. A ſort of market was now eſtabliſhed without the lines of the fort, which was tolerably well ſupplied, and Tubourai Tamaide was a frequent gueſt to Mr. Banks, and the other Engliſh gentlemen. He was the only native that attempted to uſe a knife and fork, being fond of adopting European manners. Mr. Monkhouſe the ſurgeon being abroad on his evening walk, reported that he had ſeen the body of a man who had been ſhot from the tent, of which he gave the following account—"The corpſe was depoſited in a ſhed, cloſe to the houſe where the deceaſed had reſided when he was alive,



A CORPSE *on a* TOUPAPOW, *attended by the* Chief Mourner, *&c*

alive, and others were within ten yards of it. It was about fifteen feet in length, and eleven in breadth, and the height was proportionable. The ſides and one end were incloſed with a ſort of wicker work; the other end was entirely open. The body lay on a bier, the frame of which was of wood, ſupported by poſts about five feet high, and was covered with a mat, over which lay a white cloth: by the ſide of it lay a wooden mace, and towards the head two cocoa ſhells; towards the feet was a bunch of green leaves, and ſmall dried boughs tied together, and ſtuck in the ground, near which was a ſtone about the ſize of a cocoa-nut; here were alſo placed a young plantain tree, and a ſtone axe. A great many palm nuts were hung in ſtrings at the open end of the ſhed; and the ſtem of a palm-tree was ſtuck up on the outſide of it, upon which was placed a cocoa-ſhell filled with water. At the ſide of one of the poſts there hung a little bag with ſome roaſted pieces of bread-fruit." The natives were not pleaſed at his approaching the body, their jealouſy appearing plainly in their countenances and geſtures.

On the 22d we were entertained by ſome of the muſicians of the country, who performed on an inſtrument ſomewhat reſembling a German flute, but the performer blew through his noſtril inſtead of his mouth, and others accompanied this inſtrument, ſinging only one tune. Some of the Indians brought their axes to grind and repair, moſt of which they had obtained from Captain Wallis and his people in the Dolphin; but a French one occaſioned a little ſpeculation, and at length upon enquiry, it appeared to have been left here by M. de Bougainville.

On the 24th Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander made an excurſion into the country, and found it level and fertile along the ſhore, for about two miles to the eaſtward; after which the hills reached quite to the water's edge; and farther on they ran out into the ſea. Having paſſed theſe hills, which continued about three miles, we came to an extenſive plain, abounding with good habitations, and the people ſeemed to enjoy a conſiderable ſhare of property. The place was ren-

dered

dered ſtill more agreeable by a wide river iſſuing from a valley, and which watered it. We croſſed this river, when perceiving the country to be barren, we reſolved to return. Juſt as we were about ſo to do, we were offered ſome refreſhment by a man, which ſome writers have expreſſed to be a mixture of many nations, but different from all, his ſkin being of a dead white, though ſome parts of his body were not ſo white as others; and his hair, eye-brows and beard were as white as his ſkin. His eyes appeared like thoſe that are blood ſhot, and he ſeemed as if he was near-ſighted. Upon our return, the exceſſive joy of Tubourai Tamaide and his women is not to be expreſſed.

On the 25th, in the evening, ſeveral of the gentlemens knives being miſſing, Mr. Banks, who had loſt his among the reſt, accuſed Tubourai Tamaide of having taken it, which as he was innocent, occaſioned him a great deal of unmerited anxiety. He made ſigns, while the tears ſtarted from his eyes, that if he had ever been guilty of ſuch a theft as was imputed to him, he would ſuffer his throat to be cut. But though he was innocent, it was plain from many inſtances, that the natives of this iſland were very much addicted to thieving: though Mr. Banks's ſervant had miſlaid the knife in queſtion, yet the reſt were produced in a rag, by one of the natives.

When the guns on the 26th, which were ſix ſwivels, had been mounted on the fort, the Indians ſeemed to be in great trouble, and ſeveral of the fiſhermen removed, fearing, notwithſtanding all the marks of friendſhip which had been ſhewn to them by our people, they ſhould, within a few days, be fired at from the fort: yet the next day, being the 27th, Tubourai Tamaide came with three women, and a friend of his, who was a remarkable glutton, into the fort to dine with us, and after dinner returned to his own houſe in the wood. In a ſhort time after he came back to complain to Mr. Banks, of a butcher, who had threatened to cut his wife's throat, becauſe ſhe would not barter a ſtone hatchet for a nail. It appearing clearly that the offender

der had infringed one of the rules enjoined by the Captain for trading with the natives, he was flogged on board in their ſight. When the firſt ſtroke had been given they were humane enough to interfere, and intreated earneſtly that the culprit might be untied; but when this favour was denied them, they ſhewed ſtrong ſigns of concern, and burſt into tears.

On the 28th, Terapo, one of Tubourai Tamaide's female attendants, came down to the fort in the greateſt affliction, the tears guſhing from her eyes. Mr. Banks ſeeing her full of lamentation and ſorrow, inſiſted upon knowing the cauſe, but inſtead of anſwering, ſhe ſtruck herſelf ſeveral times with a ſhark's tooth upon her head, till an effuſion of blood followed, while her diſtreſs was diſregarded by ſeveral other Indians, who continued laughing and talking with the utmoſt unconcern. After this, ſhe gathered up ſome pieces of cloth, which ſhe had thrown down to catch the blood, and threw them into the ſea, as if ſhe wiſhed to prevent the leaſt trace and mark of her abſurd behaviour. She then bathed in the river, and with remarkable chearfulneſs returned to the tent, as if nothing extraordinary had happened. During the forenoon of this day the Indian canoes were continually coming in, and people of both ſexes filled the tents of the fort. Mr. Molineux, maſter of the Endeavour, ſeeing a woman whoſe name was Oberea, he declared ſhe was the ſame perſon, whom he judged to be the queen of the iſland when he was there with Capt. Wallis. The eyes of every one were now fixed on her, of whom ſo much had been ſaid by the crew of the Dolphin, and in the account given of her by the captain. With regard to her perſon, ſhe was tall and rather large made; ſhe was about forty years of age, her ſkin white, and her eyes had great expreſſion in them: ſhe had been handſome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. It was not long before an offer was made to conduct her on board the ſhip, which ſhe accepted. Many preſents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which ſhe viewed very attentively. Capt. Cook accompanied her on

ſhore, and when we landed, ſhe preſented him with a hog and ſome plantains, in return for his preſents, which were carried to the fort in proceſſion, Oberea and the Captain bringing up the rear. In the way they met Tootahah, who, though not king, ſeemed to be at this time inveſted with ſovereign authority. Envy is found among thoſe who are ſuppoſed to be the children of ſimple nature. Her influence was plainly viſible in a matter which to us was rather a ſubject of laughter than of ſerious conſideration. Tootahah no ſooner ſaw the doll, than he diſcovered ſtrong ſymptoms of jealouſy, nor could any method be found of conciliating his friendſhip, but that of complimenting him with a baby alſo. A doll was now preferable to a hatchet; but a very ſhort time taught the Indians the ſuperior value of iron, which, on account of its uſefulneſs, prevailed over every other conſideration. To ſuch of the men who came from time to time on board, the ſhip's proviſions ſeemed to be very acceptable, but the women did not chuſe to taſte them; and though they were courted to dine with our gentlemen, yet, for reaſons known only to themſelves, they preferred the eating of plantains with the ſervants.

On the 29th, near noon, Mr. Banks paid a viſit to Oberea, but was informed that ſhe was aſleep under the awning of her canoe; and, going to call her up, was ſurprized at finding her in bed with a young fellow of about twenty-five years of age, a diſcovery which cauſed him to retire rather diſconcerted; but he ſoon underſtood that a commerce of this kind was by no means conſidered as ſcandalous, the ladies frequently courting the men to amorous dalliance, of which they made no ſecret; and as to young Obadee, found in bed with the queen, he was well known by every one to be the object of her laſcivious hours. The queen ſoon got up, and dreſſed herſelf to wait upon Mr. Banks, and, after having, as a token of her particular regard, put on him a ſuit of fine cloth, they proceeded together to the tents. In the evening Mr. Banks viſited Tubourai Tamaide. He was aſtoniſhed

to find this chief and his family in tears, and not being able to diſcover the cauſe, he ſoon took leave of them. Upon his return the officers told him, that Owhaw had foretold, that the guns would be fired within four days, and as this was the eve of the third day, they were alarmed at the ſituation they judged themſelves to be in. As we were apprehenſive of ill conſequences from this prepoſſeſſion, the centinels were doubled at the fort, and we thought it neceſſary to keep under arms; but Mr. Banks walking round the point, at two in the morning, and finding nothing that might tend to encourage his ſuſpicions, he dropped them, and reſted ſecure in the fort. This our little fortification was now complete. A bank of earth four feet and an half high on the inſide, and a ditch without ten feet broad and ſix deep, formed the north and ſouth ſides. On the weſt, oppoſite the bay, was another bank (with palliſadoes upon it) four feet high; but a ditch was unneceſſary, the works being at high-water mark. Upon the river's bank, on the eaſt-ſide, was a range of water caſks, filled with water. This being thought the weakeſt ſide, we planted two four pounders, and mounted ſix ſwivel guns, which commanded the only two avenues from the woods. We had about forty-five men in this fort, including the officers, and other gentlemen who reſided on ſhore.

On the 30th Tomio came in great haſte to our tents, and taking Mr. Banks by the arm, told him that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, owing to ſomewhat that had been given him by our people, and intreated him inſtantly to go to him. Accordingly Mr. Banks went, and found the Indian very ſick. He had been vomiting, and had thrown up a leaf which they ſaid contained ſome of the poiſon. Mr. Banks having examined the leaf, found it was nothing but tobacco, which the Indian had begged of ſome of the ſhip's company.

The matter, however, appeared in a very ſerious light to Tubourai Tamaide, who really concluded from the violent ſickneſs he ſuffered, that he had ſwallowed

ſome deadly drug, the terror of which no doubt contributed to make him yet more ſick. While Mr. Banks was examining the leaf, he looked up to him, as if he had been juſt on the point of death. But when the nature of this dreadful poiſon was found out, he only ordered him to drink of cocoa-nut milk, which ſoon reſtored him to health, and he was as chearful as before the accident happened. Theſe people ſeemed in particular inſtances to be ſometimes ſtrangely afflicted from ſlight cauſes.

On the 1ſt of May, Captain Cook having produced an iron adze, which was made in imitation of the ſtone ones uſed by the natives, ſhewed it to Tootahah, as a curioſity. The latter ſnatched it up and inſiſted on having it; and though he was offered the choice of any of the articles in the cheſts which were opened before him, yet he would not accept of any thing in its ſtead. A chief dined with us that day, who had been on board ſome time before, accompanied by ſome of his women that uſed to feed him. He now came alone; and when all things were ſet ready for dinner, the captain helped him to ſome victuals, ſuppoſing that he would have diſpenſed with the ceremony of being fed; but he was deceived; for the chief never attempted to eat, and would have gone without his dinner, if one of the ſervants had not fed him. The next morning, May 2, we took the aſtronomical quadrant and ſome of the inſtruments on ſhore that afternoon; and to our great ſurpriſe when we wanted to make uſe of the quadrant, the next day, it was not to be found; a matter which was looked upon as the more extraordinary, as a centinel had been placed for the whole night within a few yards of the place where it was depoſited. Our own people, at firſt, were ſuſpected of being concerned in this theft, and, as the inſtrument had never been taken out of the caſe, it was ſuſpected that ſome perſon might have carried it off, under the ſuppoſition that its contents were articles uſed in traffic. A ſtrict ſearch was made in and about the fort, and a conſiderable reward offered in order to

obtain it again. But all this proving fruitleſs, Mr. Banks, accompanied by Mr. Green and ſome other gentlemen, ſet out for the woods, where they thought they might probably get ſome tidings of what was ſtolen. In their way, they met with Tubourai Tamaide and ſome of the natives. This chief was made to underſtand by ſigns, that they had loſt the quadrant, and that as ſome of his countrymen muſt have taken it, they inſiſted upon being ſhewn the place where it was concealed. Having proceeded a few miles together, after ſome enquiry, Tubourai Tamaide was informed who the thief was, and it was found that he was then at a place about four miles diſtant. As they had no arms but a brace of piſtols, not caring to truſt themſelves ſo far from the fort, a meſſage was diſpatched to Captain Cook, requeſting him to ſend out a party to ſupport them. The captain accordingly ſet out with a party properly armed, after having laid an embargo upon all the canoes in the bay.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks and Mr. Green proceeded on their way, and at the place which had been mentioned, were met by one of Tubourai Tamaide's own people, bringing with him part of the quadrant; the caſe and the other parts of the inſtrument were recovered ſoon afterwards, when it was found that it had received no real injury, though it had been taken to pieces.

When they returned in the evening, they were much ſurpriſed to find Tootahah under confinement in the fort, while a croud of the natives ſurrounded the gate, diſcovering marks of the greateſt anxiety for the fate of their chief. The occaſion of his detention originated from the conduct of the Indians: alarmed at Capt. Cook's having gone up the country with an armed party, moſt of the natives left the fort that evening, and one of the canoes attempted to quit the bay. The lieutenant who commanded on board the ſhip, having it in charge not to ſuffer any canoe to depart, ſent a boat to detain her, but ſhe no ſooner approached, than the Indians jumped into the ſea. Tootahah being of

the

the number, was taken up, and ſent by the lieutenant to the officer that commanded at the fort, who concluded he ſhould do right to detain him priſoner, while the poor chief thought of nothing but being put to death, till Capt. Cook cauſed him to be returned, to the great joy of his countrymen. But the natives were ſtill inclined to bear this affair in their minds; and as a proof of it, they neglected to ſupply the market with proviſions. Mr. Banks walking into the woods, heard great murmurings concerning the treatment of Tootahah, who, as they ſaid, had been ill uſed and beaten, though Mr. Banks declared he was quite ignorant of his having received ſuch treatment.

The chief now ſent for ſuch hogs to be reſtored as he had left behind him, at firſt intending them as a preſent, which by this time, perhaps, he did not think the Engliſh had merited; but they refuſed to ſend them unleſs he would come himſelf, thinking by an interview to promote a reconciliation; and this they were the more deſious of, as they were told it would be a fortnight before he would pay them a viſit.

On the 3d proviſions were extremely ſcarce, as the markets continued to be ill ſupplied on the account already mentioned; and it was not without ſome difficulty, that Mr. Banks got a few baſkets of bread-fruit from Tubourai Tamaide. Tootahah on the 4th ſent for an axe and a ſhirt in return for the hogs, which were accordingly promiſed to be brought him the next day. He ſent again early in the morning of the 5th, and Mr. Banks and the Doctor ſet out in the pinnace, taking with them one of Tootahah's people, and ſoon reached Eparre, where he reſided, which was a few miles to the weſtward. When they arrived there, they found a great number of the natives waiting for them on the ſhore, and were conducted directly to the chief, the people notwithſtanding the offence they had ſo lately taken, ſhouting out in their language, "Tootahah is your friend." He was ſitting under a tree, and ſome old men were ſtanding about him. Having made ſigns for them to be ſeated, he aſked for the axe, which

which was then given him by Capt. Cook, as alſo the ſhirt that he had demanded, and a broad-cloth garment, which latter he put on, and was well pleaſed with the preſent. They ate a mouthful together in the boat, and were afterwards conducted to a large court-yard on one ſide of the chief's houſe, where they were to be entertained with wreſtling after the manner of the country. He himſelf ſat at the upper end of the area, having ſeveral of his principal men on each ſide of him, who appeared as judges of the ſport, which was as follow:

"Ten or twelve combatants entered the area, and after many ſimple ceremonies of challenging, they engaged, and each endeavoured to throw his antagoniſt by mere ſtrength; thus they ſeized each other by the hand, or other parts of the body, grappling, without the leaſt art, till one, by having a greater hold, or ſtronger muſcular force, threw his antagoniſt on his back. The conqueſt was applauded by the old men with a few words repeated in a kind of tune, and with three huzzas. After one engagement another ſucceeded; but if the combatants could not throw each other in the ſpace of a minute, they parted, either by conſent, or the intervention of their friends. Several women of rank in the country were preſent, but it was thought they only attended this amuſement in compliment to the Engliſh gentlemen. A man with a ſtick, who made way for us when we landed, officiated as maſter of the ceremonies, keeping order among the people, and thoſe of them who preſſed forward he ſtruck with his ſtick very ſmartly. During theſe athletic ſports, another party of men performed a dance, for the ſpace of a minute, but neither of theſe parties took the leaſt notice of each other, their attention being wholly fixed on their own endeavours to pleaſe and conquer. At the concluſion of this entertainment, not unlike the wreſtling matches of remote antiquity, we were told, that ſome hogs, and a large quantity of bread fruit were preparing for our dinner, very agreeable intelligence to thoſe whoſe appetites were ſharpened

ed

ed by their journey; but our hoſt, inſtead of ſetting his two hogs before us, ordered one of them to be carried into our boat. Here we thought to have enjoyed our good cheer, and yet we neither dined on ſhore, nor in the boat, but at the deſire of Tubourai Tamaide, proceeded as far as the ſhip: no ſmall mortification this, as we had to row four miles, while our dinner was growing cold: however, we were at laſt gratified with our promiſed repaſt, of which our chief and his friends had a liberal ſhare. This friendly reconciliation between them and us, operated on the natives like a charm: for it was no ſooner known that Tubourai Tamaide was on board, than proviſions of all kinds were brought to the fort in great plenty.

On the 8th, early in the morning, Mr. Molineux, the maſter, and Mr. Green ſet out in the pinnace to the eaſtward, in order to procure ſome poultry, or hogs. They ſaw many of the latter, and one turtle, yet could not purchaſe either, becauſe they belonged to Tootahah, and without his permiſſion, the people could not be prevailed upon to ſell them. Hence we concluded that Tootahah was indeed a prince; and we afterwards learnt, that, in this part of the iſland, he acted as regent for a minor, whom we never ſaw all the time of our ſtay here. However, ſome time afterwards, having produced ſome nails to barter for proviſions, we obtained near twenty cocoa-nuts, and ſome bread-fruit, for one of the ſmalleſt ſize, ſo that we ſoon had plenty of theſe articles, though no hogs. In this excurſion Mr. Green imagined he had diſcovered a tree ſixty yards in circumference; but, on his return, he was informed by our two gentlemen, that it was a ſpecies of the fig, whoſe branches bending down to the earth take freſh root, and thus form a maſs of trunks, which being all united by a common vegetation, might eaſily be miſtaken for one trunk or body.

On the 9th in the forenoon, Oberea paid us a viſit, accompanied by her favourite Obadee, preſenting us with a hog and ſome bread-fruit. This was the firſt viſit we had received from this lady, ſince the loſs of our

our quadrant, and the confinement of Tootahah. By this time our forge was ſet up and at work, which afforded a new ſubject of admiration to the Indians, and to Capt. Cook an additional opportunity of conferring obligations on them, by permitting the ſmith, in his leiſure hours, to convert the old iron, which they were ſuppoſed to have procured from the Dolphin, into different kinds of tools. Oberea produced as much old iron as would have made for her another axe; this ſhe requeſted to have done; however the lady could not be gratified in this particular, upon which ſhe brought a broken axe, deſiring it might be mended. The axe was mended, and to all appearance ſhe was content. On their return home, the Indians took with them the canoe which had lain ſome time at the point.

On the 10th we ſowed, in ground properly prepared, ſeeds of melons, and other plants, but none of them came up, except muſtard. Mr. Banks thought the ſeeds were ſpoiled by a total excluſion of freſh air, they having all been put into ſmall bottles, and ſealed up with roſin. We learnt this day, that the Indians called the iſland Otaheite, the name by which we have diſtinguiſhed it; but we were not ſo fortunate in our endeavours to teach them our names; and, after repeated attempts to pronounce them, which proved fruitleſs, they had recourſe to new ones, the productions of their own invention. Capt. Cook they named Toote; Mr. Hicks, Hete. The maſter they called Boba, from his chriſtian name Robert; Mr. Gore, Toarro; Dr. Solander, Torano; Mr. Banks, Tapane; Mr. Green, Eteree; Mr. Parkinſon, Patani; Mr. Sporing, Polini; and ſo on for the greateſt part of the ſhip's crew. Theſe perhaps, were ſignificant words in their own language; and we are inclined to this opinion, becauſe Mr. Monkhouſe, who commanded the party, that ſhot the man for ſtealing a muſket, they named Matte, which was not merely an arbitrary ſound, but in their language it ſignified dead.

CHAP. IV.

An extraordinary viſit—Divine ſervice attended by the natives of Otaheite—An uncommon ſight—Tubourai Tamaide found guilty of theft—A viſit paid to Tootahah—Various adventures at that time, and an extraordinary amuſement of the Indians—A relation of what happened at the fort, while preparations were making to obſerve the Tranſit of Venus—The obſervations made with great ſucceſs—A particular account and deſcription of an Indian funeral—An unuſual character among the Indians—A robbery at the fort—Specimen of Indian cookery—A narrative of various incidents—A circumnavigation of the iſland, and occurrences during this expedition—A burying-place, and a Morai, or place of worſhip deſcribed—An inland expedition of Mr. Banks—Preparations made by the crew of the Endeavour to leave the iſland of Otaheite—An account of the departure of the Endeavour, and the behaviour of the natives, particularly of Tupid, on this occaſion.

ON the 12th of this month (May) an uncommon ceremony was performed by ſome of the natives. As Mr. Banks was ſitting in his boat, trading with them as uſual, ſome ladies, who were ſtrangers, advanced in proceſſion towards him. The reſt of the Indians on each ſide gave way, and formed a lane for the viſitors to paſs, who coming up to Mr. Banks, preſented him with ſome parrots feathers, and various kinds of plants. Tupid, who ſtood by Mr. Banks, acted as his maſter of the ceremonies, and receiving the branches, which were brought at ſix different times, laid them down in the boat. After this ſome large bundles of cloth were brought, conſiſting of nine pieces, which being divided into three parcels, one of the women, called Oorattooa, who appeared to be the principal, ſtepping upon one of them, pulled up her cloaths as high as her waiſt, and then, with an air of unaffected ſimplicity, turned round three times. This ceremony

ceremony ſhe repeated, with ſimilar circumſtances, on the other two parcels of cloth; and the whole being then preſented to Mr. Banks, the ladies went and ſaluted him; in return for which extraordinary favours, he made them ſuch preſents as he thought would beſt pleaſe them. In the evening the gentlemen of the fort were viſited by Oberea, and Otheorea, her favourite female attendant, who was a very agreeable girl, and whom we were the more pleaſed to ſee, becauſe it had been reported that ſhe was either ſick or dead.

On the 13th Tubourai Tamaide offended Mr. Banks, by ſnatching his gun out of his hand, and firing it in the air; an action which alſo much ſurprized that gentleman, as he imagined him totally ignorant of the uſe of it. And as the ignorance of the people of thoſe countries in regard to this particular, muſt always cauſe them to fear their gueſts, Mr. Banks therefore made a ſerious matter of what, probably, the other meant only as a joke, and, not without threats, gave him to underſtand, that for him but to touch the piece was a high inſult. The offender made no reply, but ſet out immediately, with his family, for Eparre. Great inconvenience being apprehended from this man, and as in many inſtances he had been particularly uſeful, Mr. Banks determined to follow him. He ſet out the ſame evening from the fort, accompanied by Mr. Molineux, and found him in the middle of a large circle of people, the picture of extreme grief, which was alſo viſible in the countenances of his attendants. One of the women expreſſed her trouble in the ſame manner as Terapo had done, upon another occaſion. Mr. Banks loſt no time in endeavouring to put an end to all animoſity. The chief was ſoothed into confidence, and, a double canoe being got ready, they all returned together to the fort before ſupper: and as a pledge of ſincere reconciliation, both he and his wife paſſed the night in the tent of Mr. Banks. That very night, notwithſtanding their preſence, one of the natives attempted to ſcale

the barricadoes of the fort; but, being diſcovered by one of our centinels, he ran away much faſter than any of our people could follow him. The temptation which cauſed him to attempt what might have coſt him his life, was, doubtleſs the iron and iron tools which were in uſe at the armourer's forge: incitements to theft which none of the Indians could reſiſt.

On Sunday the 14th, in the morning divine ſervice was performed at the fort. We hoped to have had the preſence of ſome of the Indians, but before the time fixed on for beginning the ſervice, moſt of them were gone home. Tubourai Tamaide and his wife were preſent, but though they behaved with much decency, they made no enquiries with reſpect to the ceremonies, and their brethren were as little inquiſitive upon their return. The day thus begun with acts of devotion, was concluded with thoſe of lewdneſs exhibited among the natives by way of entertainment. Among the reſt a young fellow lay publickly with a girl about twelve years of age, in the preſence of many of our people, and a great number of the Indians, without the leaſt ſenſe of impropriety or indecency. Oberea, and ſome women of the firſt rank in the country were ſpectators, who even gave inſtructions to the girl how to perform her part, which, young as ſhe was, ſeemed unneceſſary.

On Monday the 15th, Tubourai Tamaide was detected in having committed a theft. Mr. Banks had a good opinion of this chief, but, when his honeſty was put to the teſt, a baſket of nails, left in the corner of the tent proved irreſiſtible. He confeſſed the fact of having ſtolen four nails, but when reſtitution was demanded, Tamaide ſaid the nails were at Eparre. High words paſſed on the occaſion, and, in the end, the Indian produced one of the nails, and was to be forgiven on reſtoring the reſt; but his virtue was not equal to the taſk, and he withdrew himſelf, as uſual, when he had committed any offence. At this time our long-boat was ſo much eaten with worms, that it was found neceſſary to give her a new bottom. On examining

the

the pinnace, thinking ſhe might be in the ſame ſtate, we had the ſatisfaction to perceive, that not a worm had touched her. This difference in the condition of the two boats we attributed to the different ingredients with which their bottoms were paid; the long-boat had been paid with varniſh of pine, and the pinnace painted with white lead and oil; which laſt coating we think to be the moſt eligible for the bottoms of all boats intended for this part of the world.

On the 24th, Mr. Hicks was ſent to Tootahah, who had removed from Eparre to a place called Tettahah. The chief having ſent ſeveral times to requeſt a viſit from the captain, promiſing, at the ſame time, that he would acknowledge the favour by a preſent of ſome hogs, the buſineſs of Mr. Hicks was, to obtain, if poſſible, the hogs, upon eaſier terms than the required viſit. He was received in a friendly manner by Tootahah, who, upon his arrival, produced one hog only, but promiſed three more that were at a diſtance the next morning. Mr. Hicks waited patiently till the appointed time; but when the morning came, he was obliged to depart with the ſingle hog that had been preſented to him.

On the 25th, Mr. Banks ſeeing Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio at the tent for the firſt time ſince the former had been detected in ſtealing the nails, he endeavoured to perſuade him to reſtore them, but in vain. As our gentlemen treated him with a reſerve and coolneſs which he could not but perceive, his ſtay was ſhort, and he departed in a very abrupt manner; nor could our ſurgeon the next morning perſuade to effect a reconciliation by bringing down the nails.

On the 27th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and ſome others, ſet out in the pinnace to viſit Tootahah, who had again removed to a place called Atahourou, ſix miles from his laſt abode; and not being able to go half way thither in a boat, it was almoſt evening before we arrived. We found the chief, as uſual, ſitting under a tree with a great crowd about

him. Having made our preſents in due form, conſiſting of a yellow ſtuff petticoat, and other trifling articles, we were invited to ſupper, and to paſs the night there. Our party conſiſted of ſix only; but the place was crowded with a greater number than the houſes and canoes could contain. Among other gueſts were Oberea with her train of attendants. Mr. Banks having accepted of a lodging in Oberea's canoe, left his companions in order to retire to reſt. Oberea had the charge of his cloaths; but notwithſtanding her care, they were ſtolen, as were alſo his piſtols, his powder horn, and ſeveral other things out of his waiſtcoat pockets. An alarm was given to Tootahah, in the next canoe, who went with Oberea in ſearch of the thief, leaving Mr. Banks with only his breeches and waiſtcoat on, and his muſket uncharged. They ſoon returned, but without ſucceſs. Mr. Banks thought proper to put up with the loſs at preſent, and retired a ſecond time to reſt; juſt as he had compoſed himſelf to ſleep, he was rouzed by ſome muſic, and obſerved lights at a little diſtance from the ſhore. He then roſe to go and find his companions. As ſoon as he approached the lights, he found the hut where Captain Cook and three others of the gentlemen lay, when he began to relate his miſadventure to them; they told him in return, that they had loſt their ſtockings and jackets. In effect Dr. Solander, who joined them the next morning, was the only one that eſcaped being robbed, and he had ſlept at a houſe that was a mile diſtant. This accident, however, did not prevent Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, and the reſt that were at the hut, from attending to the muſic, which was a ſort of concert called Heiva, and conſiſted of drums, flutes, and ſeveral voices. They retired again to their repoſe, after this entertainment was over.

Their cloaths, and the other things which had been ſtolen, were never heard of afterwards, but Mr. Banks got ſome cloaths from Oberea, in which he made a whimſical appearance.

On

On the 28th, we ſet out for the boat, having obtained only one hog, which had been intended for our ſupper the preceding night; ſo that all things conſidered, we had little reaſon to be ſatisfied with our excurſion. On our return to the boat, we had a ſpecimen of the agility of the Indian ſwimmers, ſome of whom, merely for diverſion, ſwam in a ſurf where no European boat could have lived, and where our beſt ſwimmers muſt have periſhed, had they accidentally fallen in with it.

At this time the preparations were made for viewing the tranſit of Venus, and two parties were ſent out to make obſervations from different ſpots, that in caſe of failing in one place they might ſucceed in another. They employed themſelves for ſome time in preparing their inſtruments, and inſtructing thoſe gentlemen who were to go out, in the uſe of them; and on Thurſday the firſt of June, they ſent the long-boat with Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouſe (the two obſervers) and Mr. Sporing, the latter of whom was a friend of Mr. Banks, with proper inſtruments to Emayo. Others were ſent to find out a ſpot that might anſwer the purpoſe, at a convenient diſtance from their principal ſtation.

The party that went towards Emayo, after rowing the greater part of the night, having hailed a canoe, were informed of a place by the Indians on board, which was judged proper for their obſervatory, where they accordingly fixed their tents. It was a rock that roſe out of the water about 140 yards from the ſhore.

Saturday the 3d (the day of the tranſit) Mr. Banks, as ſoon as it was light, left them, in order to go and get freſh proviſions on the iſland. This gentleman had the ſatisfaction to ſee the ſun-riſe without a cloud. The king, whoſe name was Tarrao, came to pay him a viſit, as he was trading with the natives, and brought with him Nuna his ſiſter. As it was cuſtomary for the people in theſe parts to be ſeated at their conferences,

ences, Mr. Banks ſpread his turban of Indian cloth, which he wore as a hat, upon the ground, on which they all ſet down. Then a hog and a dog, ſome cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit were brought, being the king's preſent, and Mr. Banks ſent for an adze, a ſhirt, and ſome beads, which were preſented to his majeſty, who received them with apparent ſatisfaction. Tubourai Tamaide, and Tomio, who had gone with Mr. Banks, came from the obſervatory, when Tomio, who was ſaid to be related to Tarrao, gave him a long nail, and left a ſhirt as a preſent for Nuna. Afterwards the king, his ſiſter, and three beautiful young women their attendants, returned with Mr. Banks to the obſervatory, where he ſhewed them the tranſit of Venus, when that planet was upon the ſun, and acquainted them, that to view it in that ſituation was the cauſe of his undertaking a voyage to thoſe remoter parts. According to this gentleman's account, the produce of this iſland is nearly the ſame with that of Otaheite; the people alſo reſembled thoſe of that iſland: he had ſeen many of them upon it who were acquainted with the nature of trading articles. The parties that were ſent out to make their obſervations on the tranſit, had good ſucceſs in the undertaking: though they differed rather more than might have been expected in their account of the contact.

Mr. Green's account was as follows:

	Hours.	Min.	Sec.	
The firſt external contact -	9	25	4	Morn.
The firſt internal contact, or total emerſion - -	9	44	4	Morn.
The ſecond internal contact, or beginning of the emerſion - - -	3	14	8	Afternoon.
The ſecond external contact, or total emerſion - -	3	32	10	Afternoon.

Latitude

Latitude of the obſervatory 17 deg. 29 min. 15 ſec. ſouth;—longitude, 149 deg. 32 min. 30 ſec. weſt from Greenwich.

While the gentlemen and officers were buſied in viewing the tranſit, ſome of the ſhip's company having broke into the ſtore-room, took the liberty of ſtealing a quantity of ſpike-nails. After a ſtrict ſearch the thief was found out; he had, however, but few of the nails in his poſſeſſion; but he was ordered to receive two dozen of laſhes, by way of example.

On the 4th, the two parties ſent out to obſerve the tranſit were abſent; on which account we deferred keeping his majeſty's birth-day to the next day, the 5th, when we celebrated the ſame; ſeveral of the Indian chiefs partook of our entertainment, and in turn drank his majeſty's health by the name of Kihiargo, the neareſt imitation they could produce of king George. About this time an old female of ſome diſtinction dying, gave the Engliſh an opportunity of obſerving the ceremonies uſed by theſe iſlanders in diſpoſing of the dead bodies of their people; which, as we have obſerved, they do not directly bury. The reader has already ſeen the deſcription of the bier, the placing the bread-fruit, &c. which, according to Tubourai Tamaide's account, was a kind of offering to their gods. In the front of the ſquare ſpace, a ſort of ſtile was placed where the relations of the deceaſed ſtood to give token of their grief. There were under the awning ſome pieces of cloth, whereon were the tears and blood of the mourners, who uſed to wound themſelves with a ſhark's tooth upon theſe occaſions. Four temporary houſes were erected at a ſmall diſtance, in one of which remained ſome of the relations of the deceaſed; the chief mourner reſided in another; and was dreſſed in a particular manner, in order to perform a certain ceremony. When the corpſe is rotten, the bones are buried near the ſpot, and theſe places were found to anſwer the purpoſes of religious worſhip, though Captain Wallis could not perceive the traces of any ſuch

worſhip among them. Concerning the ceremony we are about to ſpeak of, the following is the account we have of it, which may not be unentertaining to the curious reader. It was performed on the 10th, and Mr. Banks was ſo deſirous of being preſent, that he agreed to take a part in it, when he was informed that he could not be a ſpectator on any other condition. He went accordingly in the evening, to the place where the body was depoſited, where he was met by the relations of the deceaſed, and was afterwards joined by ſeveral other perſons. Tubourai Tamaide was the principal mourner, whoſe dreſs was whimſical, though not altogether ungraceful. Mr. Banks was obliged to quit his European dreſs, and had no other covering than a ſmall piece of cloth that was tied round his middle; his body was blacked over with charcoal and water, as were the bodies of ſeveral others, and among them ſome females, who were no more covered than himſelf. The proceſſion then began, and the chief mourner uttered ſome words which were judged to be a prayer, when he approached the body, and he repeated theſe words as he came up to his own houſe. They afterwards went on, by permiſſion, towards the fort. It is uſual for the reſt of the Indians to ſhun theſe proceſſions as much as poſſible; they accordingly ran into the woods in great haſte, as ſoon as this came in view. From the fort the mourners proceeded along the ſhore, croſſed the river, then entered the woods, paſſing ſeveral houſes, which became immediately uninhabited, and during the reſt of the proceſſion, which continued for half an hour, not an Indian was viſible. Mr. Banks filled an office that they called Niniveh, and there were two others in the ſame character. When none of the other natives were to be ſeen, they approached the chief mourner, ſaying Imatata; then thoſe who had aſſiſted at the ceremony bathed in the river, and reſumed their former dreſs. Such was this uncommon ceremony, in which Mr. Banks performed a principal part, and received applauſe from Tubourai Tamaide, the chief mourner. What can have introduced among theſe Indians

dians ſo ſtrange a cuſtom as that of expoſing their dead above ground, till the fleſh is conſumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impoſſible to gueſs; nor is it leſs difficult to determine, why the repoſitories of their dead ſhould be alſo places of worſhip.

On the 12th, the Indians having loſt ſome of their bows and arrows, and ſtrings of plaited hair, a complaint was made to the captain. The affair was enquired into, and the fact being well atteſted, the offenders received each two dozen of laſhes. The ſame day Tubourai Tamaide brought his bow and arrows, in order to decide a challenge of ſhooting between him and Mr. Gore; but it appeared they had miſtaken each other, Mr. Gore intending to diſcharge his arrow at a mark, while the Indian meant only to try who could ſhoot fartheſt. The challenge was dropped in conſequence of the miſtake being diſcovered; but Tubourai Tamaide, in order to diſplay kis ſkill, kneeling down, ſhot an arrow, unfeathered (as they all are) near the ſixth part of a mile, dropping the bow the inſtant the arrow was diſcharged. Mr. Banks having this morning met ſeveral of the natives, and being informed, that a muſical entertainment was expected in the evening, he, and the reſt of the Engliſh gentlemen reſolved to be preſent at the ſame. They went accordingly, and heard a performance on drums and flutes by a kind of itinerant muſicians. The drummers ſung to the muſic, and the Engliſh were much ſurprized when they found that they were the ſubject of their lays. The ſongs they therefore concluded to be extemporary effuſions, the rewards whereof were ſuch neceſſaries as they required.

On the 14th, in the night, an iron coal rake for the oven was ſtole; and many other things having at different times been conveyed away, Capt. Cook judged it of ſome conſequence, to put an end, if poſſible, to ſuch practices, by making it their common intereſt to prevent it. He had already given ſtrict orders, that the centinels ſhould not fire upon the Indians, even if

they were detected in the fact; but many repeated depredations determined him to make reprizals. About twenty-ſeven of their double canoes with ſails were juſt arrived, containing cargoes of fiſh; theſe the captain ſeized, and then gave notice, that unleſs the rake, and all the other things that had been ſtolen, were returned, the veſſels ſhould be burnt. The menace produced no other effect than the reſtitution of the rake, all the other things remaining in their poſſeſſion. The captain, however, thought fit to give up the cargoes, as the innocent natives were in great diſtreſs for want of them, and in order to prevent the confuſion ariſing from diſputes concerning the property of the different lots of goods which they had on board. About this time another incident had nearly, notwithſtanding all our caution, embroiled us with the Indians. The captain having ſent a boat on ſhore to get ballaſt, the officer not meeting immediately with what he wanted, began to pull down one of the ſepulchral manſions of the dead; which ſacrilegious act of violence was immediately oppoſed by the enraged iſlanders. Intelligence of this diſpute being received by Mr. Banks, he went to the place, and a reconciliation was ſoon effected, which put an end to the diſpute, by ſending the boat's crew to the river's ſide, where a ſufficient quantity of ſtones were to be had without a poſſibility of giving offence. This was the only inſtance in which they offered to oppoſe us; and (except the affair of the fort, which has been related) the only inſult offered to an individual, was, when Mr. Monkhouſe, the ſurgeon, took a flower from a tree which grew in one of their ſepulchral incloſures. Upon this occaſion, an Indian came ſuddenly behind him and ſtruck him; Mr. Monkhouſe laid hold of the aſſailant, but two of his countrymen reſcued him, and then they all ran off as faſt as they could.

On the 19th in the evening, while the canoes were ſtill detained, Oberea and ſeveral of her attendants paid us a viſit. She came from Tootahah's palace, in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-

fruit,

fruit, and other preſents, among which was a dog; but not a ſingle article of the things that had been ſtolen: theſe ſhe ſaid had been taken away by her favourite Obadee, whom ſhe had beaten and diſmiſſed. She ſeemed however conſcious that her ſtory did not deſerve credit, and appeared at firſt much terrified; though ſhe ſurmounted her fears with great fortitude, and was deſirous of ſleeping with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent; but this being refuſed, ſhe was obliged to paſs the night in her canoe. A whole tribe of Indians would have ſlept in the ball tent, but were not permitted. The next morning Oberea returned, putting herſelf wholly in our power, when we accepted of her preſents, which ſhe doubtleſs thought, and juſtly too, the moſt effectual means to bring about a reconciliation. Two of her attendants were very aſſiduous in getting themſelves huſbands, in which they ſucceeded, by means of the ſurgeon and one of the lieutenants: they ſeemed very agreeable till bed-time, and determined to lie in Mr. Banks's tent, which they accordingly did, till the ſurgeon having ſome words with one of them Mr. Banks thruſt her out, and ſhe was followed by the reſt, except Otea-Tea, who cried ſome time, and then he turned her out alſo. This had like to have become a ſerious affair, a duel being talked of between Mr. Banks and Mr. Monkhouſe, but it was happily avoided. We had been informed that in this iſland dogs were eſteemed more delicate food than pork, as thoſe bred by the natives to be eaten, fed entirely upon vegetables. The experiment was tried. Tupia undertook to kill and dreſs the dog, which he did, by making a hole in the ground, and baking it. We all agreed it was a very good diſh.

On the 21ſt we were viſited by many of the natives, who brought with them various preſents. Among the reſt was a chief, named Oamo, whom we had not yet ſeen. He had a boy and a young woman with him. The former was carried on a man's back, which we conſidered as a piece of ſtate, for he was well able to walk. Oberea and ſome of the Indians went from the

the fort to meet them, being bareheaded, and uncovered as low as the waiſt; circumſtances we had noticed before, and judged them marks of reſpect, which was uſually ſhewn to perſons of high rank. When Oamo entered the tent, the young woman, though ſeemingly very curious, could not be prevailed upon to accompany him. The youth was introduced by Dr. Solander, but as ſoon as the Indians within ſaw him, they took care to have him very ſoon ſent out. Our curioſity being raiſed by theſe circumſtances, we made enquiry concerning the ſtrangers, and were informed, that Oamo was the huſband of Oberea, but that by mutual conſent they had been for a conſiderable time ſeparated, and the boy and girl were their children. The former was called Terridiri: he was heir apparent to the ſovereignty of the iſlands, and when he had attained the proper age, was to marry his ſiſter. The preſent ſovereign Outou, was a minor, and the ſon of a prince, called Whappai. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were all brothers; Whappai was the eldeſt, and Oamo the ſecond; wherefore Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri was heir to the ſovereignty. To us it appeared ſingular, that a boy ſhould reign during the life of his father; but in the iſland of Otaheite, a boy ſucceeds to his father's authority and title as ſoon as he is born; but a regent being neceſſary, that office, though elective, generally falls upon the father, who holds the reins of government till the child is of age. The reaſon that the election had fallen upon Tootahah was on account of his warlike exploits among his brethren. Oamo was very inquiſitive, aſking a number of queſtions concerning the Engliſh, by which he appeared to be a man of underſtanding and penetration. At this time, a woman named Teetee, who came from the weſt of the iſland, preſented to the captain an elegant garment. The ground was a bright yellow, it was bordered with red, and there were ſeveral croſſes in the middle of it, which they had probably learned from the French.

On the 23d in the morning, one of our hands being

ing miſſing, we enquired for him among the natives, and were told he was at Eparre, Tootahah's reſidence in the wood, and one of the Indians offered to fetch him back, which he did that evening. On his return he informed us, that he had been taken from the fort, and carried to the top of the bay by three men, who forced him into a canoe, after having ſtripped him, and conducted him to Eparre, where he received ſome cloaths from Tootahah, who endeavoured to prevail on him to continue there. We had reaſon to conclude this account true, for the natives were no ſooner acquainted with his return, than they left the fort with precipitation.

On June the 26th, early in the morning, Capt. Cook ſetting out in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, ſailed to the eaſtward with a deſign of circum-navigating the iſland. They went on ſhore in the forenoon, in a diſtrict in the government of Ahio, a young chief, who at the tents had frequently been their viſitant. And here alſo they ſaw ſeveral other natives whom they knew. Afterwards they proceeded to the harbour where M. Bougainville's veſſel lay, when he came to Otaheite, and were ſhewn the watering place, and the ſpot where he pitched his tent.

Coming to a large bay, when the Engliſh gentlemen mentioned their deſign of going to the other ſide, their Indian guide, whoſe name was Titubaola, ſaid he would not accompany them, and alſo endeavoured to diſſuade the captain and his people from going; obſerving, "That country was inhabited by people who were not ſubject to Tootahah, and who would deſtroy them all." Notwithſtanding, they reſolved to put their deſign in execution, loading their pieces with ball; and at laſt Titubaola ventured to go with them. Having rowed till it was dark, they reached a narrow iſthmus which ſevered the iſland in two parts, and theſe formed diſtinct governments. However, as they had not yet got into the hoſtile part of the country, it was thought proper to go on ſhore to ſpend the night where Ooratova, the lady who had paid her compliments in ſo extraordinary a manner at the fort, provided them with a ſup-

per, and they proceeded for the other government in the morning. They afterwards landed in the diſtrict of a chief called Maraitata, and his father was called Pahairede. The former of theſe names ſignifies the *burying place of men*, and the other *the ſtealer of boats*. Theſe people gave the captain a very good reception, ſold them a hog for a hatchet, and furniſhed them with proviſions. A crowd of the natives came round the Engliſh gentlemen, amongſt whom however they met only two with whom they were acquainted; but they ſaw ſeveral European commodities, yet they perceived none that came out of the Endeavour. Here they ſaw two twelve pound ſhot, one of which had the king's broad arrow upon it, yet the natives ſaid they had them from M. Bougainville. They afterwards advanced till they reached that diſtrict which was under the government of Waheatua, who had a ſon: it was not known in whoſe hands the ſovereign power was depoſited. There they found a ſpacious plain with a river which they were obliged to paſs over in a canoe, though the Indians that followed them ſwam over without any difficulty. They proceeded on their journey for a conſiderable way along the ſhore, till at laſt they were met by the chief, who had with him an agreeable woman, of about twenty-two years of age, who was called Toudidde. Her name was not unknown to the Engliſh, who had often heard of it; and ſhe was ſuppoſed to bear the ſame rank here as Oberea bore in the other part of the iſland. The parts through which they now paſſed, appeared to be better cultivated than any of the reſt, and the burial places were more in number. They were neat, and ornamented with carvings; and in one a cock was ſeen, which was painted with the various colours of the bird. Though the country was apparently fertile, very little bread-fruit was to be found here, a nut called Ahee, furniſhing the principal ſubſiſtance of the inhabitants.

Being fatigued with their journey, they went on board their boat, and landed in the evening on an iſland which was called Otooareite, to ſeek for refreſhment. Mr. Banks

Banks going into the woods for this purpoſe, when it was dark could diſcover only one houſe, wherein he found ſome of the nuts before mentioned, and a little bread-fruit. There was a good harbour in the ſouthern part of this iſland, and the ſurrounding country appeared to be extremely fruitful. Landing at about three miles diſtance they found ſome of the natives whom they well knew, yet it was not without difficulty that they obtained a few cocoa-nuts before they departed. When they came a little farther to the eaſtward, they landed again, and here they were met by Mathiabo, the chief, with whom they were not at all acquainted. He ſupplied them with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and they purchaſed a hog of him for a glaſs bottle, which he choſe in preference to all the other articles preſented before him. A turkey-cock and a gooſe were ſeen here, which were much admired by the natives, and were ſuppoſed to have been left there by Capt. Wallis's people. They obſerved in a houſe near the ſame place ſeveral human jaw-bones, which ſeemed freſh, and had not loſt any of the teeth, and were faſtened to a board, of a ſemicircular figure; but they could not get any information of the cauſe of this extraordinary appearance.

When they left the place, the chief piloted them over the ſhoals. In the evening they opened the bay on the north-weſt ſide of the iſland, which anſwered to that on the ſouth-eaſt in ſuch a manner as to interſect it at the iſthmus. Several canoes came off here; and ſome beautiful women giving tokens that they ſhould be glad to ſee them on ſhore, they readily accepted the invitation.—They met with a very friendly reception from the chief whoſe name was Wiverou, who gave directions to ſome of his people to aſſiſt them in dreſſing their proviſions, which were now very plentiful, and they ſupped at Wiverou's houſe in company with Mathiabo. Part of the houſe was allotted for them to ſleep in, and ſoon after ſupper they retired to reſt. Mathiabo having borrowed a cloak of Mr. Banks, under the notion of uſing it as a coverlet when he lay

down, made off with it without being perceived either by that gentleman or his companions. However, news of the robbery being preſently brought them by one of the natives, they ſet out in purſuit of Mathiabo, but had proceeded only a very little way before they were met by a perſon bringing back the cloak which this chief had given up rather through fear than from any principle of honeſty. On their return they found the houſe entirely deſerted; and, about four in the morning, the centinel gave the alarm that the boat was miſſing. Captain Cook and Mr. Banks were greatly aſtoniſhed at this account, and ran to the water-ſide; but though it was a clear ſtar-light morning, no boat was to be ſeen. Their ſituation was now extremely diſagreeable. The party conſiſted of no more than four, having with them only one muſquet and two pocket piſtols, without a ſpare ball or a charge of powder. After having remained ſome time in a ſtate of anxiety, ariſing from theſe circumſtances, of which they feared the Indians might take advantage, the boat which had been driven away by the tide, returned; and Mr. Banks and his companions had no ſooner breakfaſted than they departed. This place is ſituated on the north ſide of Tiarrabou, the ſouth eaſt peninſula of the iſland, about five miles eaſt from the iſthmus, with a harbour equal to any in thoſe parts. It was fertile and populous, and the inhabitants every where behaved with great civility.

The laſt diſtrict in Tiarrabou, in which they landed, was governed by a chief named Omoe. He was then building a houſe, and was very earneſt to purchaſe a hatchet, but the gentlemen had not one left. He would not trade for nails, and they embarked, the chief, however, following them in his canoe with his wife. They were afterwards taken on board, but when they had ſailed about a league, deſired to be put on ſhore. Their requeſt was complied with, when the captain met with ſome of Omoe's people, who brought with them a very large hog. The chief agreed to exchange the hog for an axe and a nail, and to bring the

beaſt

beaſt to the fort. As the hog was a very fine one, Mr. Banks accepted the offer. They ſaw at this place one of the Indian Eatuas, a ſort of image, made of wicker-work, which reſembled a man in figure; it was near ſeven feet in height, and was covered with black and white feathers; on the head were four protuberances, called by the natives Tata ete, that is, little men. Having taken their leave of Omoe, the gentlemen ſet out on their return. They went on ſhore again, after they had rowed a few miles, but ſaw nothing, except a ſepulchral building, which was ornamented in an extraordinary manner. The pavement, on which was erected a pyramid, was very neat; at a ſmall diſtance there was a ſtone image, very uncouthly carved, but which the natives ſeemed to hold in high eſtimation. They paſſed through the harbour, which was the only one fit for ſhipping, on the ſouth of Opoureonou, ſituate about five miles to the weſtward of the iſthmus, between two ſmall iſlands, not far from the ſhore, and within a mile of each other. They were now near the diſtrict called Paparra, which was that where Oamo and Oberea governed, and where the travellers intended to ſpend the night. But when Mr. Banks and his company landed, about an hour before it was dark, it appeared they were both ſet out to pay them a viſit at the fort. However, they ſlept at Oberea's houſe, which was neat, though not large, and of which there was no inhabitant but her father, who ſhewed them much civility.

They took this opportunity of walking out upon a point upon which they had obſerved at a diſtance ſome trees called Etoa, which uſually grow upon the burial places of theſe iſlanders. They call thoſe burying grounds Morai. And here Mr. Banks ſaw a vaſt building, which he found to be the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, which was the moſt conſiderable piece of architecture in the iſland. It conſiſted of an enormous pile of ſtone work, raiſed in the form of a pyramid, with a flight of ſteps on each ſide. It was near 270 feet long, about one third as wide, and between 40 and

50 feet high. The foundation conſiſted of rock ſtones; the ſteps were of coral, and the upper part was of round pebbles, all of the ſame ſhape and ſize. The rock and coral-ſtones were ſquared with the utmoſt neatneſs and regularity, and the whole building appeared as compact and firm as if it had been erected by the beſt workmen in Europe. What rendered this laſt circumſtance the more extraordinary was the conſideration that when this pile was raiſed, the Indians muſt have been totally deſtitute of iron tools, either to ſhape their ſtones or for any other neceſſary purpoſe, nor had they mortar to cement them when made fit for uſe; ſo that a ſtructure of ſuch height and magnitude muſt have been a work of infinite labour and fatigue. In the centre of the ſummit was the repreſentation of a bird carved in wood; cloſe to this was the figure of a fiſh in ſtone. The pyramid conſtituted part of one ſide of a court or ſquare, the ſides of which were nearly equal; and the whole was walled in, and paved with flat ſtones, notwithſtanding which pavement, ſeveral plantains, and trees which the natives call Etoa, grew within the incloſure. At a ſmall diſtance to the weſtward of this edifice was another paved ſquare that contained ſeveral ſmall ſtages, called Ewattas by the natives; which appeared to be altars, whereon they placed the offerings to their gods. Mr. Banks afterwards obſerved whole hogs placed upon theſe ſtages or altars.

On Friday the 30th, they arrived at Otahourou, where they found their old acquaintance Tootahah, who received them with great civility, and provided them a good ſupper, and convenient lodging; and though they had been ſo ſhamefully plundered the laſt time they ſlept with this chief, they ſpent the night in the greateſt ſecurity, none of their cloaths nor any other article being miſſing the next morning. They returned to the fort at Port Royal Harbour on the firſt of July, having diſcovered the iſland, including both peninſulas, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

After their return from this tour, they were very much in want of bread-fruit, none of which they had

been

been able to provide themſelves with, as they had ſeen but little in the courſe of their journey; but their Indian friends coming round them, ſoon ſupplied their want of proviſions.

On the 3d, Mr. Banks made an excurſion, in order to trace the river up the valley to its ſource, and to remark how far the country was inhabited along the banks of it. He took ſome Indian guides with him, and after having ſeen houſes for about ſix miles, they came to one which was ſaid to be the laſt that could be met with. The maſter preſented them with cocoa-nuts and other fruits, and they proceeded on their walk, after a ſhort ſtay. They often paſſed through vaults formed by rocky fragments in the courſe of their journey, in which, as they were told, benighted travellers ſometimes took ſhelter. Purſuing the courſe of the river about ſix miles farther, they found it banked on both ſides by rocks almoſt 100 feet in height, and nearly perpendicular; a way, however, might be traced up theſe precipices, along which their Indian guides would have conducted them, but they declined the offer, as there did not appear to be any thing at the ſummit which could repay them for the toil and dangers of aſcending it. Mr. Banks ſought in vain for minerals among the rocks, which were naked almoſt on all ſides, but no mineral ſubſtances were found. The ſtones every where exhibited ſigns of having been burnt, which was the caſe of all the ſtones that were found while they ſtaid at Otaheite, and both there and in the neighbouring iſlands the traces of fire were evident in the clay upon the hills. On the 4th, a great quantity of the ſeeds of water-melons, oranges, limes, and other plants, brought from Rio de Janeiro were planted on each ſide of the fort, by Mr. Banks, who alſo plentifully ſupplied the Indians with them, and planted many of them in the woods. Some melons, the ſeeds of which had been ſown on the firſt arrival of the Engliſh at the iſland, grew up and flouriſhed before they left it.

By this time they began to think of making prepa-

rations

rations to depart; but Oamo, Oberea, and their ſon and daughter viſited them before they were ready to ſail. As to the young woman (whoſe name was Toimata) ſhe was curious to ſee the fort, but Oamo would not permit her to enter. The ſon of Waheatua, chief of the ſouth-eaſt peninſula, was alſo here at the ſame time; and they were favoured with the company of the Indian who had been ſo dextrous as to ſteal the quadrant, as above related. The carpenters being ordered to take down the gates and paliſadoes of the fort, to be converted into fire-wood for the Endeavour, one of the natives ſtole the ſtaple and hook of the gate; he was purſued in vain, but the property was afterwards recovered, and returned to the owners by Tubourai Tamaide.

Before their departure, two circumſtances happened which gave Capt. Cook ſome uneaſineſs. The firſt was, that two foreign ſailors having been abroad, one of them was robbed of his knife, which as he was endeavouring to recover, he was dangerouſly hurt with a ſtone by the natives, and his companion alſo received a ſlight wound in the head. The offenders eſcaped, and the captain was not anxious to have them taken, as he did not want to have any diſputes with the Indians.

Between the 8th and 9th, two young marines one night withdrew themſelves from the fort, and in the morning were not to be met with. Notice having been given the next day that the ſhip would ſail that or the enſuing day; as they did not return, Capt. Cook began to be apprehenſive that they deſigned to remain on ſhore; but as he was appriſed in ſuch a caſe no effectual means could be taken to recover them without running a riſque of deſtroying the harmony ſubſiſting between the Engliſh and the natives, he reſolved to wait a day, in hopes of their returning of their own accord. But as they were ſtill miſſing on the tenth in the morning, an enquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared, that they did not propoſe to return, having taken refuge among the mountains, where it was impoſſible

poſſible for them to be diſcovered; and added, that each of them had taken a wife. In conſequence of this, it was intimated to ſeveral of the chiefs that were in the fort with the women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be ſuffered to quit it till the deſerters were produced. They did not ſhew any ſigns of fear or diſcontent, but aſſured the captain that the marines ſhould be ſent back. In the mean time Mr. Hicks was diſpatched in the pinnace to bring Tootahah on board the ſhip, and he executed his commiſſion without giving any alarm. Night coming on, Capt. Cook thought it not prudent to let the people, whom he had detained as hoſtages, remain at the fort; he therefore gave orders to remove them on board, which greatly alarmed them all, eſpecially the females, who teſtified the moſt gloomy apprehenſions by floods of tears. Capt. Cook eſcorted Oberea and others to the ſhip; but Mr. Banks remained on ſhore with ſome Indians, whom he thought it of leſs importance to detain. In the evening one of the marines was brought back by ſome of the natives, who reported, that the other and two of our men who went to recover them, would be detained while Tootahah was confined. Upon this Mr. Hicks was immediately ſent off in the long boat, with a ſtrong body of men to reſcue the priſoners; at the ſame time the captain told Tootahah, that it was incumbent on him to aſſiſt them with ſome of his people, and to give orders in his name, that the men ſhould be ſet at liberty; for that he would be expected to anſwer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and this party releaſed the men without any oppoſition.

On the 11th, about ſeven in the morning, they returned, but without the arms that had been taken from them when they were made priſoners; theſe, however, being reſtored ſoon after, the chiefs on board were allowed to return, and thoſe who had been detained on ſhore were alſo ſet at liberty. On examining the deſerters it appeared, that the Indians had told the truth, they

they having choſen two girls, with whom they would have remained in the iſland. At this time the power of Oberea was not ſo great as it was when the Dolphin firſt diſcovered the iſland. Tupia, whoſe name has been often mentioned in this voyage, had been her prime miniſter. He was alſo the chief prieſt, conſequently, well acquainted with the religion of the country. He had a knowledge of navigation, and was thoroughly acquainted with the number, ſituation, and inhabitants of the adjacent iſlands. This chief had often expreſſed a deſire to go with us when we continued our voyage.

On the 12th in the morning he came on board, with a boy about twelve years of age, his ſervant, named Taiyota, and requeſted the gentlemen on board, to let him go with him. As we thought he might be uſeful to us in many particulars, we unanimouſly agreed to comply with his requeſt. Tupia then went on ſhore for the laſt time to bid farewell to his friends, to whom he gave ſeveral baubles as parting tokens of remembrance.

Mr. Banks, after dinner, being willing to obtain a drawing of the Morai, which Tootahah had in his poſſeſſion at Eparre, Capt. Cook accompanied him thither in the pinnace, together with Dr. Solander. They immediately upon landing repaired to Tootahah's houſe, where they were met by Oberea and ſeveral others. A general good underſtanding prevailed. Tupia came back with them, and they promiſed to viſit the gentlemen early the next day, as they were told the ſhip would then ſail.

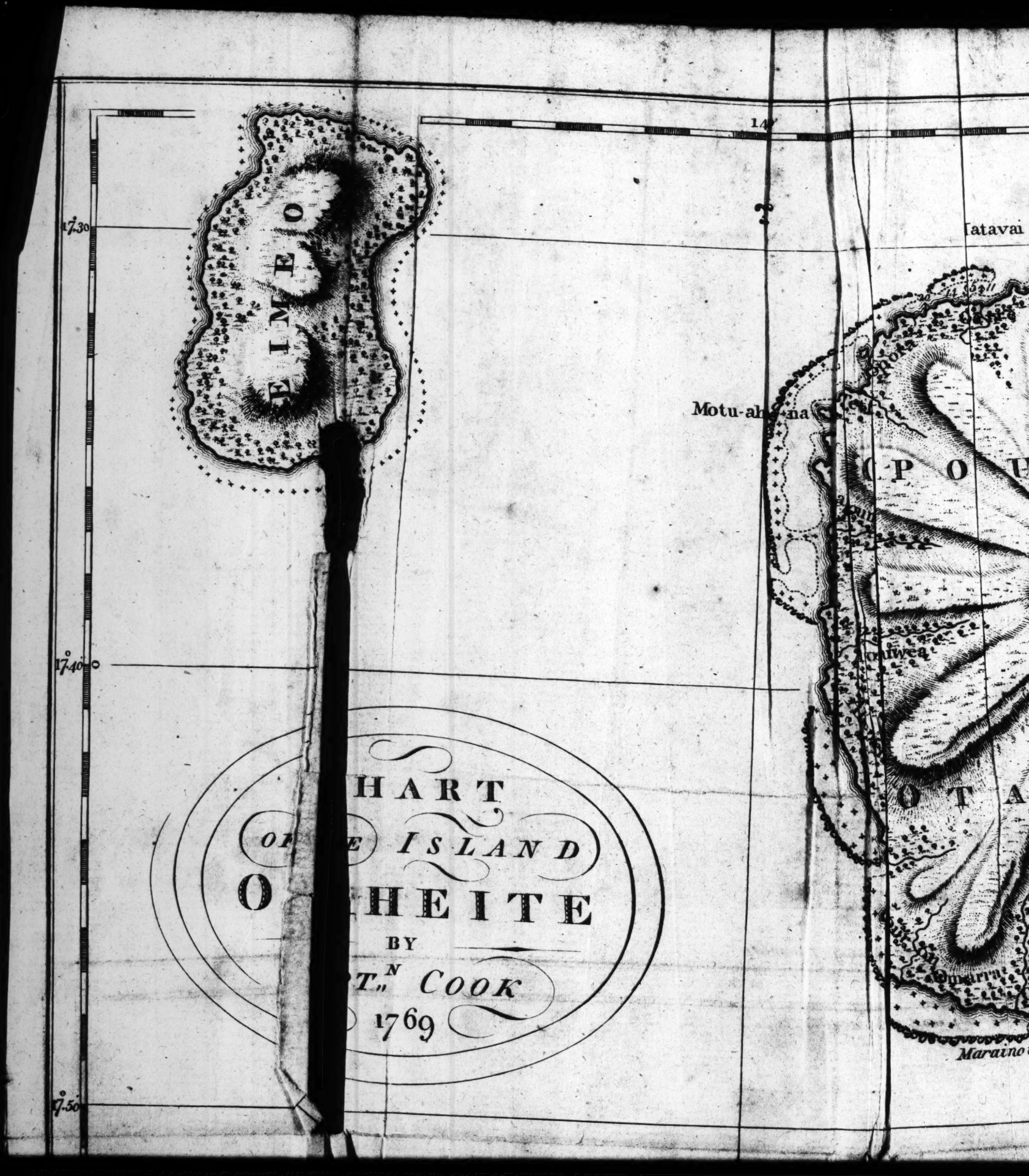
On the 13th theſe friendly people came very early on board, and the ſhip was ſurrounded with a vaſt number of canoes, filled with Indians of the lower ſort. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor; and notwithſtanding all the little miſunderſtandings between the Engliſh and the natives, the latter, who poſſeſſed a great fund of good nature and much ſenſibility, took their leave, weeping in an affectionate manner. As to Tupia he ſupported himſelf through this

London; Published as the Act directs, by Alex.r Hogg, at the Kings Arms, N.o 16, Paternoster



A FLY FLAP of the Iſland OHITEROA, with Two Handles for the ſame Inſtrument, made in Otaheite.

Eastgate sc


EIMEO
17.30
17.40
17.50
Motu-ah na
Tatavai
CHART
OF THE ISLAND
OTAHEITE
BY
T.N COOK
1769

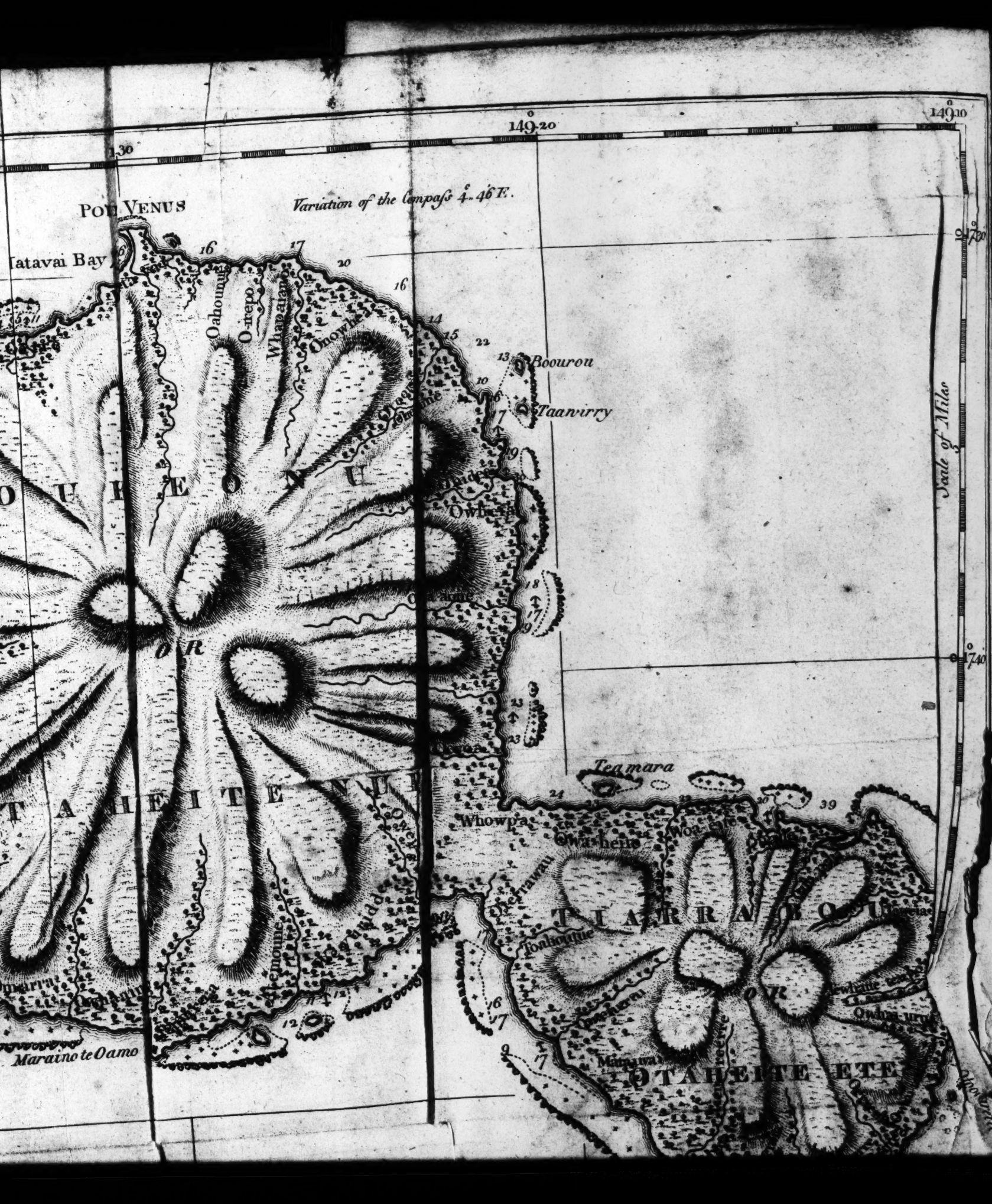
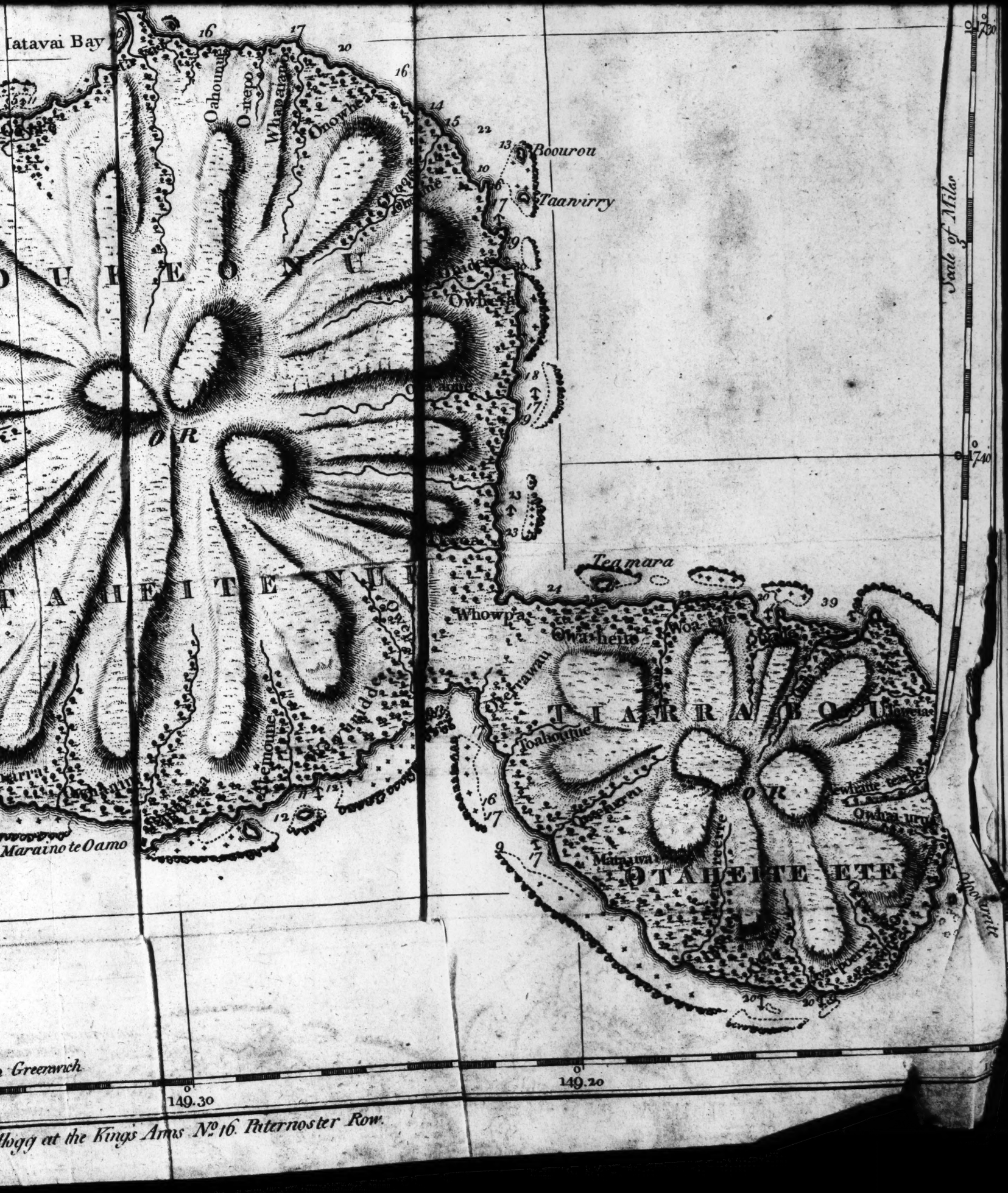

149.20
149.10
130
POU VENUS
Variation of the Compass 4. 46 E.
Tatavai Bay
Oahoumue
O-irepo
Whapaiamo
Onowhe
Boourou
Taanvirry
Owhe
Scale of Miles
17.30
17.40
Teamara
Whowpa
Owharre
Toahuque
Maraino te Oamo
Mapawa



CHART
OF THE ISLAND
OTAHEITE
BY
LT.N COOK
1769



Hogg at the Kings Arms No 16. Paternoster Row.

this ſcene with a becoming fortitude. Tears flowed from his eyes, it is true, but the effort that he made to conceal them did him an additional honour. He went with Mr. Banks to the maſt head, and waving his hand took a laſt farewell of his country. Thus we departed from Otaheite, after a ſtay of juſt three months.

CHAP. V.*

An hiſtorical and deſcriptive Account of Otaheite—Of the Iſland and its Productions—Of the Inhabitants—their Dreſs—Dwellings—Manner of living—Diverſions—Manufactures—Arts—Sciences—Language—Diſeaſes—Religious Ceremonies—and Government.

PORT Royal bay, in the iſland of Otaheite, as ſettled by captain Wallis, we found to be within half a degree of its real ſituation; and point Venus, the northern extremity of this iſland, and the eaſtern part of the bay, lies in 149 deg. 30 min. longitude. A

* We here beg leave to remark to our very NUMEROUS SUBSCRIBERS, that this *much admired Work* is not only *far preferable* to *any other publication* of the kind *whatever*, on account of its *Elegance*, *Cheapneſs*, *Authenticity*, and its including a full account of *all Capt. Cook's Voyages Complete*, written in an admirably pleaſing and elegant ſtyle, but alſo becauſe every *ſingle Sheet* of *our Letter-preſs* comprehends at leaſt *double* the *quantity* of *Matter* given in *other Works* of the kind, which, by *ſpinning out the ſubject* to an *unneceſſary length*, is offered to the public at more than *double* the *Price*. Publications of this kind, which contain *only* a *ſingle Voyage* of the *celebrated* CAPT. COOK, we find are alſo *univerſally objected to* by the *public*: ſo that by the publication of this *cheap* OCTAVO EDITION of ALL Capt. COOK's VOYAGES, &c. COMPLETE, the public at large will be *agreeably accommodated*, not only by being poſſeſſed *at an eaſy Rate* of ſuch a *vaſt Quantity of Matter* included by our CLOSE *Method of Printing*, but likewiſe by acquiring at the ſame Time all the SPLENDID COPPER-PLATES, *carefully*, *elegantly* and *accurately taken* from the ORIGINALS, in *Numbers*, price *only Sixpence each*.

reef of coral rocks ſurround the iſland, forming ſeveral excellent bays, among which, and equal to the beſt of them, is Port Royal. This bay, called by the natives Matavai, may eaſily be diſcovered by a remarkable high mountain in the center of the iſland, bearing due ſouth from Point Venus. To ſail into it, either keep the weſt point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, cloſe on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a ſmall ſhoal of coral rocks, whereon there is but two fathom and a half of water. The moſt proper ground for anchoring is on the eaſtern ſide of the bay. The ſhore is a fine ſandy beach, behind which runs a river of freſh water, very convenient for a fleet of ſhips. The only wood for firing upon the whole iſland is that of fruit trees, which muſt be purchaſed of the natives, or it is impoſſible to live on friendly terms with them. The face of the country is very uneven. It riſes in ridges that run up into the middle of the iſland, where they form mountains which may be ſeen at the diſtance of ſixty miles. Between theſe ridges and the ſea is a border of low land of different breadths in different parts, but not exceeding any where a mile and a half. The ſoil being watered by a number of excellent rivulets, is extremely fertile, and covered with various kinds of fruit trees, which form almoſt one continued wood. Even the tops of the ridges are not without their produce in ſome parts. The only parts of the iſland that are inhabited, are the low lands, lying between the foot of the ridges and the ſea. The houſes do not form villages, but are ranged along the whole border, at about fifty yards diſtant from each other. Before them are little groups of the plantain trees, which furniſh them with cloth. According to Tupia's account, this iſland could furniſh above ſix thouſand fighting men. The produce is bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas, ſweet potatoes, yams, jumbu, a delicious fruit, ſugar-cane, the paper mulberry, ſeveral ſorts of figs, with many other plants and trees, all which the earth produces ſpontaneouſly,

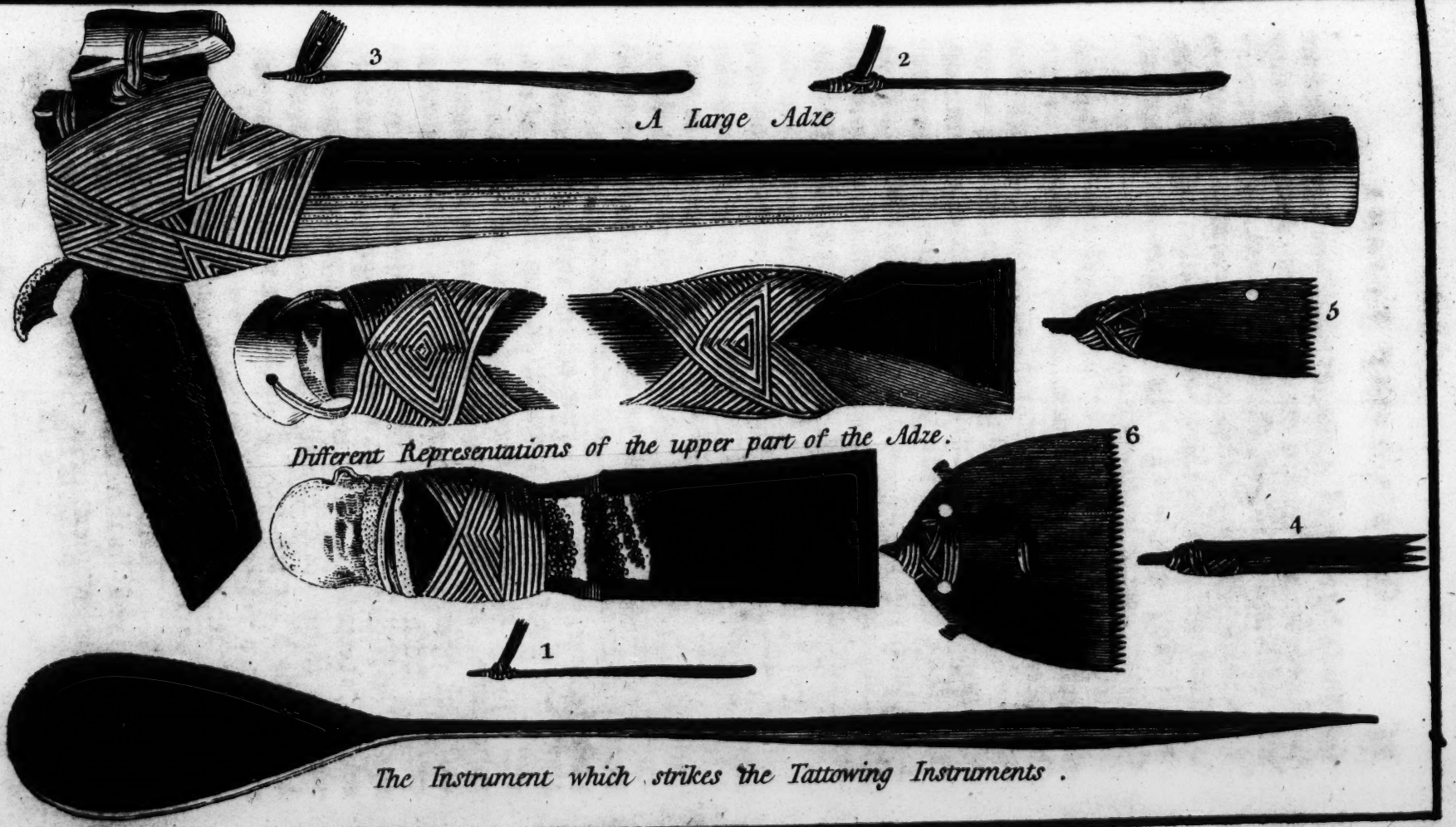
neouſly, or with little culture. But here are no European fruit, garden-ſtuff, pulſe, nor grain of any kind. The tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry; the wild, ducks, pigeons, parroquets, and a few other birds. The only quadrupeds are rats, and not a ſerpent is to be found. In the ſea is a great variety of excellent fiſh, which conſtitutes their chief luxury, and to catch it their chief employment.

The people in general are of a larger make than the Europeans. The males are moſtly tall, robuſt, and finely ſhaped; the women of the higher claſs above the ſize of our Engliſh ladies, but thoſe of inferior rank are below our ſtandard, and ſome of them very ſhort. Their natural complexion is a fine clear olive, or what we call a brunette, their ſkin delicately ſmooth, and agreeably ſoft. Their faces in general are handſome, and their eyes full of ſenſibility. Their teeth are remarkably white and regular, their hair for the moſt part black, and their breath is entirely free from any diſagreeable ſmell. The men, unlike the original inhabitants of America, have long beards, which they wear in various ſhapes. Circumciſion is generally practiſed among them from a motive of cleanlineſs, and they have a term of reproach with which they upbraid thoſe who do not adopt this cuſtom. Both ſexes always eradicate the hair from their arm-pits, and they reproached our gentlemen with want of cleanlineſs: their motions are eaſy and graceful, and their behaviour, when unprovoked, affable and courteous. Contrary to the cuſtom of moſt other nations, the women of this country cut their hair ſhort, whereas the men wear it long, ſometimes hanging looſe upon their ſhoulders, at other times tied in a knot on the crown of the head, in which they ſtick the feathers of birds of various colours. A piece of cloth, of the manufacture of the country, is frequently tied round the head of both ſexes in the manner of a turban, and the women plait very curiouſly human hair into long ſtrings, which being folded into branches, are tied on their

foreheads by way of ornament. They have a cuſtom practiſed in many hot countries, of anointing their hair with cocoa-nut oil, the ſmell of which is not very agreeable. Having, among their various inventions no ſorts of combs, they were infeſted with vermin, which they quickly got rid of when furniſhed with thoſe convenient inſtruments.

They ſtain their bodies by indenting or pricking the fleſh with a ſmall inſtrument made of bone, cut into ſhort teeth, which indentures they fill with a dark blue or blackiſh mixture, prepared from the ſmoke of an oily nut (burnt by them inſtead of candles) and water. This operation, called by the natives Tattaowing, is exceedingly painful, and leaves an indelible mark on the ſkin. It is uſually performed when they are about ten or twelve years of age, and on different parts of the body; but thoſe which ſuffer moſt ſeverely are the breech and the loins, which are marked with arches, carried one above another a conſiderable way up the back. Mr. Banks was preſent at an operation of tattaowing, performed upon the poſteriors of a girl about twelve years old. It was executed with an inſtrument that had twenty teeth, and at each ſtroke, which was repeated every moment, ſerum mixed with blood iſſued. She bore the pain with great reſolution for ſeveral minutes; but at length it became ſo intolerable, that ſhe murmured, and burſt into moſt violent lamentations; but her operator was inexorable, whilſt ſome females preſent both chid and beat her. Mr. Banks was a ſpectator for near an hour, during which time one ſide only was tattaowed, the other having undergone the ceremony ſome time before, and the arches upon the loins, which are the moſt painful, but which they moſt value, were yet to be made.

They cloath themſelves in cloth and matting of various kinds: the firſt they wear in fine, the latter in wet weather. Theſe are in different forms, no ſhape being preſerved in the pieces, nor are they ſewed together. The women of a ſuperior claſs wear three



1.2.3.4.5.6. *Six Figures of* Tattowing Inſtruments *to* pierce *the* Skin, *of different sizes* with *&* without *their* Handles.

or four pieces. One, which is of conſiderable length, they wrap ſeveral times round their waiſt, and it falls down to the middle of the leg. Two or three other ſhort pieces, with a hole cut in the middle of each, are placed on one another, and their heads coming through the holes, the long ends hang before and behind, both ſides being open, by which means they have the free uſe of their arms.

The mens dreſs is very ſimilar, differing only in this inſtance, that one part of the garment inſtead of falling below the knees is brought between the legs. This dreſs is worn by all ranks of people, the only diſtinction being quantity in the ſuperior claſs. At noon both ſexes appear almoſt naked, wearing only a piece of cloth that is tied round the waiſt. Their faces are ſhaded from the ſun with ſmall bonnets, made of cocoa-nut leaves or matting, which are conſtructed in a few minutes. The men ſometime wear a ſort of wig of human or dog's hair, or of cocoa-nut ſtrings, woven on a ſingle thread, faſtened under the hair, and hanging down behind. Both men and women wore ear-rings on one ſide, conſiſting of ſhells, ſtones, berries, or ſmall pearls; but they ſoon gave the preference to the beads brought by the Endeavour's company. The boys and girls go quite naked; the firſt till they are ſeven or eight years old; the latter till they are about five.

The natives of Otaheite ſeldom uſe their houſes but to ſleep in, or to avoid the rain, as they eat in the open air, under the ſhade of a tree. In thoſe there are no diviſions or apartments. Their cloaths ſerve them for covering in the night. The maſter and his wife repoſe in the middle; then the married people; next the unmarried females; then the unmarried men; and in fair weather the ſervants ſleep in the open air. The houſes of the chiefs, however, differ in ſome particulars. There are thoſe that are very ſmall, and ſo conſtructed as to be carried in canoes: all ſides of them are incloſed with the leaves of the cocoa-nut; the air nevertheleſs penetrates. In theſe the chief and his wife only ſleep.

We

We likewiſe ſaw houſes that are general receptacles for the inhabitants of a diſtrict, many of them being more than 200 feet in length, 40 in breath, and 70 or 80 feet high. They are conſtructed at the common expence, and have an area on one ſide, ſurrounded with low paliſadoes; but like the others without walls.

Their cookery conſiſts chiefly in baking, the manner of doing which has been before noticed. When a chief kills a hog, which is but ſeldom, he divides it equally among his vaſſals. Dogs and fowls are more common food. When the bread-fruit is not in ſeaſon, cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, &c. are ſubſtituted in its ſtead. They bake their bread-fruit in a manner which renders it ſomewhat like a mealy potatoe. Of this three diſhes are made, by beating them up with bananas, plantains, or ſour paſte, which is called by them Mahie.

Sour paſte is made by taking bread-fruit not thoroughly ripe, and laying it in heaps covered with leaves, by which means it ferments. The core is then taken out, and the fruit put into a hole lined with graſs: it is then again covered with leaves, upon which large ſtones are placed; this produces a ſecond fermentation; after which it grows ſour, without any other change for a long time. They take it from this hole as they have occaſion for it, and make it into balls. It is then rolled up in plantain leaves and baked. As it will keep for ſome weeks, they eat it both hot and cold. Such is the food of this people, their ſauce to which is only ſalt water. As to their drink it is generally confined to water, or the milk of the cocoa-nut, though ſome of them would drink ſo freely of our Engliſh liquors as to become quite intoxicated, ſuch inſtances, however, were occaſioned more by ignorance than deſign, as they were never known to practice a debauch of this kind a ſecond time. We were told, it is true, that their chiefs ſometimes became inebriated by drinking the juice of a plant called Ava, but of this we ſaw not a ſingle inſtance during the time we remained on the iſland.

The chief eats generally alone, unleſs when viſited by

by a ſtranger, who is permitted ſometimes to be his meſs-mate. Not having known the uſe of a table, they ſit on the ground, and leaves of trees ſpread before them ſerve as a table-cloth. Their attendants, who are numerous, having placed a baſket by the chiefs, containing their proviſions, and cocoa-nut ſhells of freſh and ſalt water, ſet themſelves down around them. They then begin their meals with the ceremony of waſhing their mouths and hands; after which they eat a handful of bread-fruit and fiſh, dipt in ſalt water alternately, till the whole is conſumed, taking a ſip of ſalt water between almoſt every morſel. The bread-fruit and fiſh is ſucceeded by a ſecond courſe, conſiſting of either plantains or apples, which they never eat without being pared. During this time a ſoft fluid of paſte is prepared from the bread-fruit, which they drink out of cocoa-nut ſhells: this concludes the meal; and their hands and mouths are again waſhed as at the beginning. Theſe people eat an aſtoniſhing quantity of food at a meal. Mr. Banks and others ſaw one of them devour three fiſh of the ſize of a ſmall carp, four bread-fruits, as large as a common melon, thirteen or fourteen plantains ſeven inches long, and above half as big round; to all which was added a quart of the paſte by way of drink, to digeſt the whole.

The inhabitants of this iſland, though apparently fond of the pleaſures of ſociety, have yet an averſion to holding any intercourſe with each other at their meals; and they are ſo rigid in the obſervation of this cuſtom, that even brothers and ſiſters have their ſeparate baſkets of proviſions, and generally ſit at the diſtance of ſome yards when they eat, with their backs to each other, and not exchanging a word during the whole time of their repaſt. The middle aged of ſuperior rank go uſually to ſleep after dinner; but, which is ſomewhat remarkable, older people are not ſo indolent.

Muſic, dancing, wreſtling, and ſhooting with the bow, conſtitute the greateſt part of their diverſions.

Flutes

Flutes and drums are the only muſical inſtruments among them. Their drums are formed of a circular piece of wood, hollow at one end only. Theſe are covered with the ſkin of a ſhark, and beaten with the hand inſtead of a ſtick. Their ſongs are extempore, and frequently in rhime, but they conſiſt only of two lines; theſe couplets are often ſung by way of evening amuſements, between ſun-ſet and bed-time; during which interval they burn candles made of an oily nut, fixing them one above another upon a ſmall ſtick that is run through the middle: ſome of theſe candles will burn a long time, and afford a pretty good light. Among other amuſements, they have a dance called Timorodee, which is generally performed by ten or a dozen young females, who put themſelves into the moſt wanton attitudes, keeping time during the performance with the greateſt nicety and exactneſs. Pregnant women are excluded from theſe dances.

One of the worſt cuſtoms of the people of Otaheite, is that which ſeveral of the principal people of the iſland have adopted of uniting in an aſſociation, wherein no woman confines herſelf to any particular man, by which means they obtain a perpetual ſociety. Theſe ſocieties are called Arreoy. The members have meetings where the men amuſe themſelves with wreſtling, and the women dance the Timorodee in ſuch a manner as is moſt likely to excite the deſires of the other ſex, and which were frequently gratified in the aſſembly. A much worſe practice is the conſequence of this. If any of the women prove with child, the infant is deſtroyed, unleſs the mother's natural affection ſhould prevail with her to preſerve its life, which, however, is forfeited unleſs ſhe can procure a man to adopt it. And where ſhe ſucceeds in this, ſhe is expelled from the ſociety, being called Whannownow, which ſignifies a bearer of children, by way of reproach.

Perſonal cleanlineſs is much eſteemed among theſe Indians. Both ſexes are particular in waſhing three times

times a day, viz. when they riſe in the morning, at noon, and before they go to reſt. They are alſo very cleanly in their cloaths, ſo that no diſagreeable effluvia are found to ariſe in the largeſt communities.

Cloth is the chief manufacture of Otaheite, and of this there are three ſorts, all which are made out of the bark of different trees, namely, the mulberry, the bread-fruit, and a tree which bears ſome reſemblance to the Weſt-Indian wild fig-tree. The firſt of theſe produces the fineſt cloth, which is ſeldom worn but by thoſe of the firſt rank. The next ſort is made of the bread-fruit tree, and the laſt of that which reſembles the wild fig-tree. But this laſt ſort, though the coarſeſt, is ſcarcer than the other two, which are manufactured only in ſmall quantities, as the ſame manner is uſed in manufacturing all theſe cloths. The following deſcription will ſuffice for the reader's information.

The bark of the tree being ſtripped off, is ſoaked in water for two or three days; they then take it out, and ſeparate the inner bark from the external coat, by ſcraping it with a ſhell, after which it is ſpread out on plantain leaves, placing two or three layers over one another, care being taken to make it of an equal thickneſs in every part. In this ſtate it continues till it is almoſt dry, when it adheres ſo firmly that it may be taken from the ground without breaking. After this proceſs, it is laid on a ſmooth board, and beaten with an inſtrument made for that purpoſe, of the compact heavy wood called Etoa. The inſtrument is about fourteen inches long, and about ſeven in circumference; is of a quadrangular ſhape, and each of the four ſides is marked with longitudinal grooves or furrows, differing in this inſtance, that there is a regular gradation in the width and depth of the grooves on each of the ſides; the coarſer ſide not containing more than ten of theſe furrows, while the fineſt is furniſhed with above fifty. It is with that ſide of the mallet where the grooves are deepeſt and wideſt that they begin to beat their cloth, and proceeding regularly, finiſh

with that which has the greateſt number. By this beating, the cloth is extended in a manner ſimilar to the gold that is formed into leaves by the hammer; and it is alſo marked with ſmall channels reſembling thoſe which are viſible on paper, but rather deeper; it is in general beat very thin; when they want it thicker than common, they take two or three pieces and paſte them together with a kind of glue prepared from a root called Pea. This cloth becomes exceedingly white by bleaching, and is dyed of a red, yellow, brown, or black colour; the firſt is exceeding beautiful, and equal, if not ſuperior to any in Europe. They make the red colour from a mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which uſed ſeparately has this effect: matting of various kinds is another conſiderable manufacture, in which they excel, in many reſpects, the Europeans. They make uſe of the coarſer ſort to ſleep on, and in wet weather they wear the finer. They excel in the baſket and wicker-work; both men and women employ themſelves at it, and can make a great number of different patterns. They make ropes and lines of all ſizes of the bark of the Poerou, and their nets for fiſhing are made of theſe lines; the fibres of the cocoanut they make thread of, ſuch as they uſe to faſten together the ſeveral parts of their canoes; the forms of which are various, according to the uſe to which they are applied. Their fiſhing lines are eſteemed the beſt in the world, made of the bark of the Erowa, a kind of nettle which grows on the mountains; they are ſtrong enough to hold the heavieſt and moſt vigorous fiſh, ſuch as bonettas and albicores; in ſhort, they are extremely ingenious in every expedient for taking all kinds of fiſh.

The tools which theſe people make uſe of for building houſes, conſtructing canoes, hewing ſtones, and for felling, cleaving, carving, and poliſhing timber, conſiſts of nothing more than an adze of ſtone, and a chiſſel of bone, moſt commonly that of a man's arm; and for a file or poliſher, they make uſe of a raſp of coral

and

and coral ſand. The blades of their adzes are extremely tough, but not very hard; they make them of various ſizes, thoſe for felling wood weigh ſix or ſeven pounds, and others which are uſed for carving, only a few ounces: they are obliged every minute to ſharpen them on a ſtone, which is always kept near them for that purpoſe. The moſt difficult taſk they meet with in the uſe of theſe tools, is the felling of a tree, which employs a great number of hands for ſeveral days together. The tree which is in general uſe is called Aoie, the ſtem of which is ſtraight and tall. Some of their ſmaller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which is wrought without much difficulty, being of a light ſpongy nature. Inſtead of planes they uſe their adzes with great dexterity. Their canoes are all ſhaped with the hand, the Indians not being acquainted with the method of warping a plank.

Of theſe they have two kinds, one they call Ivahahs, the other Pahies; the former is uſed for ſhort voyages at ſea, and the latter for long ones. Theſe boats do not differ either in ſhape or ſize, but they are in no degree proportionate, being from ſixty to ſeventy feet in length, and not more than the thirtieth part in breadth. Some are employed in going from one iſland to another, and others uſed for fiſhing. There is alſo the Ivahah, which ſerves for war; theſe are by far the longeſt, and the head and ſtern are conſiderably above the body. Theſe Ivahahs are faſtened together, ſide by ſide, when they go to ſea, at the diſtance of a few feet, by ſtrong wooden poles, which are laid acroſs them and joined to each ſide. A ſtage or platform is raiſed on the fore part, about ten or twelve feet long, upon which ſtand the fighting men, whoſe miſſile weapons are ſlings and ſpears. Beneath theſe ſtages the rowers ſit, who ſupply the place of thoſe who are wounded. The fiſhing Ivahahs are from thirty or forty to ten feet in length, and thoſe for travelling have a ſmall houſe fixed on board, which is faſtened upon the fore-part, for the better accommodation of perſons of rank, who

occupy them both day and night. The Pahies differ alſo in ſize, being from ſixty to ſeventy feet long, they are alſo very narrow, and are ſometimes uſed for fighting, but chiefly for long voyages. In going from one iſland to another, they are out ſometimes a month, and often at ſea a fortnight or twenty days, and if they had convenience to ſtow more proviſions, they could ſtay out much longer. Theſe veſſels are very uſeful in landing, and putting off from the ſhore in a ſurf, for by their great length and high ſtern they landed dry, when the Endeavour's boats could ſcarcely land at all.

They are very curious in the conſtruction of theſe boats, the chief parts or pieces whereof are formed ſeparately without either ſaw, plane, chiſſel, or any other iron tool, which renders their fabrication more ſurpriſing and worthy obſervation. Theſe parts being prepared, the keel is fixed upon blocks, and the planks are ſupported with props, till they are ſewed or joined together with ſtrong plaited thongs, which are paſſed ſeveral times through holes bored with a chiſſel or bone ſuch as they commonly make uſe of, and when finiſhed, they are ſufficiently tight without caulking. They keep theſe boats with great care in a kind of ſhed, built on purpoſe to contain them.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were at a loſs to find out their method of dividing time, they always made uſe of the term Malama, which ſignifies the moon; whenever they ſpoke of time, either paſt or to come, they reckon thirteen of theſe moons, beginning again when they are expired. This proves that they have ſome idea of the ſolar year; but theſe gentlemen could not diſcover how they computed their months, to make thirteen equal to the year, as they ſaid theſe months conſiſted of twenty-nine days, one day in which the moon was inviſible being included. They, however, knew the prevailing weather that was to be expected, as well as the fruits that would be in ſeaſon. As to the day, they divide it into twelve equal parts, ſix of which belong

long to the day, and the other ſix to the night. When they enumerate, they reckon from one to ten, making uſe of their fingers, and changing hands, till they come to the number which they intended to expreſs; and joining expreſſive ſigns to their words, in the courſe of their converſation. But they are not ſo expert in meaſuring diſtances, for when they attempt deſcribing the ſpace between one place and another, they are obliged to expreſs it by the time that would be taken in paſſing it.

With regard to their language, it is ſoft, as it abounds with vowels, and eaſy to be pronounced; but very few of their nouns or verbs being declineable, it muſt conſequently be rather imperfect. However, we found means to be mutually underſtood without much difficulty. The following ſpecimen will poſſibly enable the reader to form ſome notion of the language of thoſe iſlanders.

Aheine, *a woman*
Aihoo, *a garment*
Ainao, *take care*
Aree, *a chief*
Aouna, *to-day*
Aoy, *water*
Eahoo, *the noſe*
Eawow, *to ſcold*
Eei, *to eat*
Eeyo, *look you*
Emoto, *to box*
Epanoo, *a drum*
Epeenei, *an echo*
Epehe, *a ſong*
Erowroo, *the head*
Huaheine, *a wife*
Itopa, *to fall*
Kipoo a meemhee, *a chamber-pot*
Mahana, *a day*
Marroowhai, *dry*
Matau, *the eyes*
Matte roah, *to die*
Mayneenee, *to tickle*
Meyoooo, *the nails*
Midee, *a child*
Mutee, *a kiſs*
Myty, *good*
Neeheeo, *good night*
Oboboa, *to morrow*
Oowhau, *the thighs*
Ore' dehaiya, *a large nail*
Ore' eeteea, *a ſmall nail*
Otaowa, *yeſterday*
Pahie, *a ſhip*
Parawei, *a ſhirt*
Poa, *a night*
Poe, *ear rings*
Tane, *a huſband*
Tatta te hommanne maitai, *a good-natured perſon*
Tea, *white*

Teine,

Teine, *a brother*
Tooaheine, *a ſiſter*
Tooanahoe, *you and I*
Toonoah, *a mole in the ſkin*
Tumatua, *a bonnet*
Wahoa, *fire*
Waow, *I.*

The natives of this country are ſeldom afflicted with any diſeaſes, except ſometimes an accidental fit of the cholic; but they are ſubject to the eriſypelas, attended with cutaneous eruptions ſomewhat reſembling the leproſy; and if they have it to any conſiderable degree, they are excluded from ſociety and live alone, in a ſmall houſe in ſome unfrequented part of the iſland. The management of the ſick belongs to the prieſts, whoſe method of cure conſiſts generally of prayers and ceremonies, which are repeated till they recover or die. If the former happens, it is attributed to their mode of proceeding; if the patient dies, then they urge that the diſeaſe was incurable.

The religion of theſe iſlanders appears to be very myſterious; and as the language adapted to it, was different from that which was ſpoken on other occaſions, we were not able to gain much knowledge of it. Tupia, who gave us all the information that we got in regard to this particular, informed us, that his countrymen imagined every thing in the creation to proceed from the conjunction of two perſons. One of theſe two firſt (being the ſupreme deity) they called Taroataihetoomo, and the other Tapapa; and the year which they called Tettowmatatayo, they ſuppoſe to be the daughter of theſe two. They alſo imagine an inferior ſort of deities, known by the name of Eatuas, two of whom, they ſay, formerly inhabited the earth, and they ſuppoſe that the firſt man and woman deſcended from them. The Supreme Being they ſtile "The cauſer of earthquakes;" but more frequently addreſs their prayers to Tane, whom they conceive to be a ſon of the firſt progenitors of nature. They believe in the exiſtence of the ſoul in a ſeparate ſtate, and ſuppoſe that there are two ſituations differing in the degrees of happineſs, which they conſider as receptacles for different ranks, but not as places of rewards and puniſhments.

Their notion is, that the chiefs and principal people will have the preference to thoſe of lower ranks. For as to their actions they cannot conceive them to influence their future ſtate, as they believe the deity takes no cognizance of them. The office of the prieſt is hereditary; there are ſeveral of them of all ranks: the chief is reſpected next to their kings; and they are in general ſuperior to the natives, not only in point of divine knowledge, but alſo in that of aſtronomy and navigation. They are not at all concerned with the ceremony of marriage, which is only a ſimple agreement between the man and the woman, and when they chuſe to ſeparate, the matter is accompliſhed with as little ceremony as was thought neceſſary to bring them together. Theſe people do not appear to worſhip images of any kind; but they enter their Morais with great awe and humility, their bodies being uncovered to the waiſt when they bring their offering to their altar.

As to their form of government, there is a ſort of ſubordination among them which reſembles the early ſtate of all the nations of Europe when under the feudal ſyſtem, which reſerved authority to a ſmall number, putting the reſt intirely in their power. The ranks of the people of this iſland were theſe, Earee Rahie, ſignifying a king or ſupreme governor; Earee, anſwering to the title of baron; Mannahoonies, to that of vaſſal; and Toutou, under which name was included the loweſt orders of the people, ſuch as are called villains according to the old law term. The Earee Rahie, of which there are two here, one belonging to each peninſula, had great reſpect ſhewn them by all ranks. The Earees are lords of one or more of the diſtricts, into which theſe governments are divided; and they ſeparate their territories into lots, which are given among the Mannahoonies, who reſpectively cultivate the ſhare that they hold under the baron. But they are only nominal cultivators; this, as well as all other laborious work, being done by the Toutou, or lower claſs of the people. The ſovereign, or Earee Rahie, and the baron, or Earee, are ſucceeded in titles and honours by their children,

children, as ſoon as they are born; but their eſtates remain in their poſſeſſion, and ſubject to the management of their parents. Every diſtrict under the command of an Earee furniſhes a proportionate number of fighting men, for the defence of the common cauſe, in caſe of a general attack; and they are all ſubject to the command of the Earee Rahie. Their weapons conſiſt of ſlings, in the uſe of which they are very dextrous, and of long clubs remarkably hard, with which they fight obſtinately and cruelly, giving no quarter to their enemies in time of battle.

While we ſtaid at Otaheite, there was a good underſtanding between the Earees of the two peninſulas, though it ſeems that the Earee of Tearrebau called himſelf king of the whole iſland; this was a mere nominal claim, and was conſidered as ſuch by the inhabitants. There is not any thing among them ſubſtituted for money, or a general medium by which every deſirable object may be purchaſed or procured; neither can any permanent good be obtained by force or fraud. The general commerce with women ſets aſide almoſt every excitement to commit adultery. In a word, in a government ſo little poliſhed, though diſtributive juſtice cannot be regularly adminiſtered; as, at the ſame time, there can be but few crimes whereon to exerciſe it, the want of this juſtice is not ſo ſeverely felt as in more civilized ſocieties.

Soon after our arrival at this iſland, we were appriſed of the natives having the French diſeaſe among them. The iſlanders called it by a name expreſſive of its effects, obſerving that the hair and nails of thoſe who were firſt infected by it, fell off, and the fleſh rotted from the bones, while their countrymen, and even neareſt relations, who were unaffected, were ſo much terrified at its ſymptoms, that the unhappy ſufferer was often forſaken by them, and left to periſh in the moſt horrible conditions.

Thus have we given an accurate, full, and complete deſcription of the iſland in its preſent ſtate; we ſhall only add a few remarks, which we apprehend may be of

of uſe to ſuch gentlemen in the navy, who may hereafter have it in their orders to touch at the ſame. As this iſland can be uſeful only by ſupplying ſhips with refreſhments in their paſſage through theſe ſeas, it might be made to anſwer fully this important end; European cattle, plants, garden ſtuff, and the moſt uſeful vegetables, would doubtleſs flouriſh in ſo rich a ſoil. The climate is remarkably fine, the heat is not troubleſome, nor do the winds blow conſtantly from the eaſt. We had frequently a freſh gale from the S. W. ſometimes, though very ſeldom, from the N. W. We learnt from Tupia, that ſouth weſterly winds prevail in October, November and December, and we have no doubt but this is true. At the time the winds are variable, they are always accompanied by a ſwell from the S. W. or W. S. W. The ſame ſwell happens on a calm, and when the atmoſphere is loaded with clouds, which ſhews that the winds are variable, or weſterly out at ſea, for with a trade wind the weather is clear. In theſe parts the trade wind does not extend farther to the ſouth than twenty degrees, beyond which we generally found a gale from the weſtward. The tides here are perhaps as inconſiderable as in any part of the world. A ſouth or ſouth by weſt moon makes high water in the harbour of Matavai, and its perpendicular height ſeldom exceeds ten or twelve inches.

CHAP. VI.

The Endeavour continues her Voyage—Viſits the Iſlands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite—An Account of ſeveral Incidents, and of various Particulars relative to the Inhabitants—The Paſſage of the Endeavour from Oteroah to New Zealand—Events on going aſhore, and Incidents while the Ship was in Poverty Bay—This and the adjacent Country deſcribed—Excurſions to Cape Turnagain, and return to Tolaga—The Inhabitants deſcribed, and a Narrative of what happened while we

were on that Part of the Coaſt—The Range from Tolaga to Mercury Bay—Incidents that happend on board the Endeavour and aſhore—A Deſcription of the Country and its fortified Villages—She ſails from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Iſlands—A Deſcription of the Indians on the Banks of the River Thames—And of the Timber that grows there—Interviews and Skirmiſhes with the Natives on an Iſland, and on different Parts of the Coaſt—Range from the Bay of Iſlands round North Cape.

ON the 13th of July, 1769, after leaving the iſland of Otaheite, we continued our courſe, with clear weather and a gentle breeze; and were informed by Tupia, that four iſlands which he called Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola, were at the diſtance of about one or two days ſail; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreſhments, very ſcarce on board, were to be got there in great abundance. He alſo mentioned an iſland to the northward, which he called Tethuroa. It is ſituated north half weſt eight leagues diſtant from the northern extremity of Otaheite. It was a ſmall low iſland, but as Tupia ſaid, without any ſettled inhabitants. On the 15th we made but little way, on account of the calms which ſucceeded the light breezes. Tupia often prayed to his god Tane for a wind, and boaſted of his ſucceſs, which indeed he took care to inſure, by never applying to Tane, till he ſaw a breeze ſo near, that he knew it muſt reach the ſhip before his prayer was concluded.

On the 16th we ſounded near the north-weſt part of the iſland of Huaheine, but found no bottom at 70 fathoms. Several canoes put off; but the Indians ſeemed fearful of coming near the bark till the ſight of Tupia removed their apprehenſions. They then came along ſide, and the king of the iſland, with his queen, came on board. They ſeemed ſurprized at whatever was ſhewn them, but made no enquiries after any thing but what was offered to their notice. After ſome time they became more familiar; and the king, whoſe name

was



A View *in the* Island *of* HUAHEINE, *and of the* Ewharra no Eatua, *or* House *of* God.

was Oree, as a token of amity, propoſed exchanging names with Capt. Cook, which was readily accepted. We found the people here nearly ſimilar to thoſe of Otaheite in almoſt every particular; but if Tupia might be credited, they are not like them addicted to thieving. Having anchored in a ſmall but convenient harbour, on the weſt ſide of the iſland, (called by the natives Owparre) we went on ſhore with Mr. Banks, and ſome other gentlemen, accompanied by the king and Tupia. The moment we landed Tupia uncovered himſelf as low as the waiſt, and deſired Mr. Monkhouſe to follow his example. Being ſeated he now began a ſpeech, or prayer, which laſted about twenty minutes; the king, who ſtood oppoſite to him, anſwering in what ſeemed ſet replies. During this harangue, Tupia delivered, at different times, a handkerchief, a black ſilk neckcloth, ſome plantains, and beads, as preſents to their Eatua, or deity; and in return for our Eatua, we received a hog, ſome young plantains, and two bunches of feathers, all which were carried on board. Theſe ceremonies were conſidered as a kind of ratification of a treaty between us and the king of Huaheine.

On the 17th we went again on ſhore, and made an excurſion into the country, the productions of which greatly reſembled thoſe of Otaheite; the rocks and clay ſeemed, indeed, more burnt: the boat houſes were curious and remarkable large. The level part of the country affords the moſt beautiful landſcapes that the imagination can poſſibly form an idea of. The ſoil is exceedingly fertile, and the ſhore is lined with fruit trees of different kinds, particularly the cocoa-nut; however, in ſome places there were ſalt ſwamps and lagoons which produced neither trees nor plants.

On the 18th we went again on ſhore, and Tupia being engaged with his friends, we took with us Taiyota, his boy. Mr. Banks propoſed taking a more perfect view of a kind of cheſt, or ark, which he had before obſerved. The lid of this ark was neatly ſewed on, and thatched in a peculiar manner with palm-nut leaves.

It was placed on two poles, and ſupported by ſmall carved arches of wood. Theſe poles ſerved to remove it from one place to another, in the manner of our ſedan-chairs. We remarked, that this cheſt was of a form reſembling the ark of the Lord among the Jews; but it is ſtill more remarkable, that enquiring of Tupia's ſervant what it was called, he told us Ewharre-no-Eatua, the Houſe of God; though he could give no account of its meaning or uſe. Our trade with the natives went on ſlowly; we got however eleven pigs, and were not without hopes of obtaining more the next morning.

On the 19th we offered them ſome hatchets, for which we procured three very large hogs. As we intended to ſail in the afternoon, king Oree, and others of the natives came on board to take their leave. Captain Cook preſented to Oree a ſmall pewter plate, ſtamped with this inſcription, "His Britannic Majeſty's ſhip Endeavour, Captain Cook, commander, 16 July, 1769." We gave him alſo ſome medals, or counters, reſembling our Engliſh coin, and other trifles, which he promiſed to keep in order to remember us. The iſland of Huaheine lies in 16 deg. 43 min. ſouth latitude, and 150 deg. 52 min. weſt longitude; about 30 leagues diſtant from Otaheite, and is twenty miles in circumference. Its productions are a month forwarder than thoſe of the laſt mentioned iſland, as we found by ſeveral of the fruits, &c. Mr. Banks collected only a few new plants, but found a ſpecies of the ſcorpion which he had not before ſeen. The inhabitants are very lazy, but are ſtouter and larger made than thoſe of Otaheite; the women very fair, and we thought them handſome. Both ſexes ſeemed to be leſs timid, and leſs curious. They made no enquiries when on board the ſhip, and, when we fired a gun, though apparently frightened, yet they did not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite conſtantly did when we came among them; but it is to be conſidered, that the former had never experienced its power of diſpenſing death. We

now

now made ſale for the iſland of Ulietea, diſtant ſeven or eight leagues from Huaheine.

On the 20th, by the direction of Tupia, we anchored in a bay, formed by a reef, on the north ſide of the iſland. Two canoes ſoon came off from the ſhore, and the natives brought with them two ſmall hogs, which they exchanged for ſome nails and beads. The captain, Mr. Banks, and other gentlemen now went on ſhore, accompanied by Tupia, who introduced them with the ſame kind of ceremonies that had taken place on their landing at Huaheine; after which Captain Cook took poſſeſſion of this and the three neighbouring iſlands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, in the name of his Britannic majeſty. We then walked to a large Morai, called by the natives Tabodeboatea, which we found different from the ſepulchral monuments of Otaheite, being compoſed of four walls, about eight or nine feet high, and built of large coral ſtones, ſurrounding a court of about 30 feet ſquare. At a ſmall diſtance we found an altar, or ewhatta, whereupon lay the laſt oblation, or ſacrifice, a hog about eighty pounds weight, which had been offered whole, and very nicely roaſted. We alſo ſaw four or five Ewharre-no-eatua, or houſes of God, to which carriage poles were fitted. From hence we proceeded to a long houſe, where among rolls of cloth, we ſaw the model of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were faſtened eight human jaw-bones: we concluded they were trophies of war: but Tupia affirmed they were the jaw-bones of the natives of this iſland. Night now advanced with quick paces, but Mr. Banks and the Doctor continued their walk along the ſhore, and ſaw another Ewharre-no-eatua, alſo a tree of the fig kind, the trunk of which, (the nature whereof has been already deſcribed) was forty-two paces in circumference.

On the 21ſt the maſter was ſent to inſpect the ſouthern part of the iſland, and a lieutenant was diſpatched in the yawl to ſound the harbour where the Endeavour lay. While the Captain went in the pinnace to take a

view

view of that part of the iſland which lay to the northward. Mr. Banks and the gentlemen were again on ſhore, trading with the natives, and ſearching after the productions and curioſities of the country. They diſcovered, however, not one particular worthy of notice.

The hazy weather and briſk gales prevented us from getting under ſail, till the 24th, when we put to ſea, and ſteered northward within the reef, towards an opening, at the diſtance of about five or ſix leagues, in effecting which we were in great danger of ſtriking on a rock, the man who ſounded, crying out on a ſudden "Two fathoms," which could not but alarm us greatly; but either the maſter was miſtaken, or the ſhip went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands as are ſteep as a wall.

The bay where the Endeavour lay at anchor, called Oopoa, is capacious enough to hold a great number of ſhipping, and ſecured from the ſea by a reef of rocks. Its ſituation is off the eaſternmoſt part of the iſland. The proviſions conſiſt of cocoa-nuts, yams, plantains, and a few hogs and fowls. The country round about the place where we landed was not ſo plentiful as at Otaheite or Huaheine. The ſouthermoſt opening in the reef, or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the eaſtermoſt point of the iſland, and may be found by a ſmall woody iſland, which lies to the ſouth-eaſt of it, called Oatara; north-weſt from which are two other iſlots called Opururu and Tamou. Between theſe is the channel through which we went out of the harbour, and it is a full quarter of a mile wide.

On the 25th we were within a league or two of the iſland of Otoha; but could not get near enough to land, the wind having proved contrary. In the morning, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in the long-boat with the maſter, in order to ſound a harbour on the eaſt ſide of the iſland, which they found ſafe and convenient. We then went on ſhore and purchaſed a large quantity of plantains, and ſome hogs and fowls. The

produce

produce of this iſland was much the ſame with that of Ulietea, but it ſeemed to be more barren. We received the ſame compliment from the Indians here, as was uſual for them to pay their own kings, which was by uncovering their ſhoulders, and wrapping their cloaths round their bodies. We made ſail to the northward, and at eight o'clock on the 29th, we were under the high peaks of Bolabola. We found the iſland inacceſſible in this part, and likewiſe that it was impoſſible to weather the ſouth end of it till late at night. On the 30th, we diſcovered an iſland which Tupia called Maurua, but ſaid it was ſmall, ſurrounded by a reef, and without any commodious harbour, but inhabited, and yielded nearly the ſame produce as the adjacent iſlands. In the middle is a high round hill which may be ſeen at eleven or twelve leagues diſtance. In the afternoon, finding ourſelves to windward of ſome harbour that lay on the we ſtſide of Ulietea, we intended to put into one of them, in order to ſtop a leak which had ſprung in the powder-room, and to take in ſome additional ballaſt. The wind being right againſt us, we plied on and off till the afternoon of the firſt of Auguſt, when we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel, which led into one of the harbours.

On Wedneſday the 2d, in the morning, when the tide turned, we came into a proper place for mooring in 28 fathom. Many of the natives came off, and brought hogs, fowls, and plantains, which were purchaſed upon very moderate terms. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on ſhore, and ſpent the day very agreeably; the natives ſhewing them great reſpect: being conducted to the houſes of the chief people, they found thoſe who had ran haſtily before them, ſtanding on each ſide of a long mat ſpread upon the ground, and the family ſitting at the farther end of it. In one houſe they obſerved ſome very young girls dreſſed in the neateſt manner, who kept their places waiting for the ſtrangers to accoſt them; theſe girls were the moſt beautiful the gentlemen had ever ſeen. One of them, about ſeven or eight years old, was dreſſed in a red gown, and her

head

head was decorated with a great quantity of plaited hair; this ornament is called Tamou, and is held in great eſtimation among them. She was ſitting at the upper end of one of their long mats, on which none of the people preſent preſumed to ſet a foot; and her head was reclined on the arm of a decent looking woman, who appeared to be her nurſe; when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander approached her, ſhe ſtretched out her hand to receive ſome beads, which they preſented to her, with an air of ſuch dignity and gracefulneſs, as would have done honour to the firſt princeſs in Europe.

In one of the houſes we were entertained with a dance, different from any we had ſeen before. The performer put upon his head a large piece of wicker-work, about four feet long, of a cylindrical form, covered with feathers, and edged round with ſhark's teeth. With this head-dreſs, which is called a Whou, he began to dance with a ſlow motion; frequently moving his head, ſo as to deſcribe a circle with the top of his wicker cap, and ſometimes throwing it ſo near the faces of the by-ſtanders as to make them jump back: this they conſidered as an excellent piece of humour, and it always produced a hearty laugh, when practiſed upon any of the Engliſh gentlemen.

On Thurſday the 3d, as Mr. Banks and the doctor were going along the ſhore to the northward, with a deſign to purchaſe ſtock, they met with a company of dancers, who retarded the progreſs of their excurſion. The company was compoſed of ſix men and two women dancers, with three drums. They were informed that theſe dancers were ſome of the principal people of the iſland, and though they were an itinerant troop, they did not, like the ſtrolling parties of Otaheite, receive any gratuity from the by-ſtanders. The women wore a conſiderable quantity of tamou, or plaited hair, ornamented with flowers of the cape-jeſſamine, which were ſtuck in with taſte, and made an elegant head-dreſs. The womens necks, breaſts and arms, were naked; the other parts of their bodies were covered with



A DANCE *in* OTAHEITE.

with black cloth, which was faſtened cloſe round them, and by the ſide of each breaſt, next the arms, was a ſmall plume of black feathers, worn like a noſegay. Thus apparelled, they advanced ſideways, keeping time with great exactneſs to the drums, which beat quick and loud; ſoon after they began to ſhake themſelves in a very whimſical manner, and put their bodies into a variety of ſtrange poſtures, ſometimes ſitting down, and at others falling with their faces to the ground, and reſting on their knees and elbows, moving their fingers at the ſame time with a quickneſs ſcarcely to be credited. The chief dexterity, however, of the dancers, as well as the amuſement of the ſpectators, conſiſted in the laſciviouſneſs of their attitudes and geſtures. Between the dances of the women a kind of dramatic interlude was performed by the men, conſiſting of dialogue as well as dancing; but for want of a ſufficient knowledge of their language, we could not learn the ſubject of this interlude.

Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander and ſome other gentlemen, were preſent at a more regular dramatic entertainment the next day. The performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, one dreſſed in brown, and the other in white, by way of diſtinction. Tupia being preſent, informed them that the party in brown, acted the parts of a maſter and his ſervants, and the party in white, a gang of thieves; the maſter having produced a baſket of meat, which he gave in charge to his ſervants, which party exhibited a variety of expedients, in endeavouring to ſteal this baſket, and the brown as many in preventing the accompliſhment of their deſign. After ſome time had been ſpent in this manner, thoſe to whom the baſket was intruſted, laying themſelves down on the ground round it, pretended to fall aſleep; the other party availing themſelves of this opportunity, ſtole gently upon them, and carried off their booty; the ſervants awaking ſoon after, diſcovered their loſs, but they made no ſearch after the baſket, and began to dance with as much alacrity as before.

On Saturday the 5th, ſome hogs and fowls, and ſe-

veral large pieces of cloth, many of them being fifty or ſixty yards in length, together with a quantity of plantains and cocoa-nuts, were ſent to Captain Cook, as a preſent from the Earee Rahie of the iſland of Bolabola, accompanied with a meſſage, importing that he was then on the iſland, and intended waiting on the captain.

On the 6th, the king of Bolabola did not viſit us agreeable to his promiſe; his abſence, however, was not in the leaſt regretted, as he ſent three young women to demand ſomething in return for his preſent. After dinner, we ſet out to pay the king a viſit on ſhore, ſince he did not think proper to come on board. As this man was the Earee Rahie of the Bolabola man, who had conquered this, and were the dread of all the neighbouring iſlands, we were greatly diſappointed inſtead of finding a vigorous enterpriſing young chief, to ſee a poor feeble old dotard, half blind, and ſinking under the weight of age and infirmities. He received us without either that ſtate or ceremony which we had hitherto met with among the other chiefs.

On Wedneſday the 9th, having ſtopped a leak, and taken on board a freſh ſtock of proviſions, we ſailed out of the harbour. Though we were ſeveral leagues diſtant from the iſland of Bolabola, Tupia earneſtly intreated Captain Cook, that a ſhot might be fired towards it; which, to gratify him, the captain complied with. This was ſuppoſed to have been intended by Tupia as a mark of his reſentment againſt the inhabitants of that place, as they had formerly taken from him large poſſeſſions which he held in the iſland of Ulietea, of which iſland Tupia was a native, and a ſubordinate chief, but was driven out by theſe warriors. We had great plenty of proviſions, as well of hogs, as of vegetables, during the time we continued in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands, ſo that we were not obliged to uſe any conſiderable quantity of the ſhip's proviſions, and we had flattered ourſelves, that the fowls and hogs would have ſupplied us with freſh proviſions during the courſe of our voyage to the ſouth-

ward, but in this we were unhappily disappointed, for as the hogs could not be brought to eat any European grain, or any provender whatever, that the ship afforded, we were reduced to the disagreeable necessity of killing them immediately on leaving those islands; and the fowls all died of a disease in their heads, with which they were seized soon after they had been carried on board. Being detained longer at Ulietea in repairing the ship than we expected, we did not go on shore at Bolabola; but after giving the general name of the Society Islands, to the islands of Huaheine, Ulietea, Bolabola, Otaha, and Maurua, which lie between the latitude of 16 deg. 10 min. and 18 deg. 55 min. south, we pursued our course, standing southwardly for an island, to which we were directed by Tupia, at above 100 leagues distant. This we discovered on Sunday the 13th, and were informed by him, that it was called Obiterea.

On the 14th we stood in for land, and saw several of the inhabitants coming along the shore. One of the lieutenants was dispatched in the pinnace to sound for anchorage, and to obtain what intelligence could be got from the natives concerning any land, that might be farther to the south. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia, went with the lieutenant in the boat. When they approached the shore, they observed, that the Indians were armed with long lances. A number of them were soon drawn together on the beach, and two jumped into the water, endeavouring to gain the boat; but she soon left them and some others that had made the same attempt, far enough behind her. Having doubled the point where they intended to land, they opened a large bay, and saw another party of the natives standing at the end of it, armed like those whom they had seen before. Preparations were then made for landing, on which a canoe full of Indians came off towards them. Observing this, Tupia received orders to acquaint them that the English did not intend to offer them violence, but meant to traffic with them for nails, which were produced. Thus informed they

came along-ſide the boat, and took ſome nails that were given them, being ſeemingly well pleaſed with the preſent. Yet a few minutes after, ſeveral of theſe people boarded the boat, deſigning to drag her on ſhore; but ſome muſquets being diſcharged over their heads they leaped into the ſea, and having reached the canoe, put back with all poſſible expedition, joining their countrymen who ſtood ready to receive them. The boat immediately purſued the fugitives, but the crew finding the ſurf extremely violent, did not venture to land there, but coaſted along ſhore to try if they could not find a more convenient place. Soon after the canoe got on ſhore, a man oppoſite the boat flouriſhed his weapon, calling out at the ſame time with a ſhrill voice, which was a mark of defiance, as Tupia explained it to the Engliſh.—Not being able to find a proper landing-place, they returned, with an intention to attempt it where the canoe went on ſhore; whereupon another warrior repeated the defiance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other; he had a high cap on made of the tail feathers of a bird, and his body was painted with various colours. When he thought fit to retire, a grave man came forward, who aſked Tupia ſeveral queſtions, relating to the place from whence the veſſel came, as, Who were the perſons on board? Whither they were bound? &c. After this it was propoſed that the people in the boat ſhould go on ſhore and trade with them if they would lay aſide their weapons; but the latter would not agree to this, unleſs the Engliſh would do the like. As this propoſal was by no means an equal one, when it was conſidered that the hazard muſt for many reaſons be greater to the boat's crew than the Indians, and as perfidy was dreaded, it was not complied with. Beſides, ſince neither the bay which the Endeavour entered, nor any other part of the iſland furniſhed good harbour or anchorage, it was reſolved not to attempt landing any more, but to ſail from hence to the ſouthward.

The natives are very tall, well proportioned, and have long hair, which, like the inhabitants of the other iſlands,

iſlands, they tie in a bunch on the top of their heads, they are likewiſe tataowed in different parts of their bodies, but not on their poſteriors. The iſle does not ſhoot up into high peaks like the others that they viſited, but is more level and uniform, and divided into ſmall hillocks, ſome of which are covered with groves of trees. However, none of thoſe bearing the bread fruit were ſeen, and not many cocoa-trees, but a great number of thoſe called Etoa, were ſeen on the ſea coaſt of this iſland. Both the nature of their cloth, and their manner of wearing it, differed in many reſpects from what had been obſerved in the progreſs of our voyage. All the garments that theſe people wore, were dyed yellow, and painted with a variety of colours on the outſide. One piece formed their whole habit, having a hole in it through which they put their heads. This reached as far as their knees, and was tied cloſe round their bodies with a kind of yellowiſh ſaſh. Some of them alſo wore caps of the ſame kind, as we have already mentioned, and others bound round their heads a piece of cloth which reſembled a turban.

On the 15th we ſailed from this iſland with a fine breeze; but on the 16th it was hazy, and we bore away for what reſembled ſeveral high peaks of land. The weather clearing up, we were convinced of our miſtake, and reſumed our courſe accordingly. We ſaw a comet on the 30th, about four o'clock, which was then about 60 deg. above the horizon. Land was diſcovered at weſt by north on Thurſday the 7th of October, and in the morning of the 8th, we came to an anchor oppoſite the mouth of a ſmall river, not above half a league from the coaſt.

Captain Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and ſome other gentlemen, having left the pinnace at the mouth of the river, proceeded a little farther up, when we landed, leaving the yawl to the care of ſome of our boys, and went up to a few ſmall houſes in the neighbourhood. Some of the natives that had concealed themſelves in the neighbourhood took advantage of our abſence from the boat, and ruſhed out, advancing and brand-

brandiſhing their long wooden lances. On this our boys dropped down the ſtream. The cockſwain of the pinnace then fired a muſquetoon over their heads, but it did not prevent them from following the boat, in conſequence of which he levelled his piece, and ſhot one of them dead on the ſpot. Struck with aſtoniſhment at the death of their companion, the others remained motionleſs for ſome time, but as ſoon as they recovered their fright, retreated to the woods with the utmoſt precipitation. The report of the gun brought the advanced party back to the boats, and both the pinnace and yawl returned immediately to the ſhip.

On the 9th, a great number of the natives were ſeen near the place where the gentlemen in the yawl had landed the preceding evening, and the greateſt part of them appeared to be unarmed. The long-boat, pinnace, and yawl, being manned with marines and ſailors, Capt. Cook, with the reſt of the gentlemen, and Tupia, went on ſhore, and landed on the oppoſite ſide of the river, over againſt a ſpot where ſeveral Indians were ſitting on the ground. Theſe immediately ſtarted up, and began to handle their weapons, each producing either a long pike, or a kind of truncheon made of ſtone with a ſtring through the handle of it, which they twiſted round their wriſts. Tupia was directed to ſpeak to them in his language; and we were agreeably ſurprized to find that he was well underſtood, the natives ſpeaking in his language, though in a different dialect. Their intentions at firſt appeared to be very hoſtile, brandiſhing their weapons in the uſual threatening manner; upon which a muſquet was fired at ſome diſtance from them: the ball happened to fall into the water, at which they appeared rather terrified, and deſiſted from their menaces. Having now drawn up the marines, we advanced nearer to the ſide of the river. Tupia, again ſpeaking, informed them of our deſire to traffic with them for proviſions: to this they conſented, provided we would go over to them to the other ſide of the river. The propoſal was agreed to, upon condition that the natives would quit their weapons; but the

moſt

moſt ſolemn aſſurances of friendſhip could not prevail with them to make ſuch a conceſſion. Not thinking it prudent therefore to croſs the river, we, in our turn, intreated the Indians to come over to us, and after ſome time prevailed on one of them ſo to do. He was preſently followed by ſeveral others. They did not appear to value the beads and iron which we offered in the way of barter, but propoſed to exchange their weapons for ours; which being objected to, they endeavoured ſeveral times to ſnatch our arms from us, but being on our guard, from the information given us by Tupia that they were ſtill our enemies, their attempts were repeatedly fruſtrated; and Tupia, by our direction gave them to underſtand, that any further offers of violence would be puniſhed with inſtant death. One of them, nevertheleſs, had the audacity to ſnatch Mr. Green's dagger when his back was turned to them, and retiring a few paces, flouriſhed it over his head; but his temerity coſt him his life; for Mr. Monkhouſe fired a muſquet loaded with ball, and he inſtantly dropped. Soon after, though not before we had diſcharged our pieces loaded with ſmall ſhot only, they retreated ſlowly up the country, and we returned to our boats.

The behaviour of the Indians, added to our want of freſh water, induced Capt. Cook to continue his voyage round the bay, with a hope of getting ſome of the natives aboard, that by civil uſage he might convey through them a favourable idea of us to their countrymen, and thereby ſettle a good correſpondence with them. An event occurred which, though attended with diſagreeable circumſtances, promiſed to facilitate this deſign. Two canoes appeared, making towards land, and Capt. Cook propoſed intercepting them with our boats. One of them got clear off, but the Indians in the other, finding it impoſſible to eſcape, began to attack our people in the boats with their paddles. This compelled the Endeavour's people to fire upon them, when four of the Indians were killed, and the other three, who were young men, jumped into the water, and

and endeavoured to ſwim to ſhore; they were, however, taken up, and conveyed on board. At firſt they diſcovered all the ſigns of fear and terror, thinking they ſhould be killed; but Tupia, by repeated aſſurances of friendſhip, removed their apprehenſions, and they afterwards eat heartily of the ſhip's proviſions. Having retired to reſt in the evening, they ſlept very quietly for ſome hours, but about midnight, their fears returning, they appeared in great agitation, frequently making loud and diſmal groans. Again the kind careſſes and friendly promiſes of Tupia operated ſo effectually, that they became calm, and ſung a ſong, which at the dead of night had a pleaſing effect. The next morning, after they were dreſſed according to the mode of their own country, and were ornamented with necklaces and bracelets, preparations were made for ſending them to their countrymen, at which they expreſſed great ſatisfaction; but finding the boat approaching Capt. Cook's firſt landing place, they intimated that the inhabitants were foes, and that after killing their enemies, they always eat them. The captain, nevertheleſs, judged it expedient to land near the ſame ſpot, which he accordingly did with Mr. Banks, Doctor Solander, and Tupia, reſolving at the ſame time to protect the youths from any injury that might be offered them. Theſe had ſcarcely departed on their return to their friends, when two large parties of Indians advanced haſtily towards them, upon which they again flew to us for protection. When the Indians drew near, one of the boys diſcovered his uncle among them, and a converſation enſued acroſs the river, in which the boy gave a juſt account of our hoſpitality, and took great pains to diſplay his finery. A ſhort time after this converſation the uncle ſwam acroſs the river, bringing with him a green bough, a token of friendſhip, which we received as ſuch, and ſeveral preſents were made him. Notwithſtanding the preſence of this relation, all three of the boys, by their own deſire, returned to the ſhip, but as the captain intended to ſail the next morning, he ſent them aſhore in the evening, though

though much againſt their inclination. The names of theſe boys were Toahowrange, Koikerange, and Maragovete. They informed us of a particular kind of deer upon the iſland, and that there were likewiſe tars, capers, romara, yams; a kind of long pepper, bald coote, and black birds.

On the 11th at ſix o'clock in the morning, we weighed, and ſet ſail, in hopes of finding a better anchoring place, Capt. Cook having given the bay (called by the natives Toaneora) the name of Poverty Bay; and the ſouth-weſt point he called young Nick's Head, on account of its firſt having been perceived by a lad on board, named Nicholas Young. In the afternoon we were becalmed; and ſeveral canoes full of Indians came off from the ſhore, who received many preſents, and afterwards bartered even their cloaths, and ſome of their paddles, ſo eager were they to be poſſeſſed of European commodities. A ſingle tree formed the bottom of their canoes, and the upper part conſiſted of two planks ſewed together; theſe were painted red, repreſenting many uncommon figures, and very curiouſly wrought. The Indians were armed with bludgeons, made of wood, and of the bone of a large animal: they called them Patoo-Patoo; and they were well contrived for cloſe fighting.

Having finiſhed their traffic, they ſet off in ſuch a hurry, that they forgot three of their companions, who remained on board all night. Theſe teſtified their fears and apprehenſions, notwithſtanding Tupia took great pains to convince them they were in no danger; and about ſeven o'clock the next morning a canoe came off, with four Indians on board. It was at firſt with difficulty the Indians in the ſhip could prevail on thoſe in the canoe to come near them, and not till after the former had aſſured them, that the Engliſh did not eat men. The chief came on board, whoſe face was tataowed, with a remarkable patoo in his hand, and in this canoe the three Indians left the ſhip. Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Table to a point of land about ſeven leagues to the ſouth of Poverty Bay: its figure

greatly reſembling a table, and the iſland, called by the natives Teahowry, he named Portland Iſland, it being very ſimilar to that of the ſame name in the Britiſh Channel. It is joined to the main by a chain of rocks near a mile in length, partly above water. There are ſeveral ſhoals, called ſhambles, about three miles to the north-eaſt of Portland, one of which the Endeavour narrowly eſcaped; there is, however, a paſſage between them with twenty fathom water. Some parts of Portland Iſland, as well as the main, were cultivated; and pumice ſtone in great quantities lying along the ſhore, within the bay, indicated that there was a volcano in the iſland. High palings upon the ridges of hills were alſo viſible in two places, which were judged to be deſigned for religious purpoſes.

On the 12th ſeveral Indians came off in a canoe; they were diſfigured in a ſtrange manner, danced and ſang, and at times appeared to be peaceably inclined, but at others to menace hoſtilities. Notwithſtanding Tupia ſtrongly invited them to come on board, none of them would quit the canoe. Whilſt the Endeavour was getting clear of the ſhambles, five canoes full of Indians came off, and ſeemed to threaten the people on board, by brandiſhing their lances, and other hoſtile geſtures. A four-pounder, loaded with grape-ſhot, was therefore ordered to be fired, but not pointed at them. This had the deſired effect, and made them drop a-ſtern. Two more canoes came off whilſt the Endeavour lay at anchor, but the Indians on board behaved very peaceably and quiet, and received ſeveral preſents, but would not come on board.

On Friday the 13th in the morning, we made for an inlet, but finding it not ſheltered, ſtood out again; and were chaced by a canoe filled with Indians, but the Endeavour out-ſailed them. She purſued her courſe round the bay, but did not find an opening. The next morning we had a view of the inland country. It was mountainous, and covered with ſnow in the interior parts, but the land towards the ſea was flat and uncultivated, and in many places there were groves of high trees.

trees. Nine canoes full of Indians came from the ſhore, and five of them, after having conſulted together, purſued the Endeavour, apparently with a hoſtile deſign. Tupia was deſired to acquaint them that immediate deſtruction would enſue if they perſevered in their attempts; but words had no influence, and a four-pounder, with grape-ſhot was fired, to give them ſome notion of the arms of their opponents. They were terrified at this kind of reaſoning, and paddled away faſter than they came. Tupia then hailed the fugitives and acquainted them that if they came in a peaceable manner, and left their arms behind, no annoyance would be offered them; one of the canoes ſubmitting to the terms, came along-ſide the ſhip, and received many preſents; but the other canoes returning, and perſiſting in the ſame menacing behaviour, interrupted this friendly intercourſe.

On the 15th we were viſited by ſome fiſhing-boats, the people in which, conducted themſelves in an amicable manner. Though the fiſh which they had on board had been caught ſo long that they were not eatable, Capt. Cook purchaſed them merely for the ſake of promoting a trade with the natives. In the afternoon a canoe with a number of armed Indians came up, and one of them, who was remarkably cloathed, with a black ſkin, found means to defraud the captain of a piece of red baize, under pretence of bartering the ſkin he had on for it. As ſoon as he had got the baize into his poſſeſſion, inſtead of giving the ſkin in return, agreeable to his bargain, he rolled them up together, and ordered the canoe to put off from the ſhip, turning a deaf ear to the repeated remonſtrance of the captain againſt his unjuſt behaviour. After a ſhort time this canoe, together with the fiſhing boats which had put off at the ſame time, came back to the ſhip, and trade was again begun. During this ſecond traffic with the Indians, one of them unexpectedly ſeized Tupia's little boy Taiyota, and pulling him into his canoe, inſtantly put off, and paddled away with the utmoſt ſpeed; ſeveral muſquets were immediately diſcharged at the people in

the canoe, and one of them receiving a wound, they all let go the boy, who before was held down in the bottom of the canoe. Taiyota taking the advantage of their conſternation, immediately jumped into the ſea, and ſwam back towards the Endeavour; he was taken on board without receiving any harm; but his ſtrength was ſo much exhauſted with the weight of his cloaths, that it was with great difficulty he reached the ſhip. In conſequence of this attempt to carry off Taiyota, Capt. Cook called the cape off which it happened, Cape Kidnappers, lying in latitude 39 deg. 43 min. ſouth, and longitude 182 deg. 24 min. weſt, and is very diſtinguiſhable by the high cliffs and white rocks that ſurrounded it. The diſtance of this cape from Portland Iſland is about 13 leagues, and it forms the ſouth point of a bay which was denominated Hawke's Bay, in honour of Admiral Hawke.

Taiyota, having recovered from his fright, produced a fiſh and informed Tupia that he intended to offer it to his Eatua or God, in gratitude for his happy eſcape; this being approved of by the other Indian, the fiſh was caſt into the ſea. Capt. Cook now paſſed by a ſmall iſland which was ſuppoſed to be inhabited only by fiſhermen, as it ſeemed to be barren, and Bare Iſland was the name given to it, and to a head-land in latitude 40 deg. 34 min. ſouth, and longitude 182 deg. 55 min. weſt, becauſe the Endeavour turned, he gave the name of Cape Turnagain. It was never certainly known whether New Zealand was an iſland before this veſſel touched there: on this account, the lords of the admiralty had inſtructed Capt. Cook to ſail along the coaſts as far as 40 degrees ſouth, and if the land extended farther, to return to the northward again. It was for this reaſon that the captain altered his courſe, when he arrived at the cape above-mentioned: the wind having likewiſe veered about to the ſouth, he returned, ſailing along the coaſt nearly in his former track. Between this and Cape Kidnappers Bay, the land is unequal, and ſomewhat reſembles our downs and ſmall villages, and many inhabitants were obſerved. The ſhip came

abreaſt

abreaſt of a peninſula, in Portland Iſland, named Terakako, on Wedneſday the 19th. At this time a canoe with five Indians came up to the veſſel. There were two chiefs among them, who came on board, and ſtaid all night. One of theſe was a very comely perſon, and had an open and agreeable countenance. They were extremely grateful for the preſents which they received, and diſplayed no ſmall degree of curioſity. They would not eat or drink, but the ſervants devoured the victuals ſet before them with a moſt voracious appetite.

We gave the name of Gable End Foreland to a remarkable head-land, which we paſſed on the 19th. Three canoes appeared here, and one Indian came on board to whom we gave ſmall preſents before he withdrew.

Many of theſe Indians wore pieces of green-ſtone round their necks which were tranſparent, and reſembled an emerald. Theſe being examined, appeared to be a ſpecies of the nephritic ſtone. Several pieces of it were procured by Mr. Banks, and it appeared that this furniſhed the iſlanders with their principal ornaments. The form of ſome of their faces was agreeable; their noſes were rather prominent than flat. Their dialect was not ſo guttural as that of others, and their language nearly reſembled that of Otaheite.

On Friday the 20th we anchored in a bay two leagues to the north of the Foreland. To this bay we were invited by the natives in canoes, who behaved very amicably, and pointed to a place where they ſaid we ſhould find plenty of freſh water. We determined here to get ſome knowledge of the country, though the harbour was not ſo good a ſhelter from the weather as we expected. Two chiefs, whom we ſaw in the canoes, came on board, they were dreſſed in jackets, the one ornamented with tufts of red feathers, the other with dogs-ſkin. We preſented to them linen and ſome ſpike nails, but they did not value the laſt ſo much as the inhabitants of the other iſlands. The reſt of the Indians traded with us without the leaſt impoſition, and we directed Tupia to acquaint them of our views in coming thither; and promiſe,

promiſe, that they ſhould receive no injury, if they offered none to us. In the afternoon the chief returned; and towards the evening we went on ſhore, accompanied by the Captain, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks. We were courteouſly received by the inhabitants, who did not appear in numerous bodies, and in other inſtances were ſcrupulouſly attentive not to give offence. We made them ſeveral ſmall preſents, and in this agreeable tour round the bay, we had the pleaſure of finding two ſtreams of freſh water. We remained on ſhore all night, and the next day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander diſcovered ſeveral birds, among which were quails and large pigeons. Many ſtages for drying fiſh were obſerved near where we landed, and ſome houſes with fences. We ſaw dogs with pointed ears, and very ugly. Sweet potatoes, like thoſe which grow in America were found. The cloth plant grew ſpontaneous. In the neighbouring valleys the lands were laid out in regular plantations; and in the bay we caught plenty of crabs, cray-fiſh, and horſe-mackarel, larger than thoſe upon the Engliſh coaſts. The low lands were planted with cacoes; the hollows with gourds; but as to the woods they were almoſt impaſſable, on account of the number of ſupple-jacks which grew there. We went into ſeveral of the houſes belonging to the natives, and met with a very civil reception; and, without the leaſt reſerve, they ſhewed us whatever we deſired to ſee. At times we found them at their meals, which our preſence never interrupted. At this ſeaſon fiſh conſtituted their chief food; with which they eat, inſtead of bread, roots of a kind of fern; theſe when roaſted upon a fire are ſweet and clammy: in taſte not diſagreeable, though rather unpleaſant from the number of their fibres. They have doubtleſs in other ſeaſons of the year an abundance of excellent vegetables.

The women of this place paint their faces with a mixture of red ocre and oil, which, as they are very plain, renders them in appearance more homely. This kind of daubing being generally wet upon their cheeks and foreheads,

foreheads, was eaſily transferred to thoſe who ſaluted them, as was frequently viſible upon the noſes of our people. The young ones, who were complete coquets, wore a petticoat, under which was a girdle, made of the blades of graſs ſtrongly perfumed, to which was pendant a ſmall bunch of the leaves of ſome fragrant plant. The faces of the men were not in general painted; but they were daubed with dry red ocre from head to foot, their apparel not excepted. Though in perſonal cleanlineſs they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, yet in ſome particulars they ſurpaſſed them; for their dwellings were furniſhed with privies, and they had dunghills upon which their offals and filth were depoſited. Among the females chaſtity was lightly eſteemed. They reſorted frequently to the watering place, where they freely beſtowed every favour that was requeſted. An officer meeting with an elderly woman, he accompanied her to her houſe, and having preſented her with ſome cloth and beads, a young girl was ſingled out, with whom he was given to underſtand he might retire. Soon after an elderly man, with two women came in as viſitors, who with much formality ſaluted the whole company, after the cuſtom of the place, which is by gently joining the tips of their noſes together. On his return, which was on Saturday the 21ſt, he was furniſhed with a guide, who whenever they came to a brook or rivulet took him on his back to prevent his being wet. Many of the natives were curiouſly tataowed, an old man in particular, was marked on the breaſt with curious figures. One of them had an axe made of the green ſtone, which we could not purchaſe, though ſundry things were offered in exchange. Theſe Indians at night dance in a very uncouth manner, with antic geſtures, lolling out their tongues and making ſtrange grimaces. In their dances old men as well as the young ones are capital performers.

In the evening, Mr. Banks, being apprehenſive that we might be left on ſhore after it was dark, applied to the Indians for one of their canoes to convey us on board the ſhip. This they granted with an obliging manner.

manner. We were eight in number, and not being uſed to a veſſel that required a nice balance, we overſet her in the ſurf. No one however was drowned, but it was concluded, to prevent a ſimilar accident, that half our number ſhould go at one time. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Taiyota, were the firſt party who embarked again, and arrived ſafe at the ſhip, as did the remainder of our company, all not a little pleaſed with the good nature of our Indian friends, who chearfully contributed their aſſiſtance, upon our ſecond trip. During our ſtay on ſhore, ſeveral of them went out in their canoes and trafficked with the ſhip's company. At firſt they preferred the cloth of Otaheite to that of Europe, but in the courſe of a day it decreaſed in its value five hundred per cent. Theſe people expreſſed ſtrong marks of aſtoniſhment when ſhewn the bark and her apparatus. This bay, which we now determined to quit, the natives call Tegadoo, and it is ſituated in 38 deg. 10 min. ſouth latitude.

On the 22d in the evening, being Sunday, we weighed anchor and put to ſea, but the wind being contrary we ſtood for another bay a little to the ſouth, called by the natives Tolaga, in order to complete our wood and water, and to extend our correſpondence with the natives. In this bay we came to an anchor, in about eleven fathom water, with a good ſandy bottom, the north point of the bay bearing north by eaſt, and the ſouth point ſouth eaſt. We found a watering-place in a ſmall cove a little within the ſouth-point of the bay, which bore ſouth by eaſt, diſtant about a mile. Several canoes with Indians on board, trafficked with us very fairly for glaſs bottles.

On Monday the 23d in the afternoon, we went on ſhore accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the captain. We examined and found the water extremely good; alſo plenty of wood; and the natives ſhewed us as much civility as thoſe from whom we had lately departed. At this watering-place we ſet up an aſtronomical quadrant, and took ſeveral ſolar and lunary obſervations. In the morning of the 24th, Mr.

Gore

London Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.



Smith. sculp.

A Curiously ARCHED ROCK, on the Coast of NEW ZEALAND

Gore and the marines were ſent on ſhore to guard the people employed in cutting wood and filling the caſks with water. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and the doctor alſo went on ſhore: the latter were employed in collecting plants. In our walks through the vales we ſaw many houſes uninhabited, the natives reſiding chiefly in ſheds, on the ridges of the hills, which are very ſteep. In a valley between two very high hills, we ſaw a curious rock that formed a large arch, oppoſite the ſea. This cavern was in length about ſeventy feet, in breadth thirty, and near fifty in height, commanding a view of the bay and hills on the other ſide, which had a very pleaſing effect. Indeed the whole country about the bay is agreeable beyond deſcription, and, if properly cultivated, would be a moſt fertile ſpot. The hills are cloathed with beautiful flowering ſhrubs, intermixed with a number of tall, ſtately palms, which perfume the air, making it perfectly odoriferous. Mr. Banks and the doctor, among other trees that yielded a fine tranſparent gum, diſcovered the cabbage-tree, the produce whereof when boiled, was very good. We met with various kinds of edible herbage in great abundance, and many trees that produced fruit fit to eat. The plant from which the cloth is made, is a kind of Hemerocallis; its leaves afford a ſtrong gloſſy flax, equally adapted to cloathing, and making of ropes. Sweet potatoes and plantains are cultivated near the houſes.

On our return we met an old man who entertained us with the military exerciſes of the natives, which are performed with the Patoo-Patoo and the lance. The former has been already mentioned, and is uſed as a battle-axe: the latter is eighteen or twenty feet in length, made of extreme hard wood, and ſharpened at each end. A ſtake was ſubſtituted for a ſuppoſed enemy. The old warrior firſt attacked him with his lance, advancing with a moſt furious aſpect. Having pierced him, the patoo-patoo was uſed to demoliſh his head, at which he ſtruck with a force which would at one blow have ſplit any man's ſkull: from whence we

A Curiously ARCHED ROCK, on the Coast of NEW ZEALAND, with

concluded no quarter was given by theſe people to their foes in time of action.

The natives in this part are not very numerous. They are tolerably well ſhaped, but lean and tall. Their faces reſemble thoſe of the Europeans. Their noſes are aquiline, their eyes dark coloured, their hair black, which is tied upon the top of their heads, and the mens beards are of a moderate length. Their tataowing is done very curiouſly, in various figures, which makes their ſkin reſemble carving; it is confined to the principal men, the females and ſervants uſing only red paint, with which they daub their faces, that otherwiſe would not be diſagreeable. Their cloth is white, gloſſy, and very even; it is worn principally by the men, though it is wrought by the women, who, indeed, are condemned to all drudgery and labour.

On the 25th we ſet up the armourers forge on ſhore for neceſſary uſes, and got our wood and water without the leaſt moleſtation from the natives, with whom we exchanged glaſs bottles and beads for different ſorts of fiſh. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again in ſearch of plants. Tupia, who was with them, engaged in a converſation with one of the prieſts, and they ſeemed to agree in their opinions upon the ſubject of religion. Tupia, in the courſe of this conference, enquired whether the report of their eating men was founded in truth, to which the prieſt anſwered, it was, but that they eat none but declared foes, after they were killed in war. This idea ſo ſavage and barbarous, proved, however, that they carried their reſentment even beyond death.

On the 17th, Capt. Cook and Dr. Solander went to inſpect the bay, when the doctor was not a little ſurpriſed to find the natives in the poſſeſſion of a boy's top, which they knew how to ſpin by whipping it, and he purchaſed it out of curioſity. Mr. Banks was during this time employed in attaining the ſummit of a ſteep hill, that had previouſly engaged their attention, and near it he found many inhabited houſes. There were two rows of poles about fourteen or fifteen feet high,

high, covered over with ſticks, which made an avenue of about five feet in width, extending near a hundred yards down the hill, in an irregular line: the intent of this erection was not diſcovered. When the gentlemen met at the watering place, the Indians ſang their war-ſong, which was a ſtrange medley of ſhouting, ſighing, and grimace, at which the women aſſiſted. The next day Capt. Cook and other gentlemen went upon the iſland at the entrance of the bay, and met with a canoe that was 67 feet in length, ſix in breadth, and four in height; her bottom, which was ſharp, conſiſted of three trunks of trees, and the ſides and head were curiouſly carved.

We alſo came to a large unfiniſhed houſe. The poſts which ſupported it were ornamented with carvings, that did not appear to be done upon the ſpot, and as the inhabitants ſeemed to ſet great value upon works of this kind, future navigators might find their advantage in carrying ſuch articles to trade with. Though the poſts of this houſe were judged to be brought here, the people ſeemed to have a taſte for carving; as their boats, paddles, and tops of walking ſticks evince. Their favourite figure is a volute or ſpiral, which is ſometimes ſingle, double, and triple, and is done with great exactneſs, though the only inſtruments we ſaw were an axe made of ſtone, and a chiſſel. Their taſte, however, is extremely whimſical and extravagant, ſcarcely ever imitating nature. Their huts are built under trees, their form is an oblong ſquare: the door low on the ſide, and the windows are at the ends; reeds covered with thatch compoſe the walls; the beams of the eaves, which come to the ground, are covered with thatch; moſt of the houſes had been deſerted, through fear of the Engliſh, upon their landing. There are many beautiful parrots, and great numbers of birds of different kinds, particularly one whoſe note reſembles the European black-bird; but here is no ground fowl or poultry, nor any quadrupedes, excepts rats and dogs, and theſe were not numerous. The dogs are conſidered as delicate food, and their ſkins ſerve for

ornaments to their apparel. There is a great variety of fiſh in the bay, ſhell and cray fiſh are very plentiful, ſome of the latter weigh near 12 pounds.

Sunday, October the 29th, we ſet ſail from this bay. It is ſituate in latitude 38 deg. 22 min. ſouth, four leagues to the north of Gable End Foreland; there are two high rocks at the entrance of the bay, which form a cove very good for procuring wood and water. There is a high rocky iſland off the north point of the bay, which affords good anchorage, having a fine ſandy bottom, and from ſeven to thirteen fathom water, and is likewiſe ſheltered from all but the north-eaſt wind. We obtained nothing here in trade but ſome ſweet potatoes, and a little fiſh. This is a very hilly country, though it preſents the eye with an agreeable verdure, various woods and many ſmall plantations. Mr. Banks found a great number of trees in the woods, quite unknown to Europeans, the fire wood reſembled the maple-tree, and produced a gum of whitiſh colour; other trees yielded a gum of a deep yellow green. The only roots were yams and ſweet potatoes, though the ſoil appears very proper for producing every ſpecies of vegetables.

On Monday the 30th, ſailing to the northward, we fell in with a ſmall iſland about a mile diſtant from the north-eaſt point of the main, and this being the moſt eaſtern part of it, the captain named it Eaſt Cape, and the iſland Eaſt Iſland; it was but ſmall, and appeared barren. The cape is in latitude 37 deg. 42 min. 30 ſec. ſouth. There are many ſmall bays from Tolaga Bay to Eaſt Cape. Having doubled the cape, many villages preſented themſelves to view, and the adjacent land appeared cultivated. In the evening of the 30th, Lieutenant Hicks diſcovered a bay to which his name was given. Next morning, about nine, ſeveral canoes came off from ſhore with a number of armed men, who appeared to have hoſtile intentions. Before theſe had reached the ſhip, another canoe, larger than any that had yet been ſeen, full of armed Indians, came off, and made towards the Endeavour with great expedition.

pedition. The captain now judging it expedient to prevent, if poſſible, their attacking him, ordered a gun to be fired over their heads. This not producing the deſired effect, another gun was fired with ball, which threw them into ſuch conſternation that they immediately returned much faſter than they came. This precipitate retreat, induced the captain to give the cape, off which it happened, the name of Cape Runaway; it lies in latitude 37 deg. 32 min. ſouth, and longitude 181 deg. 48 min. weſt.

On the 31ſt, we found that the land, which during this day's run appeared like an iſland, was one, and we named the ſame White Iſland.

On the 1ſt of November, at day-break, not leſs than between 40 and 50 canoes were ſeen, ſeveral of which came off as before, threatening to attack the Engliſh. One of their chiefs flouriſhed his pike, and made ſeveral harangues, ſeeming to bid defiance to thoſe on board the veſſel. At laſt, after repeated invitations, they came cloſe along-ſide; but inſtead of ſhewing a diſpoſition to trade, the haranguing chief uttered a ſentence, and took up a ſtone which he threw againſt the ſhip, and immediately after they ſeized their arms. They were informed by Tupia, of the dreadful conſequences of commencing hoſtilities; but this admonition they ſeemed little to regard. A piece of cloth, however, happening to attract their eyes, they began to be more mild and reaſonable. A quantity of cray fiſh, muſcles, and conger eels was now purchaſed. No fraud was attempted by this company of Indians, but ſome others that came after them, took goods from the veſſel without making proper returns. As one of them that had rendered himſelf remarkable for theſe practices, and ſeemed proud of his ſkill in them, was putting off with his canoe, a muſquet was fired over his head, which circumſtance produced good order for the preſent. Yet when theſe ſavages began to traffic with the ſailors, they renewed their frauds; and one of them was bold enough to ſeize ſome linen that was hung to dry, and run away with it. In order to induce him to return,

return, a muſquet was firſt fired over his head, but this not anſwering the end, he was ſhot in the back with ſmall ſhot, yet he ſtill perſevered in his deſign. This being perceived by his countrymen, they dropped aſtern, and ſet up the ſong of defiance. In conſequence of their behaviour, though they made no preparations to attack the veſſel, the captain gave orders to fire a four pounder, which paſſed over them; but its effect on the water terrified them ſo much, that they retreated with precipitation to the ſhore.

In the afternoon, about two o'clock, we diſcovered a pretty high iſland to the weſtward. Some time after perceiving other rocks and iſlands in the ſame quarter, but not being able to weather them before night came on, we bore up between them and the main land. In the evening a double canoe, built after the ſame faſhion as thoſe of Otaheite, came up, when Tupia entered into a friendly converſation with the Indians, and was told that the iſland, cloſe to which we lay, was called Mowtohora. It was but a few miles from the main land, pretty high, but of no great extent. We imagined the diſpoſition of the Indians, from their talk with Tupia, to be in our favour, but, when it was dark they began their uſual ſalute, by pouring a volley of ſtones into the ſhip and then retreated. South-weſt by weſt of this iſland, upon the main land, and in the center of a large plain, is a high circular mountain, to which we gave the name of Mount Edgecombe. It is very conſpicuous, and is ſeated in latitude 37 deg. 59 min. longitude 193 deg. 7 min.

The next morning, being the 2nd, a number of canoes appeared, and one, which proved to be the ſame that had pelted us the night before, came up. After converſing with Tupia, and behaving peaceably about an hour, they complimented us with another volley of ſtones. We returned the ſalute by firing a muſket, which made them inſtantly take to their paddles. Between ten and eleven we ſailed between a low flat iſland and the main land. The laſt appeared to be of a moderate height, but level, full of plantations and villages.

lages. The villages were upon the high land next the ſea, more extenſive than any we had ſeen, and ſurrounded by a ditch, and a bank with rails on the top of it. There were ſome incloſures that reſembled forts, and the whole had the appearance of places calculated for defence.

On the 3d, we paſſed the night near a ſmall iſland, which Capt. Cook named the Mayor; and at ſeven in the morning, diſtant from hence about ſix leagues, we diſcovered a cluſter of ſmall iſlands, which we called the Court of Aldermen. Theſe were twelve miles from the main, between which were other ſmall iſlands, moſtly barren, but very high. The aſpect of the main land was now much changed, the ſoil appearing to be barren, and the country very thinly inhabited. The chief who governed the diſtrict from Cape Turnagain to this coaſt was named Teratu. In the afternoon three canoes, built differently from thoſe already mentioned, came along-ſide the Endeavour. They were formed of the trunks of whole trees, rendered hollow by burning; but they were not carved, nor in any manner ornamented. We now ſailed towards an inlet that had been diſcovered, and having anchored in ſeven fathom water, the ſhip was ſoon ſurrounded by a number of canoes, and the people on board them did not ſeem diſpoſed for ſome time to commit any acts of hoſtility. A bird being ſhot by one of our crew, ſome Indians, without ſhewing any ſurpriſe brought it on board; and for their civility the captain gave them a piece of cloth. But this favour operated upon them in a different manner than was expected; for when it was dark, they begun a ſong of defiance, and endeavoured to carry off the buoy of the anchor; and notwithſtanding ſome muſquets were fired at them, they ſeemed rather to be irritated than frightened. They even threatened to return the next morning; but on Sunday night eleven of them were to be ſeen, and theſe retired when they found the ſhip's crew were upon their guard.

On the 4th at day break no leſs than twelve canoes

made their appearance, containing near two hundred men, armed with ſpears, lances, and ſtones, who ſeemed determined to attack the ſhip, and would have boarded her, had they known on what quarter they could beſt have made their attack. While they were paddling round her, which kept the crew upon the watch in the rain, Tupia, at the requeſt of the captain, uſed a number of diſſuaſive arguments, to prevent their carrying their apparent deſigns into execution; but we could not pacify them by the fire of our muſquets: they then laid aſide their hoſtile intentions, and began to trade; yet they could not refrain from their fraudulent practices; for after they had fairly bartered two of their weapons, they would not deliver up a third, for which they had received cloth, and only laughed at thoſe who demanded an equivalent. The offender was wounded with ſmall ſhot; but his countrymen took not the leaſt notice of him, and continued to trade without any diſcompoſure. When another canoe was ſtruck for their mal-practices, the natives behaved in the ſame manner; but if a round was fired over or near them, they all paddled away. Thus we found, that theft and chicane, were as prevalent among the inhabitants of New Zealand, as thoſe of Otaheite. In ſearching for an anchoring place, the captain ſaw a fortified village upon a high point, and having fixed upon a proper ſpot, he returned; upon which we weighed, run in nearer to the ſhore, and caſt anchor upon a ſandy bottom, in four fathom and a half water. The ſouth point of the bay bore due eaſt, diſtant one mile, and a river which the boats can enter at low water ſouth ſouth-eaſt, diſtant a mile and an half.

On the 5th, in the morning, the Indians came off to the ſhip again, who behaved much better than they had done the preceding day. An old man in particular named Tojava, teſtified his prudence and honeſty, to whom and a friend with him, the captain preſented ſome nails, and two pieces of Engliſh cloth. Tojava informed us, that they were often viſited by free-booters from the north, who ſtripped them of all they could lay

their

their hands on, and at times made captives of their wives and children; and that being ignorant who the Engliſh were upon their firſt arrival, the natives had been much alarmed, but were now ſatisfied of their good intentions. He added, that for their ſecurity againſt thoſe plunderers, their houſes were built contiguous to the tops of the rocks, where they could better defend themſelves. Probably their poverty and miſery may be aſcribed to the ravages of thoſe who frequently ſtript them of every neceſſary of life. Having diſpatched the long-boat and pinnace into the bay to haul and dredge for fiſh, but with little ſucceſs, the Indians on the banks teſtified their friendſhip by every poſſible means. They brought us great quantities of fiſh dreſſed and dried, which though indifferent, we purchaſed, that trade might not be diſcouraged. They alſo ſupplied us with wood and good water. While we were out with our guns, the people who ſtaid by the boats ſaw two of the natives fight. The battle was begun with their lances; but ſome old men taking theſe away, they were obliged to decide the quarrel, like Engliſhmen, with their fiſts. For ſome time they boxed with great vigour and perſeverance, but at length they all retired behind a little hill, ſo that our people were prevented from ſeeing the iſſue of the combat. At this time the Endeavour being very foul, ſhe was heeled, and her bottom ſcrubbed in the bay.

On the 8th, we were viſited by ſeveral canoes, in one of which was Tojava, who, deſcrying two canoes, haſtened back again to the ſhore, apprehending they were freebooters; but finding his miſtake, he ſoon returned; and the Indians ſupplied us with as much excellent fiſh as ſerved the whole ſhip's company. This day a variety of plants were collected by Mr. Banks and Doctor Solander, who had never obſerved any of the kind before. They ſtaid on ſhore till near dark, when they obſerved how the natives diſpoſed of themſelves during the night. They had no ſhelter but a few ſhrubs. The men lay neareſt the ſea in a ſemicircular form; and the women and children moſt diſtant from it. They had no king whoſe ſovereignty they acknow-

ledged, a circumſtance not to be paralleled on any other parts of the coaſt.

Early in the morning of the 9th the Indians brought in their canoes a prodigious quantity of mackarel, of which one ſort were exactly the ſame with thoſe caught in England. They ſold them at a low rate, and they were not leſs welcome to us on that account. Theſe canoes were ſucceeded by others equally loaded with the ſame ſort of fiſh; and the cargoes purchaſed were ſo great, that every one of the ſhip's company who could get ſalt, cured as many as would ſerve him for a month's proviſion. The Indians frequently reſort to the bay in parties to gather ſhell-fiſh, of which it affords an incredible plenty. Indeed wherever we went, whether on the hills, or through the vales, in the woods or on the plains, we ſaw many waggon loads of ſhells in heaps, ſome of which appeared freſh, others very old.

This being a very clear day, Mr. Green, the aſtronomer, landed with other gentlemen to obſerve the tranſit of Mercury. The obſervation of the ingreſs was made by Mr. Green alone, and Capt. Cook took the ſun's altitude to aſcertain the time. While the obſervation was making, a canoe, with various commodities on board, came along-ſide the ſhip; and Mr. Gore, the officer who had then the command, being deſirous of encouraging them to traffic, produced a piece of Otaheitean cloth, of more value than any they had yet ſeen, which was immediately ſeized by one of the Indians, who obſtinately refuſed either to return it, or give any thing in exchange: he paid dearly however for his temerity, being ſhot dead upon the ſpot. The death of this young Indian alarmed all the reſt; they fled with great precipitancy, and, for the preſent, could not be induced to renew their traffic with the Engliſh. But when the Indians on ſhore had heard the particulars related by Tojava, who greatly condemned the conduct of the deceaſed, they ſeemed to think that he had merited his fate. His name was Otirreeonooe. This tranſaction happened, as has been mentioned, whilſt the obſervation was making of the tranſit of Mercury, when the

the weather was ſo favourable, that the whole tranſit was viewed, without a cloud intervening. The tranſit commenced ſeven hours, 20 min. 58 ſec. By Mr. Green's obſervation the internal contact was at 12 hours, eight min. 57 ſec. the external at 12 hours nine min. 55 ſec. the latitude 30 deg. 48 min. five ſec. In conſequence of this obſervation having been made here, this bay was called Mercury Bay.

On the 10th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the captain went in boats to inſpect a large river that runs into the bay. They found it broader ſome miles within than at the mouth, and interſected into a number of ſtreams, by ſeveral ſmall iſlands, which were covered with trees. On the eaſt ſide of the river, the gentlemen ſhot ſome ſhags, which proved very good eating. The ſhore abounded with fiſh of various kinds, ſuch as cockles, clams, and oyſters; and here were alſo ducks, ſhags, and curlieus, with other wild fowl in great plenty. At the mouth of the river there was good anchorage in five fathom water. The gentlemen were received with great hoſpitality by the inhabitants of a little village on the eaſt ſide of the river. There are there the remains of a fort called Eppah, on a peninſula that projects into the river, and it was calculated for defending a ſmall number againſt a greater force. From the remains, it nevertheleſs ſeemed to have been taken and partly deſtroyed. The Indians ſup before ſun-ſet, when they eat fiſh and birds baked or roaſted; they roaſt them upon a ſtick, ſtuck in the ground near the fire, and bake them in the manner the dog was baked, which the gentlemen eat at George's Iſland. A female mourner was preſent at one of their ſuppers; ſhe was ſeated upon the ground, and wept inceſſantly, at the ſame time repeating ſome ſentences in a doleful manner, but which Tupia could not explain; at the termination of each period ſhe cut herſelf with a ſhell upon her breaſt, her hands, or her face; notwithſtanding this bloody ſpectacle greatly affected the gentlemen preſent, yet all the Indians who ſat by her, except one, were quite unmoved. The gentlemen ſaw ſome, who from the depth of their ſcars

muſt, upon theſe occaſions, have wounded themſelves more violently.

Great plenty of oyſters were procured from a bed which had been diſcovered, and they proved exceedingly good. Next day the ſhip was viſited by two canoes, with unknown Indians; after ſome invitation they came on board, and they all trafficked without any fraud. Two fortified villages being deſerted, the Captain, with Mr. Bank, and Dr. Solander, went to examine them. The ſmalleſt was romantically ſituated upon a rock, which was arched; this village did not conſiſt of above five or ſix houſes, fenced round. There was but one path, which was very narrow, that conducted to it. The gentlemen were invited by the inhabitants to pay them a viſit, but not having time to ſpare, took another route, after having made preſents to the females. A body of men, women, and children now approached the gentlemen; theſe proved to be the inhabitants of another town, which they propoſed viſiting. They gave many teſtimonies of their friendly diſpoſitions; among others they uttered the word Heromai, which according to Tupia's interpretation, implied peace, and appeared much ſatisfied, when informed the gentlemen intended viſiting their habitations. Their town was named Wharretouwa. It is ſeated on a point of land over the ſea, on the north ſide of the bay, and was pailed round, and defended by a double ditch. Within the ditch a ſtage is erected for defending the place in caſe of an attack; near this ſtage, quantities of darts and ſtones are depoſited that they may always be in readineſs to repel the aſſailants. There is another ſtage to command the path that leads to the town; and there were ſome out-works. The place ſeemed calculated to hold out a conſiderable time againſt an enemy armed with no other weapons than thoſe of the Indians. It appeared however deficient in water for holding out a ſiege. Inſtead of bread, they had fern root, which was here in great plenty, with dried fiſh. Very little of the land was cultivated, and ſweet potatoes and yams were the only vegetables to be found. There are two rocks near the fort of this fortification,

fortification, both ſeparated from the main land; they are very ſmall, nevertheleſs they are not without dwelling-houſes and little fortifications. In their engagements, theſe Indians throw ſtones with their hands, being deſtitute of a ſling, and thoſe and lances are their only miſſible weapons; they have, beſides the patoo-patoo, already deſcribed, a ſtaff about five feet in length and another ſhorter. We ſailed from this bay, after having taken poſſeſſion of it in the name of the king of Great Britain, on the 15th of November. Tojava, who viſited us in his canoe juſt before our departure, ſaid, he ſhould prepare to retire to his fort as ſoon as the Engliſh were gone, as the relations of Otirreonooe had threatened to take his life, as a forfeit for that of the deceaſed, Tojava being judged partial in this affair to the Engliſh.

Towards the north-weſt, a number of iſlands of different ſizes appeared, which were named Mercury Iſlands; Mercury Bay lies in latitude 36 deg. 47 min. ſouth; longitude 184 deg. 4 min. weſt, and has a ſmall entrance at its mouth. On account of the number of oyſters found in the river, the captain gave it the name of Oyſter River: Mangrove River (which the captain ſo called from the great number of thoſe trees that grew near it) is the moſt ſecure place for ſhipping, being at the head of the bay. The north-weſt ſide of this bay and river appeared much more fertile than the eaſt ſide. The inhabitants, though numerous, have no plantations. Their canoes are very indifferently conſtructed, and are not ornamented at all. They lie under continual apprehenſions of Terratu, being conſidered by him as rebels. Shore iron ſand is to be found in plenty on this coaſt, which proves that there are mines of metal up the country, it being brought down from thence by a rivulet.

On the 18th in the morning, we ſteered between the main, and an iſland which ſeemed very fertile, and as extenſive as Ulietea. Several canoes filled with Indians, came along-ſide here, and the Indians ſang their war ſong, but the Endeavour's people paying them no attention, they threw a volley of ſtones, and then paddled

to

dled away; however they preſently returned their inſults. Tupia ſpoke to them, making uſe of his old arguments, that inevitable deſtruction would enſue if they perſiſted; they anſwered by brandiſhing their weapons, intimating, that if the Engliſh durſt come on ſhore, they would deſtroy them all. Tupia ſtill continued in expoſtulating with them, but to no purpoſe: and they ſoon gave another volley of ſtones; but upon a muſquet being fired at one of their boats, they made a precipitate retreat. We caſt anchor in 23 fathom water in the evening, and early the next morning ſailed up an inlet. Soon after two canoes came off, and ſome of the Indians came on board: they knew Tojava very well, and called Tupia by his name. Having received from us ſome preſents, they retired peaceably, and apparently highly gratified.

On Monday the 20th, after having run five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, we came to an anchor in a bay called by the natives Ooahaouragee. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others ſet off in the pinnace to examine the bottom of the bay, and found the inlet end of a river, about nine miles above the ſhip. We entered into the ſame with the firſt of the flood, and before we had proceeded three miles, the water was perfectly freſh. Here we ſaw an Indian town, built upon a ſmall dry ſand-bank, and entirely ſurrounded by a deep mud; the inhabitants of which with much cordiality invited us to land, and gave us a moſt friendly reception. We were now fourteen miles up the river, and finding little alteration in the face of the country, we landed on the weſt ſide to examine the lofty trees which adorned its banks, and were of a kind that we had not ſeen before. At the entrance of a wood we met with one ninety-eight feet high from the ground, quite ſtrait, and nineteen feet in circumference; and as we advanced we found others ſtill larger. The wood of theſe trees is very heavy, not fit for maſts but would make exceeding fine planks. Our carpenter, who was with us, obſerved, that the timber reſembled that of the pitch pine which is lightened by tapping. There were alſo trees

of

of other kinds, all unknown to us, ſpecimens of which we brought away. We reimbarked about three o'clock with the firſt of the ebb, and Capt. Cook gave to the river the name of the Thames, it having a reſemblance to the river of that name in England. It is not ſo deep, but it is as broad as the Thames is at Greenwich, and the tide of flood is as ſtrong. On the evening of the 21ſt we reached the ſhip, all extremely tired, but happy at being on board.

On the 22d, early in the morning, we made ſail, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. The captain and Dr. Solander went on ſhore to the weſt, but made no obſervations worth relating. After theſe gentlemen departed, the ſhip was ſurrounded with canoes, which kept Mr. Banks on board, that he might trade with the Indians, who bartered their arms and cloaths for paper, taking no unfair advantages. But though they were in general honeſt in their dealings, one of them took a fancy to a half minute glaſs, and being detected in ſecreting the ſame, it was reſolved to give him a ſmatch of the cat-o'nine-tails. The Indians interfered to ſtop the current of juſtice; but being oppoſed they got their arms from their canoes, and ſome of the people in them attempted to get on board. Mr. Banks and Tupia now coming upon deck, the Indians applied to Tupia, who informed them of the nature of the offender's intended puniſhment, and that he had no influence over Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer. They appeared pacified, and the criminal received not only a dozen, but afterwards a good drubbing from an old man, who was thought to be his father. The canoes immediately went off, the Indians ſaying, they ſhould be afraid to return again on board. Tupia, however, brought them back, but they ſeemed to have loſt that confidence which they before repoſed in us. Their ſtay was ſhort, and after their departure we ſaw them not again, though they had promiſed to return with ſome fiſh.

On the 23d, the weather ſtill continuing unfavourable, and the wind contrary, we kept plying down the river,

river, anchoring between the tides; and at the north weſt extremity of the Thames, we paſſed a point of land which the captain called Point Rodney; and another, at the north eaſt extremity, when we entered the bay, he named Cape Colville, in honour of Lord Colville. Not being able to approach land, we had but a diſtant view of the main for a courſe of near thirty miles. Under the name of the river Thames, the captain comprehended the whole bay. Cape Colville is to be diſtinguiſhed by a high rock, and lies in 36 deg. 26 min. of ſouth latitude, and 194 deg. 27 min. weſt longitude. The Thames runs ſouth by eaſt from the ſouthern point of the cape. In ſome parts it is three leagues over, for about fourteen leagues, after which it becomes narrow. In ſome parts of the bay the water is 26 fathoms deep; the depth diminiſhes gradually, and in general the anchorage is good. To ſome iſlands that ſhelter it from the ſea Captain Cook gave the name of Barrier Iſlands; they ſtretch north-weſt and ſouth-eaſt ten leagues. The country ſeemed to be thinly inhabited; the natives are well made, ſtrong, and active; their bodies are painted with red ocre, and their canoes, which are well conſtructed, were ornamented with carved work.

On the 24th, we continued ſteering along the ſhore between the iſlands and the main; and in the evening anchored in an open bay, in about fourteen fathom water. Here we caught a large number of fiſh of the ſcienne, or bream kind, enough to ſupply the whole ſhip's company with proviſion for two days. From our ſucceſs Capt. Cook named this place Bream Bay, and the extreme points at the north end of the bay he called Bream Head. Several pointed rocks ſtand in a range upon the top of it, and ſome ſmall iſlands which lie before it were called the Hen and Chickens. It is ſituated in latitude 35 deg. 46 min. ſeventeen leagues north-weſt of Cape Colville. There is an extent of land, of about thirty miles, between Point Rodney and Bream Head, woody and low. No inhabitants were viſible; but from the fires perceived at night, we concluded it was inhabited.

On the 25th, early in the morning, we left the bay, and continued our courſe ſlowly to the northward; at noon our latitude was 36 deg. 36 min. ſouth, and we ſaw ſome iſlands which we named the Poor Knights, at north-eaſt by north, diſtant three leagues; the northermoſt land in ſight bore N. N. W. we were now at the diſtance of two miles from the ſhore, and had twenty-ſix fathom water. Upon the iſlands were a few towns that appeared fortified, and the land round them ſeemed well inhabited.

On the 26th, towards night, ſeven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men. Some of the Indians came on board, and let us know, that they had an account of our arrival. Theſe were followed by two larger canoes, adorned with carving. The Indians, after having held a conference, came a-long ſide of the veſſel. They were armed with various weapons, and ſeemed to be of the higher order. Their patoo-patoos were made of ſtone and whale-bone, ornamented with dog's hair, and were held in high eſtimation. Their complexion was darker than that of thoſe to the ſouth, and their faces were ſtained with amoco. They were given to pilfering, of which one of them gave an inſtance pretending to barter a piece of talc, wrought into the ſhape of an axe, for a piece of cloth; nor was he diſpoſed to fulfil his agreement, till we compelled him to do it, by firing a muſquet over his head, which brought him back to the ſhip, and he returned the cloth. At three in the afternoon we paſſed a remarkable high point of land, bearing weſt, and it was called Cape Brett, in honour of Sir Piercy Brett. At the point of this cape is a round high hillock, and north-eaſt by north, diſtant about a mile, is a curious arched rock, like that which has been already deſcribed. This cape, or at leaſt part of it, is called by the natives Motugogo, and lies in 35 deg. 10 min. 30 ſec. ſouth latitude, and in 185 deg. 23 min. weſt longitude. To the ſouth-weſt by weſt is a bay, in which is many ſmall iſlands, and the point at the north-weſt entrance the captain named Point Pococke. There are many villages on the main as well as on the iſlands, which appeared

well inhabited, and ſeveral canoes filled with Indians made to the ſhip, and in the courſe of bartering ſhewed the ſame inclination to defraud as their neighbours. Theſe Indians were ſtrong and well proportioned; their hair black, and tied up in a bunch ſtuck with feathers: their chiefs had garments made of fine cloth, decorated with dog's ſkin; and they were tataowed like thoſe who had laſt appeared.

On the 27th, at eight in the morning, we found ourſelves within a mile of many ſmall iſlands, laying cloſe under the main, at the diſtance of twenty-two miles from Cape Brett. Here we lay about two hours, during which time ſeveral canoes came off from the iſlands, which we called Cavalles, the name of ſome fiſh which we purchaſed of the Indians. Theſe people were very inſolent, uſing many frantic geſtures, and pelting us with ſtones. Nor did they give over their inſults, till ſome ſmall ſhot hit one who had a ſtone in his hand. A general terror was now ſpread among them, and they all made a very precipitate retreat. For ſeveral days the wind was ſo very unfavourable, that the veſſel rather loſt than gained ground.

On the 29th, having weathered Cape Brett, we bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where we anchored on the ſouth-weſt ſide of ſeveral iſlands, and ſuddenly came into four fathoms and a half water. Upon ſounding, we found we had got upon a bank, and accordingly weighed and dropped over it, and anchored again in ten fathoms and a half, after which we were ſurrounded by thirty-three large canoes, containing near three hundred Indians all armed. Some of them were admitted on board, and Captain Cook gave a piece of broad cloth to one of the chiefs, and ſome ſmall preſents to the other. They traded peaceably for ſome time, being terrified at the fire-arms, with the effects of which they were not unacquainted; but whilſt the captain was at dinner, on a ſignal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ſhip, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a muſquet was now fired over them, but it produced no effect; ſmall ſhot was then fired at them, but it did not reach them. A

muſquet

muſquet loaded with ball, was therefore ordered to be fired, and Otegoowgoow (ſon of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh by it, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. To complete their confuſion, a round ſhot was fired, which reached the ſhore, and as ſoon as they landed, they ran in ſearch of it. If theſe Indians had been under any kind of military diſcipline, they might have proved a much more formidable enemy; but acting thus, without any plan or regulation, they only expoſed themſelves to the annoyance of the fire-arms, whilſt they could not poſſibly ſucceed in any of their deſigns. The Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, landed upon the iſland, and the Indians in the canoes ſoon after came on ſhore. The gentlemen were in a ſmall cove, and were preſently ſurrounded by near 400 armed Indians; but the captain not ſuſpecting any hoſtile deſign on the part of the natives, remained peaceably diſpoſed. The gentlemen, marching towards them, drew a line, intimating that they were not to paſs it: they did not infringe upon this boundary for ſome time; but at length, they ſang the ſong of defiance, and began to dance, whilſt a party attempted to draw the Endeavour's boat on ſhore; theſe ſignals for an attack being immediately followed by the Indians breaking in upon the line, the gentlemen judged it time to defend themſelves, and accordingly the captain fired his muſquet, loaded with ſmall ſhot, which was ſeconded by Mr. Banks's diſcharging his piece, and two of the men followed his example. This threw the Indians into confuſion, and they retreated, but were rallied again by one of the chiefs, who ſhouted and waved his patoo-patoo. The Doctor now pointed his muſquet at this hero, and hit him: this ſtopped his career, and he took to flight with the other Indians. They retired to an eminence in a collected body, and ſeemed dubious whether they ſhould return to the charge. They were now at too great a diſtance for a ball to reach them, but theſe operations being obſerved from the ſhip, ſhe brought her broadſide to bear, and by firing over them, ſoon diſperſed them. The Indians had in their ſkirmiſh two of their

people wounded, but none killed: peace being thus reſtored, the gentlemen began to gather celery and other herbs, but ſuſpecting that ſome of the natives were lurking about with evil deſigns, they repaired to a cave, which was at a ſmall diſtance. Here they found the chief, who had that day received a preſent from the captain; he came forth with his wife and brother, and ſolicited their clemency. It appeared, that one of the wounded Indians was a brother of this chief, who was under great anxiety leſt the wound ſhould prove mortal, but his grief was in a great degree alleviated, when he was made acquainted with the different effects of ſmall ſhot and ball; he was at the ſame time aſſured, that upon any farther hoſtilities being committed, ball would be uſed. This interview terminated very cordially, after ſome trifling preſents were made to the chief and his companions. The prudence of the gentlemen cannot be much commended: for had theſe 400 Indians bodly ruſhed in upon them at once with their weapons, the muſquetry could have done very little execution; but ſuppoſing twenty or thirty of the Indians had been wounded, as it does not appear their pieces were loaded with ball, but only ſmall ſhot, there would have remained a ſufficent number to have maſſacred them, as it appears they do not give any quarter, and none could have been expected upon this occaſion. It is true, when the ſhip brought her broadſide to bear, ſhe might have made great havock amongſt the Indians; but this would have been too late to ſave the party on ſhore.—Being in their boats, the Engliſh rowed to another part of the ſame iſland, when landing and gaining an eminence, they had a very agreeable and romantic view of a great number of ſmall iſlands, well inhabited and cultivated. The inhabitants of an adjacent town approached unarmed, and teſtified great humility and ſubmiſſion. Some of the party on ſhore who had been very violent for having the Indians puniſhed for their fraudulent conduct, were now guilty of treſpaſſes equally reprehenſible, having forced into ſome of the plantations, and dug up potatoes. The captain, upon this occaſion ſhewed ſtrict juſtice in puniſhing each of the

offenders

offenders with twelve laſhes: one of them being very refractory upon this occaſion, and complaining of the hardſhip, thinking an Engliſhman had a right to plunder an Indian with impunity, received ſix additional laſhes for his reward.

On the 30th, it being a dead calm, two boats were ſent to ſound the harbour; when many canoes came up and traded with great probity; the gentlemen went again on ſhore and met with a very civil reception from the natives; and this friendly intercourſe continued all the time they remained in the bay, which was ſeveral days. Being upon a viſit to the old chief, he ſhewed them the inſtruments uſed in tataowing, which were very like thoſe employed at Otaheite upon the like occaſion. They ſaw the man who had been wounded by the ball, when the attempt was made to carry off the ſhip's buoy; and though it had gone through the fleſhy part of his arm, it did not ſeem to give him the leaſt pain or uneaſineſs.

On Tueſday the 5th of December in the morning, we weighed anchor, but were ſoon becalmed, and a ſtrong current ſetting towards the ſhore, we were driven in with ſuch rapidity, that we expected every moment to be run upon the breakers, which appeared above water not more than a cable's length diſtance, and we were ſo near the land, that Tupia, who was totally ignorant of the danger, held a converſation with the Indians, who were ſtanding on the beach. We were happily relieved however from this alarming ſituation by a freſh breeze ſuddingly ſpringing up from the ſhore. The bay which we had left was called the Bay of Iſlands, on account of the numerous iſlands it contains; we caught but few fiſh while we lay there, but procured great plenty from the natives, who were extremely expert in fiſhing, and diſplayed great ingenuity in the form of their nets, which were made of a kind of graſs; they were two or three hundred fathoms in length, and remarkably ſtrong, and they have them in ſuch plenty that it is ſcarcely poſſible to go a hundred yards without meeting with numbers lying in heaps. Theſe people did not appear to be under the govern-

ment

ment of any particular chief or ſovereign, and they ſeemed to live in a perfect ſtate of friendſhip, notwithſtanding their villages were fortified. According to their obſervations upon the tides, the flood comes from the ſouth, and there is a current from the weſt.

On the 7th of December, being Thurſday, ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon were made, whereby we found our latitude to be 185 deg. 36 min. weſt. In the afternoon we were cloſe under the Cavalles. Several canoes put off and followed the Endeavour, but a light breeze ſpringing up, we did not wait for them. The next morning, being the 8th, at ten o'clock we tacked and ſtood in for the ſhore, from which we were diſtant nearly ſix leagues. By day-light on the 9th we were in with the land, about ſeven leagues to the weſtward of the Cavalles; and ſoon after came to a deep bay, which was named Doubtleſs Bay. The entrance thereto is formed by two points, diſtant from each other five miles, and which lie weſt north-weſt and eaſt ſouth-eaſt. The wind preventing us putting in here, we ſteered for the weſtermoſt land in ſight, and before we got the length of it, we were becalmed. During the calm we were viſited by ſeveral canoes; but the Indians having heard of our guns, were afraid to come on board; however we bought ſome of their fiſh, and learned from them, by the aſſiſtance of Tupia, that we were about two days ſail from a place called Moore Whennua, where the land changed its ſhape, and turning to the ſouth extended no more weſtward. This place was concluded to be the land diſcovered by Taſman, which he called Cape Maria Van Diemen. They alſo informed us, that to the north-north-weſt there was an extenſive country diſcovered by their anceſtors, which they named Ulimaroa, where the inhabitants lived upon hogs, called in their language Booah, the very name given them, by thoſe who inhabited the South-ſea Iſlands.

On Sunday the 10th, a breeze ſpringing up, we ſtood off to the north, and found by obſervation our latitude to be 34 deg. 44 min. ſouth. On the 11th, early in the morning the land, with which we ſtood in, appeared

low

low and barren, but not deſtitute of inhabitants. It forms a peninſula, which the captain called Knuckle Point, and the bay that lies contiguous thereto he named Sandy Bay. In the middle of this is a high mountain, which we called Mount Camel, on account of its reſemblance to that animal. We ſaw one village on the weſt ſide of this mount, and another on the eaſt ſide. Several canoes put off but could not reach the ſhip, which tacked, and ſtood to the northward, till the afternoon of the 12th, when ſhe ſtood to the north-eaſt. Towards night we were brought under double reefed topſails; and in the morning it was ſo tempeſtuous as to ſplit the main topſail and the fore mizen-top ſails. Early in the morning of the 14th we ſaw land to the ſouthward, at the diſtance of eight or nine leagues; and on the 15th we tacked and ſtood to the weſtward. On the 16th we diſcovered land from the maſt head, bearing ſouth-ſouth-weſt. On Sunday the 17th we tacked in thirty five fathom, and found we had not gained one inch to windward the laſt twenty-four hours. We ſaw a point of land, the northern extremity of New Zealand, which Capt. Cook named North Cape. It lies in latitude 34 deg. 22 min. ſouth, and in 185 deg. 55 min. weſt longitude; we continued ſtanding off and on till the 23d, when about ſeven o'clock we diſcovered land bearing ſouth half eaſt.

On the 24th we ſaw the ſame land ſouth-eaſt by ſouth four leagues diſtant, which we judged to be the Iſlands of the Three Kings. The chief of theſe is in latitude 34 deg. 12 min. ſouth, and 187 deg. 48 min. weſt longitude, and diſtant about 14 or 15 leagues from North Cape. Mr. Banks went out in the long-boat and ſhot ſome birds that nearly reſembled geeſe, and they were very good eating. On Chriſtmas-day, December the 25th, we tacked, and ſtood to the ſouthward. On the 26th we had no land in ſight, and were twenty leagues to the weſtward of North Cape. At mid-night we tacked and ſtood to the northward. On the 27th it blew a ſtorm from the eaſt, accompanied with heavy ſhowers of rain, which compelled us to bring the ſhip to, under her mainſail. The gale continued till Thurſ-

day the 28th, when it fell about two o'clock in the morning; but at eight encreaſed to a hurricane, with a prodigious ſea. At noon the gale ſomewhat abated, but we had ſtill heavy ſqualls. On the 29th in the evening, we wore and ſtood to the north-weſt. On Saturday the 30th, we ſaw land bearing north-eaſt, which we concluded to be Maria van Diemen; and it correſponded with the account we had received of it from the Indians. We wore at mid-night, and ſtood to the ſouth-eaſt. On the 31ſt we tacked at ſeven in the evening, and ſtood to the weſtward. We were now diſtant from the neareſt land about three leagues, and had ſomewhat more than forty fathom water.

CHAP. VII.

The Endeavour continues her Voyage, January the 1ſt 1770, round North Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound—That part of the Coaſt deſcribed—Tranſactions in the Sound—She ſails between two Iſlands, and returns to Cape Turnagain—A ſhocking Cuſtom of the Inhabitants—A Viſit to a Hippah, and other remarkable Particulars—The Circum-navigation of this Country completed—The Coaſt and Admiralty Bay deſcribed—The Departure of the Endeavour from New Zealand, and other remarkable Particulars—A deſcriptive Account of New Zealand—Its firſt Diſcovery by Taſman—Situation and Productions—An Account of the Inhabitants—Their Dreſs, Ornaments, and Manner of Life—Their canoes, Navigation, Tillage, Weapons, Muſic, Government, Religion, and Language—The Arguments in Favour of a Southern Continent controverted.

A. D. 1770. JAnuary the 1ſt, on Monday at ſix in the morning, being New Year's Day, we tacked, and ſtood to the eaſtward. At noon we ſtood to the weſtward; found our latitude to be 34 deg. 37 min. ſouth; our diſtance from the Three Kings ten or eleven leagues; and from Cape Maria van Diemen about

about four leagues and an half, in fifty-four fathom water. On the third we ſaw land; it was high and flat, trending away to the ſouth-eaſt, beyond the reach of the naked eye. It is remarkable, that at midſummer we met with a violent gale of wind, in latitude 35 ſouth; and that we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the weſtward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues, for at this time it was ſo long ſince we paſſed Cape Brett.

On the morning of the 4th we ſtood along ſhore. The coaſt appeared ſandy, barren, dreary, and inhoſpitable. Steering northward on the 6th we ſaw land again, which we ſuppoſed to be Cape Maria. On the 7th we had light breezes, and were at times becalmed, when we ſaw a ſun-fiſh, ſhort and thick, with two large fins, but ſcarcely any tail, reſembling a ſhark in colour and ſize. We continued ſteering eaſt till the 9th, when we were off a point of land, which Capt. Cook named Woody Head. From the ſouth-weſt we alſo ſaw a ſmall iſland, and called it Gannet Iſland. Another point, remarkably high to the eaſt-north-eaſt, the captain named Albetroſs Point; on the north ſide whereof a bay is formed, promiſing good anchorage. At about two or three leagues diſtance from Albetroſs Point, to the north-eaſt we diſcovered a remarkable high mountain, the peak of which is equal in height to that of Teneriffe. Its ſummit was covered with ſnow, and we gave it the name of mount Egmont, in honour of the earl of that name. It lies is in latitude 39 deg. 16 min. ſouth, and 185 deg. 15 min. weſt longitude. The country round it is exceeding pleaſant, having an agreeable verdure interſected with woods, and the coaſt forms an extenſive cape which Capt. Cook named Cape Egmont. To the north of this are two ſmall iſlands, in the form of a ſugar-loaf. This day being the 13th we had heavy ſhowers of rain, accompanied with thunder and lightening. We continued to ſteer along the ſhore at the diſtance of between two and three leagues, and between ſeven and eight had a tranſient view of Mount Edgcombe, which bore north-weſt diſtant about ten leagues.

On the 14th when ſailing ſouth-eaſt by ſouth, the coaſt ran more ſoutherly, and ſoon after five in the morning we ſaw land, for which we hauled up. At noon the north-weſt extremity bore ſouth 63 weſt; and ſome high land, in appearance an iſland, bore ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, diſtant five leagues. We were now in a bay, and by obſervation in latitude 40 deg. 27 min. ſouth. longitude 184 deg. 39 min. weſt. In the evening at eight o'clock, the land that bore ſouth 63 weſt, now bore north 59 weſt, diſtant ſeven leagues, and appeared like an iſland. Between this land and Cape Egmont lies the bay, on the weſt-ſide of which we were at this time. The land here is high and beautifully variegated with hills and vales. At this place Capt. Cook propoſed to careen the ſhip, and to take in a freſh ſupply of wood and water. Accordingly,

On the 15th at day-break, we ſteered for an inlet, when, it being almoſt a calm, the ſhip was carried by a current, or the tide, within a cable's length of the ſhore; but by the aſſiſtance of the boats ſhe got clear. While effecting this, we ſaw a ſea-lion, anſwering the deſcription given of a male one in Commodore Anſon's voyages. About one o'clock in the afternoon we hauled round the ſouth-weſt point of the iſland, and the inhabitants of a village were immediately upon ſeeing us up in arms. At two we anchored in a very ſafe cove on the north-weſt ſide of the bay, and moored in eleven fathom water, with a ſoft ground. In paſſing the point of the bay we had obſerved an armed centinel on duty, who was twice relieved; and now four canoes came off, for purpoſe, as we imagined, of reconnoitring; for none of the Indians would venture on board, except an old man who ſeemed of elevated rank. His countrymen expoſtulated with him, laid hold of him, and took great pains to prevent his coming aboard, but they could not divert him from his purpoſe. We received him with the utmoſt civility and hoſpitality. Tupia and the old man joined noſes, according to the cuſtom of the country, and having received ſeveral preſents, he retired to his aſſociates, who began to dance and laugh, and then retired to their fortified village. Whether their expreſ-

ſions

ſions of joy were tokens of enmity or friendſhip we could not determine, having ſeen them dance when inclined both to war and peace. Capt. Cook and other gentlemen now went on ſhore, at the bottom of the cove, where they met with plenty of wood, and a fine ſtream of excellent water, and on hauling the ſeine were very ſucceſsful, having caught three hundred weight of fiſh in a ſhort time, which was equally diſtributed among the ſhip's company.

On the 16th, at day-break, we were employed in careening the bark, when three canoes came off with a great number of Indians, who brought ſeveral of their women with them, which circumſtance was thought to be a favourable preſage of their peaceable diſpoſition; but they ſoon convinced us of our miſtake, by attempting to ſtop the long boat; upon which Captain Cook had recourſe to the old expedient of firing ſhot over their heads, which intimidated them for the preſent; they ſoon gave freſh proofs of treacherous deſigns; for one of them ſnatched at ſome paper from our market-man, and miſſing it, put himſelf in a threatening attitude; whereupon ſome ſhot was fired, which wounded him in the knee; but Tupia ſtill continued converſing with his companions, making enquiries concerning their traditions reſpecting the antiquities of their country. He alſo aſked them, if they had ever before ſeen a ſhip as large as the Endeavour? to which they replied, that they had not, nor ever heard, that ſuch a veſſel had been on their coaſt, though Taſman certainly touched here, it being only four miles ſouth of Murderer's Bay. In all the coves of this bay we found plenty of cuttle fiſh, breams, barracootas, gurnard, mackarel, dog-fiſh, ſoles, dabs, mullets, drums, ſcorpenas, or rock-fiſh, cole-fiſh, ſhags, chimeras, &c. The inhabitants catch their fiſh in the following manner. Their net is cylindrical, extended by ſeveral hoops at the bottom, and contracted at the top. The fiſh going in to feed upon the bait are caught in great abundance. In this iſland are birds of various kinds, and in great numbers, particularly parrots, wood-pigeons, water hens, hawks, and many different ſinging

birds. An herb, a ſpecies of Philadelphus, was uſed here inſtead of tea, and a plant called Teegoomme, reſembling rug-cloaks, ſerved the natives for garments. The environs of the cove where the Endeavour lay is covered entirely with wood, and the ſupple jacks are ſo numerous, that it is with difficulty that paſſengers can purſue their way; here is a numerous ſand-fly, that is very diſagreeable. The tops of many hills were covered with fern. The air of the country is very moiſt, and has ſome qualities that promote putrefaction, as birds that had been ſhot but a few hours were found with maggots in them. The women who accompanied the men in their canoes, wore a head-dreſs, which we had no where met with before; it was compoſed of black feathers, tied in a bunch on the top of the head, which greatly increaſed its height. The manner of their diſpoſing of their dead is very different to what is practiſed in their ſouthern iſlands, they tie a large ſtone to the body, and throw it into the ſea. We ſaw the body of a woman who had been diſpoſed of this way, but which, by ſome accident had diſengaged itſelf from the ſtone, and was floating upon the water. The captain, Mr. Banks, and the doctor viſited another cove, about two miles from the ſhip. There was a family of Indians who were greatly alarmed at the approach of theſe gentlemen, all running away except one; but upon Tupia's converſing with him, the others returned. They found, by the proviſions of this family, that they were cannibals, here being ſeveral human bones that had been lately dreſſed and picked, and it appeared that a ſhort time before, ſix of their enemies having fallen into their hands, they had killed four and eaten them, and that the other two were drowned in endeavouring to make their eſcape. They made no ſecret of this abominable cuſtom, but anſwered Tupia, who was deſired to aſcertain the fact, with great compoſure, that his conjectures were juſt, that they were the bones of a man, and teſtified by ſigns, that they thought human fleſh delicious food. Upon being aſked, Why they had not eaten the body of the woman that had been floating upon the water? they anſwered,

She

She died of a diſorder, and that moreover ſhe was related to them, and they never ate any but their enemies. Upon Mr. Banks ſtill teſtifying ſome doubts concerning the fact, one of the Indians drew the bone of a man's arm through his mouth, and this gentleman had the curioſity to bring it away with him. There was a woman in this family whoſe arms and legs were cut in a ſhocking manner, and it appeared ſhe had thus wounded herſelf becauſe her huſband had lately been killed and eaten by the enemy. Some of the Indians brought four ſkulls one day to ſell, which they rated at a very high price. The brains had been taken out, and probably eaten, but the ſkull and hair remained. They ſeemed to have been dried by fire, in order to preſerve them from prutrefaction. The gentlemen likewiſe ſaw the bail of a canoe, which was made of a human ſkull. On the whole their ideas were ſo horrid and brutiſh, that they ſeemed to pride themſelves upon their cruelty and barbarity, and took a particular pleaſure in ſhewing the manner in which they killed their enemies, it being conſidered as very meritorious to be expert at this deſtruction. The method uſed was to knock them down with their patoo-patoos, and then rip up their bellies.

Great numbers of birds uſually begun their melody about two o'clock in the morning, and ſerenaded us till the time of their riſing. This harmony was very agreeable, as the ſhip lay at a convenient diſtance from the ſhore to hear it. Theſe feathered choriſters, like the Engliſh nightingales, never ſing in the day-time.

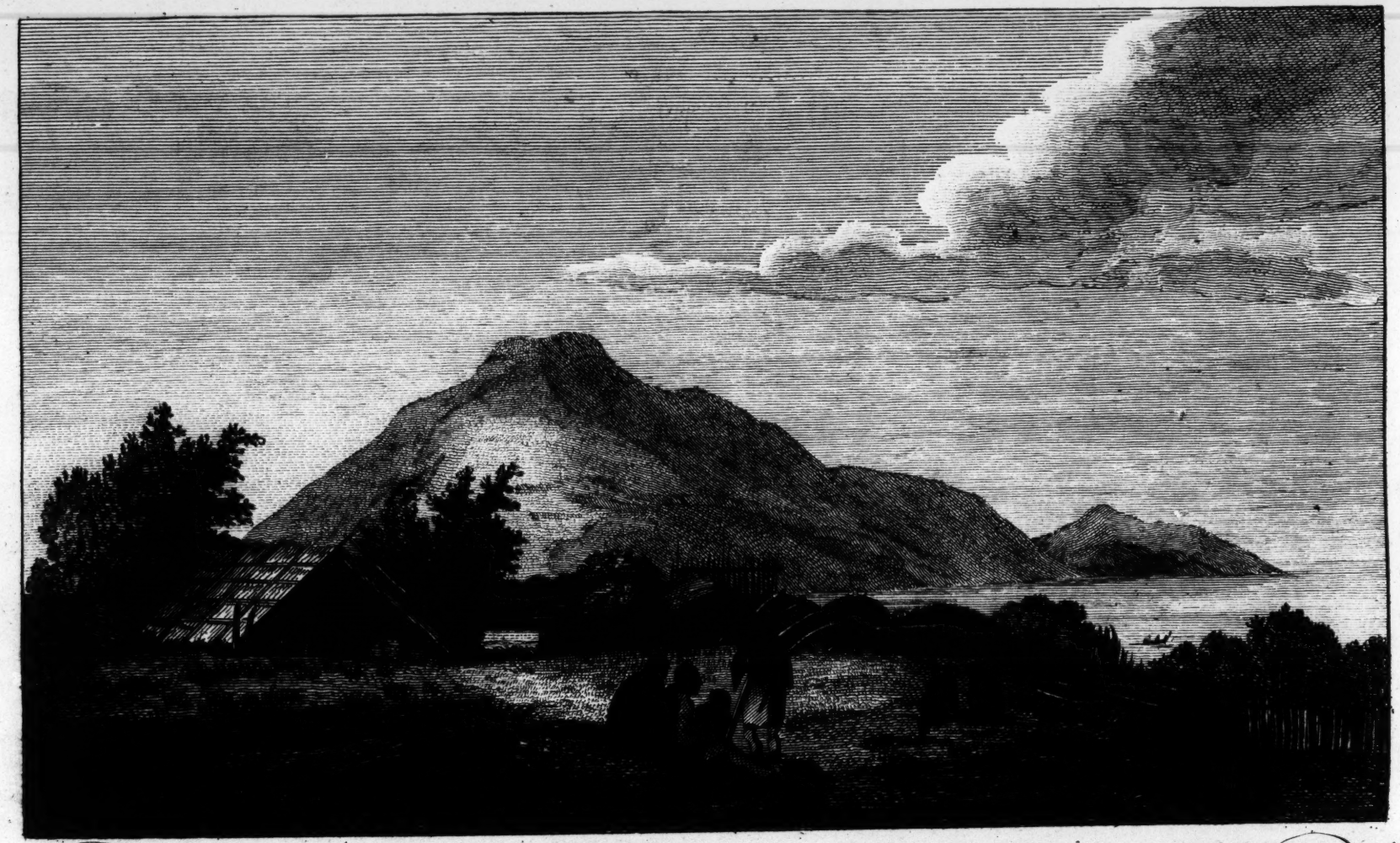
On the 17th, the ſhip was viſited by a canoe from the hippah, or village; it contained, among others, the aged Indian, of ſuperior diſtinction, who had firſt viſited the Engliſh upon their arrival. In a conference which Tupia had with him, he teſtified his apprehenſions, that their enemies would very ſoon viſit them, and repay the compliment, for killing and eating the four men. On the 18th we received no viſit from the Indians; but going out in the pinnace to inſpect the bay, we ſaw a ſingle man in a canoe fiſhing, in the manner already deſcribed. It was remarkable, that

this

this man did not pay the leaſt attention to the people in the pinnace, but continued to purſue his employment even when we came along-ſide of him, without once looking at us. Some of the Endeavour's people being on ſhore, found three human hip bones, cloſe to an oven; theſe were brought on board, as well as the hair of a man's head, which was found in a tree. The next day a forge was ſet up to repair the iron-work; and ſome Indians viſited the ſhip with plenty of fiſh which they bartered very fairly for nails.

On the 20th, in the morning, Mr. Banks purchaſed of the old Indian a man's head, which he ſeemed very unwilling to part with; the ſkull had been fractured by a blow, and the brains were extracted, and like the others, it was preſerved from putrefaction. From the care with which they kept theſe ſkulls, and the reluctance with which they bartered any, it was imagined they were conſidered as trophies of war, and teſtimonials of their valour. In this day's excurſion, we did not meet with a ſingle native; the ground on every ſide was quite uncultivated; but we diſcovered a very good harbour. The ſucceeding day the ſhip's company were allowed to go on ſhore for their amuſement, and the gentlemen employed themſelves in fiſhing, in which they were very ſucceſsful Some of the company in their excurſion met with fortifications that had not the advantage of an elevated ſituation, but were ſurrounded by two or three wide ditches, with a draw-bridge, ſuch as, though ſimple in its ſtructure, was capable of anſwering every purpoſe againſt the arms of the natives. Within theſe ditches is a fence, made with ſtakes, fixed in the earth. A deciſive conqueſt or victory over the beſieged, occaſions an entire depopulation of that diſtrict, as the vanquiſhed, not only thoſe who are killed, but the priſoners likewiſe are devoured by the victors.

The 22d was employed by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in collecting of plants, whilſt Capt. Cook made ſome obſervations on the main land on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the inlet, which conſiſted of a chain of high hills, and formed part of the ſouth-weſt ſide of the



The INSIDE *of a* HIPPAH, *in* NEW ZEALAND.

the ſtreight; the oppoſite ſide extended far to the eaſt. He alſo diſcovered a village, and many houſes that had been deſerted, and another village that appeared to be inhabited. There were many ſmall iſlands round the coaſt, that ſeemed intirely barren, and what few inhabitants were upon them lived principally upon fiſh. On the 24th, we viſited a hippah, which was ſituated on a very high rock, hollow underneath, forming a fine natural arch, one ſide of which joined to the land, and the other roſe out of the ſea. The inhabitants received us with great civility, and very readily ſhewed us every thing that was curious. This hippah was partly ſurrounded with paliſadoes, and it had a fighting ſtage, like that already deſcribed. Here we met with a croſs reſembling a crucifix, which was erected as a monument for a deceaſed perſon; but could not learn how his body was diſpoſed of. From a converſation that Tupia had with theſe people, a diſcovery was made that an officer being in a boat near this village, and ſome canoes coming off, made him imagine they had hoſtile deſigns, and he fired upon them with ball, which made them retire with much precipitation, but they could not effect their retreat, before one of them was wounded. What made this raſh action the more to be lamented was, that the Indians gave afterwards every poſſible aſſurance that their intentions upon this occaſion were entirely friendly.

On the 25th, the Captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on ſhore to ſhoot, when they met with a numerous family, who were among the creeks catching fiſh: they behaved very civil, and received ſome trifling preſents from the gentlemen, who were loaded by way of return with the kiſſes and embraces of both ſexes, young and old. The next day, being the 26th, they made another excurſion in the boat, in order to take a view of the ſtreight, that paſſes between the eaſtern and weſtern ſeas. To this end they attained the ſummit of a hill, but it being hazy in the horiſon, they could ſee but to a ſmall diſtance to the eaſt; however, it was reſolved to explore the paſſage in the ſhip when they ſhould put to ſea. Before their departure

from

from this hill, they erected a pyramid with ſtones, and left ſome muſket balls, ſmall ſhot and beads, that were likely to ſtand the teſt of time, and would be memorials, that this place had been viſited by Europeans. On our return, having deſcended the hill, we made a hearty meal of the ſhaggs and fiſh, procured by our guns and lines; and which were dreſſed by the boat's crew in the place we had appointed. Here we were reſpectfully received by another Indian family, who added to their civilities ſtrong expreſſions of kindneſs and pleaſure. They ſhewed us where to get water, with every other office as was in their power. From hence we viſited another hippah, ſeated on a rock almoſt inacceſſible: it conſiſted of about one hundred houſes and a fighting ſtage. We made the friendly inhabitants ſome ſmall preſents of paper, beads, and nails, and they in return furniſhed us with dried fiſh. On the 27th and 28th our company were engaged in making neceſſary repairs, catching fiſh, and getting the Endeavour ready to continue her voyage.

On Monday the 29th, we were viſited by our old friend Topoa in company with other Indians, from whom we heard, that the man who had received a wound near the hippah, was dead; but this report proved afterwards groundleſs; and we found that Topoa's diſcourſes were not always to be taken literally. During the time the bark was preparing for ſea, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander often went on ſhore; but their walks were circumſcribed by the luxuriant climbers which filled up the ſpace between the trees, and rendered the woods impaſſable. Capt. Cook alſo made ſeveral obſervations on the coaſt to the north-weſt, and perceived many iſlands, forming bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for ſhipping. He alſo erected another pyramid of ſtones, in which he put ſome bullets, &c. as before, with the addition of a piece of our ſilver coin, and placed part of an old pendant on the top, to diſtinguiſh it. Returning to the ſhip he met with many of the natives, of whom he purchaſed a ſmall quantity of fiſh.

On Tueſday, the 30th, ſome of our people, who

were ſent out early in the morning to gather celery, met with about twenty Indians, among whom were five or ſix women, whoſe huſbands had lately been made captives. They ſat down upon the ground together, and cut many parts of their bodies in a moſt ſhocking manner, with ſhells, and ſharp pieces of talc or jaſper, in teſtimony of their exceſſive grief. But what made the horrid ſpectacle more terrible, was, that the male Indians who were with them, paid not the leaſt attention to it, but with the greateſt unconcern imaginable, employed themſelves in repairing their huts. This day the carpenter having prepared two poſts, they were ſet up as memorials, being inſcribed with the date of the year, the month, and the ſhip's name. One of them we erected at the watering place, with the union-flag hoiſted upon the top; and the other in the iſland that lies neareſt the ſea, called by the natives Motuara; and the inhabitants being informed, that thoſe poſts were ſet up to acquaint other adventurers that the Endeavour had touched at this place, they promiſed never to deſtroy them. Capt. Cook then gave ſomething to every one preſent, and to Topoa our old friend, he preſented a ſilver three-pence, dated 1736, and ſome ſpike nails which had the king's broad arrow cut deep upon them. After which he honoured this inlet with the name of Queen Charlotte's Sound; and at the ſame time took poſſeſſion of it in the name and for the uſe of his preſent majeſty. The whole of this day's buſineſs concluded with drinking a bottle of wine to the queen's health. The bottle was given to the old man, who received the preſent with ſtrong ſigns of joy. We muſt not omit here to obſerve, that Topoa being queſtioned concerning a paſſage into the eaſtern-ſea, anſwered, that there was certainly ſuch a paſſage. He alſo ſaid, that the land to the ſouth-weſt of the ſtreight, where we then were, conſiſted of two whennuas or iſlands, named Tovy Poenamoo, which ſignifies "the water of green talc;" which might probably be the name of a place where the Indians got their green talc, or ſtone, of which they make their ornaments and cutting tools. He alſo told us, there was

a third whennua, eaſtward of the ſtreight, called Eaheinomauwee, of conſiderable extent; the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons: he added, that the land on the borders of the ſtreight, contiguous to this inlet, was called Tiera Witte. Having procured this intelligence, and concluded the ceremonies at fixing up the monumental memorial, we returned to the ſhip. The old man attended us in his canoe, and returned home after dinner.

Wedneſday the 31ſt, having taken in our wood and water, we diſpatched one party to make brooms, and another to catch fiſh. Toward the cloſe of the evening we had a ſtrong gale from the north-weſt, with ſuch heavy ſhowers, that our ſweet little warblers on ſhore ſuſpended their wild notes, with which till now they had conſtantly ſerenaded us during the night, affording us a pleaſure not to be expreſſed, and the loſs of which we could not at this time refrain from regretting.

On the 1ſt of February the gale increaſed to a ſtorm, with heavy guſts from the main land, which obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards night they became more moderate, but the rain poured down with impetuoſity, that the brook at our watering place overflowed its banks, and carried away to our loſs ten caſks full of water.

On Saturday the 3d, we went over to the hippah on the eaſt-ſide of Charlotte's Sound, and procured a conſiderable quantity of fiſh. The people here confirmed all that Topoa had told us reſpecting the ſtreight, and the unknown country. At noon when we took leave of them, ſome ſhewed ſigns of ſorrow, others of joy that we were going. When returning to the ſhip ſome of our company made an excurſion along the ſhore northward, to traffic for a further ſupply of fiſh, but without ſucceſs. Sunday the 4th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were engaged in collecting ſhells, and different kinds of ſeeds.

On the 5th we got under ſail, but the wind ſoon falling, we came again to anchor a little above Motuara. Topoa here paid us a viſit to bid us farewell. Being queſtioned whether he had ever heard, that ſuch a veſ-

ſel



A FAMILY in DUSKY BAY, NEW ZEALAND.

ſel as ours had ever viſited the country, he replied in the negative; but ſaid, there was a tradition of a ſmall veſſel having come from Ulimora, a diſtant country in the north, in which were only four men, who on their landing, were all put to death. The people of the Bay of Iſlands and Tupia had ſome confuſed traditionary notions about Ulimora, but from their accounts we could draw no certain concluſion. This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on ſhore in ſearch of natural curioſities, and by accident met with a very amiable Indian family, among whom was a widow, and a pretty youth about ten years of age. The woman mourned for her huſband, according to the cuſtom of the country, with tears of blood; and the child, by the death of his father, was the proprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. The mother and ſon were ſitting upon matts, the reſt of the family of both ſexes, about ſeventeen in number, ſat round them. They behaved with the utmoſt hoſpitality and courteſy, and endeavoured to prevail with us to ſtay all night; but expecting the ſhip to ſail, we could not accept of their preſſing invitation. This family ſeemed the moſt intelligent of any Indians we had hitherto converſed with, which made us regret our late acquaintance with them; for had we fallen into their company before, we ſhould probably have gained more information from them in one day, than we had been able to acquire during our whole ſtay upon the coaſt.

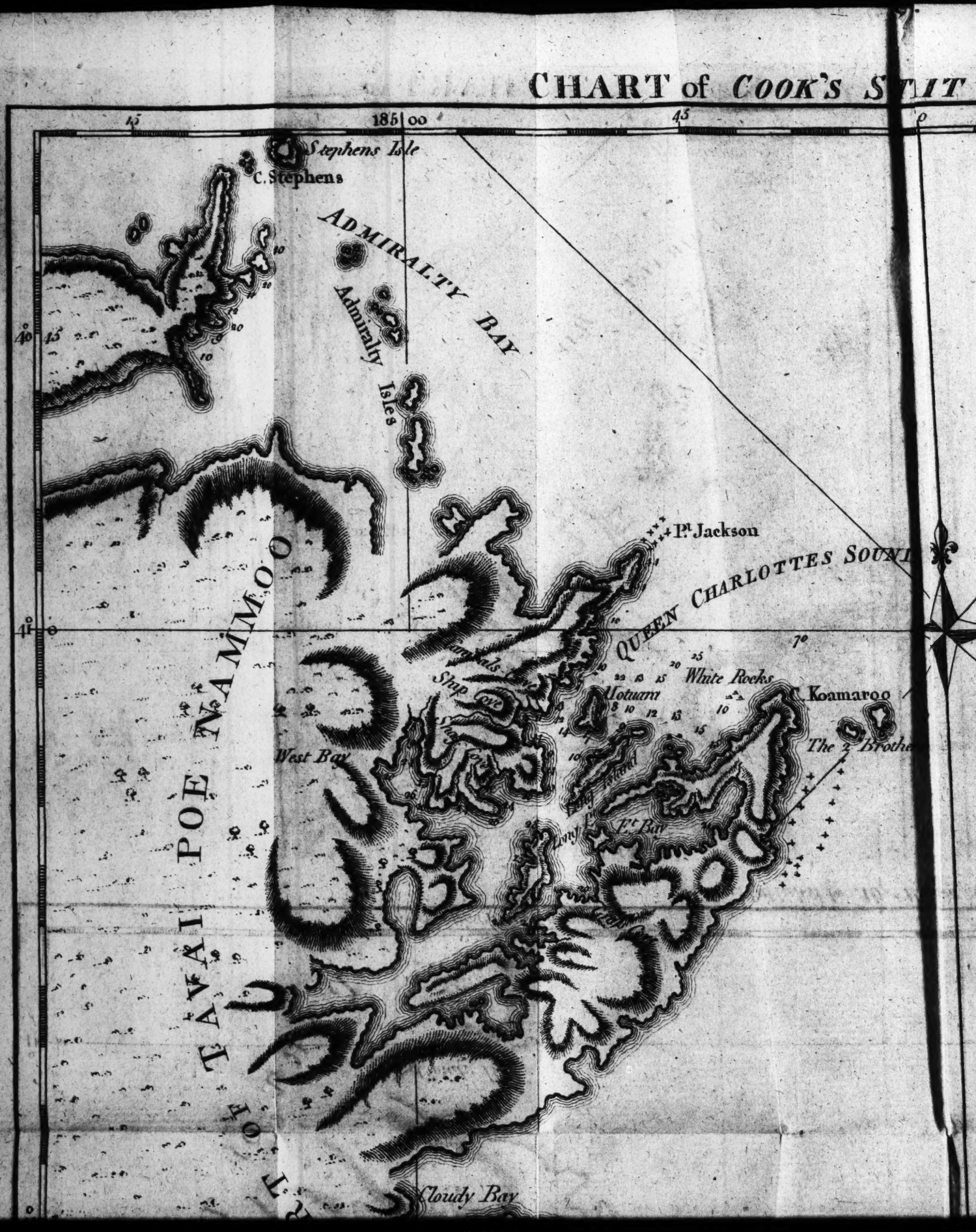
Monday the 6th, in the morning the Endeavour ſailed out of the bay, which, from the ſavage cuſtom of eating human fleſh, we called Cannibal Bay. We bent our courſe to an opening in the eaſt; and when in the mouth of the ſtreight were becalmed in latitude 41° ſouth, and 184 deg. 45 min. weſt longitude. The two points that form the entrance we called Cape Koamaro, and Point Jackſon. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay is called by the Indians Totarranue; the harbour itſelf, named by the captain Ship Cove, is very convenient and ſafe. It is ſituated on the weſt-ſide of the cove, and is the ſouthermoſt of the three coves within the iſland of Motuara, between which

and the iſland of Hamote, or between Motuara or weſtern-ſhore is the entrance. In the laſt of theſe inlets are two ledges of rocks, three fathom under water, which may eaſily be known by the ſea-weed that grows upon them. Attention muſt alſo be paid to the tides, which, when there is little wind, flow about nine or ten o'clock at the full and change of the moon, and riſe and fall about ſeven feet and a half, paſſing through the ſtreight from the ſouth-eaſt. The land about this ſound, which we ſaw at the diſtance of twenty leagues, conſiſts entirely of high hills, and deep valleys, well ſtored with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all purpoſes except maſts, for which it is two hard and heavy. On the ſhore we found plenty of ſhags, and a few other ſpecies of wild fowl, that are very acceptable food to thoſe who have lived long upon ſalt proviſions. The number of inhabitants is not greater than four hundred, who are ſcattered along the coaſt, and upon any appearance of danger retire to their Hippahs or forts, in which ſituation we found them. They are poor, and their canoes without ornaments. The traffic we had with them was wholly for fiſh; but they had ſome knowledge of iron, which the natives of other parts had not. On our arrival they were much pleaſed with our paper; but when they knew it would be ſpoiled by the wet, they would not have it. Engliſh broad-cloth, and red Kerſey they highly eſteemed.

Leaving the ſound we ſtood over to the eaſtward, and were carried by the rapidity of the current very cloſe to one of the two iſlands that lie off Cape Koamaroo, at the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound. At this time we were every moment in danger of being daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks, but after having veered out 150 fathoms of cable, the ſhip was brought up, when the rocks were not more than two cables length from us. Thus we remained, being obliged to wait for the tide's ebbing, which did not take place till after midnight.

On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the morning we weighed anchor, and a freſh breeze with a tide of ebb hurried us through the ſtreight with great ſwiftneſs.

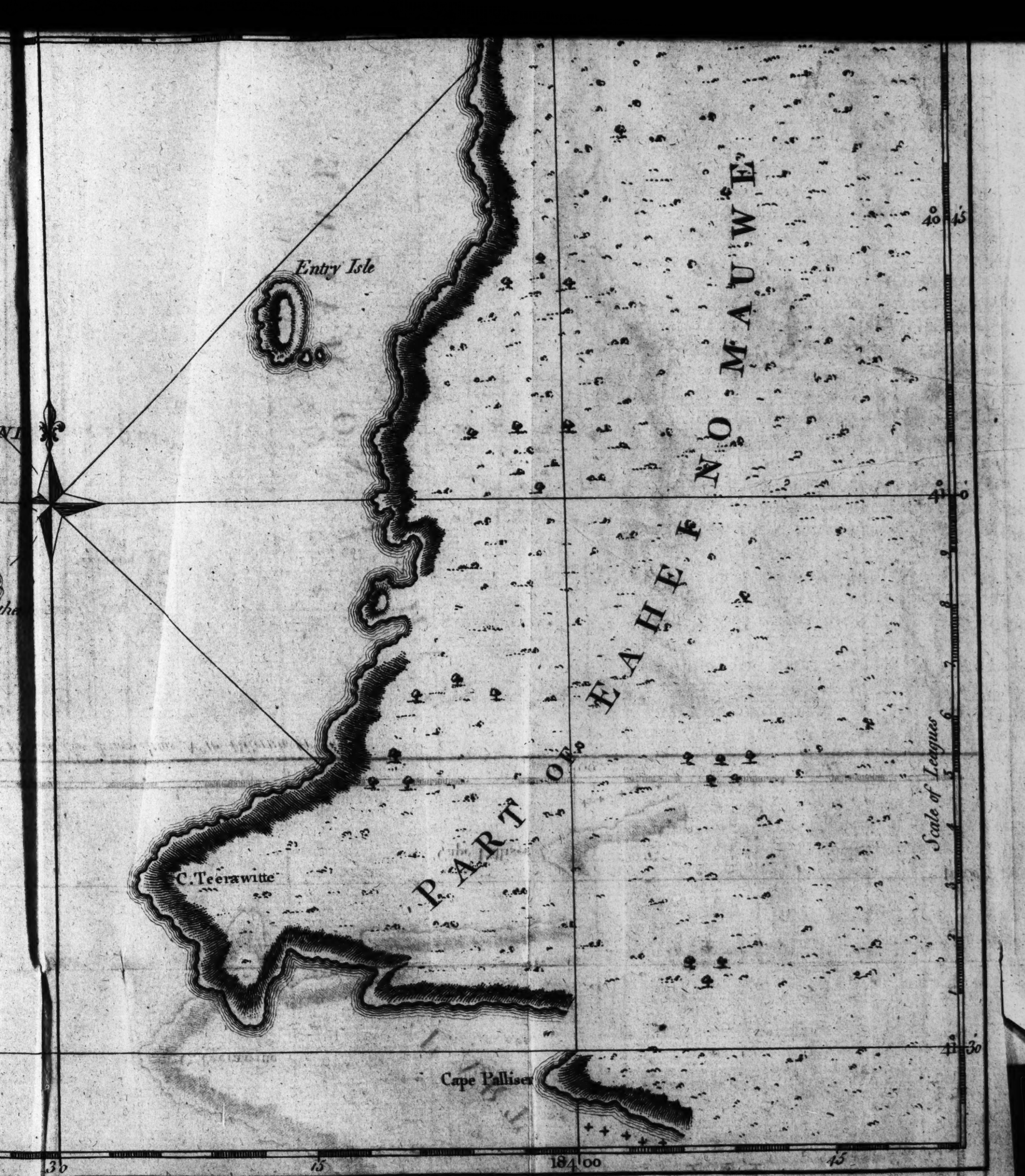
The


CHART of COOK'S STRAIT
185 00
Stephens Isle
C. Stephens
ADMIRALTY BAY
Admiralty Isles
Pt Jackson
QUEEN CHARLOTTES SOUND
TAVAI POE NAMMOO
White Rocks
Motuara
Koamaroo
West Bay
Ship Cove
Long Island
Ft Bay
Cloudy Bay

TIT in NEW ZEALAND.




Stephens Isle
C. Stephens
ADMIRALTY BAY
Admiralty Isles
Pt Jackson
QUEEN CHARLOTTES SOUND
Shag Cove
West Bay
Motuara
White Rocks
Koamaroo
The 2 Brothers
Ft Bay
Cloudy Bay
PART OF TAVAI POE NAMMOO
41° 0
41° 30
185 00 West from Greenwich
London. Published by Alex.r Hogg at th



Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.

The narroweſt part of this ſtraight lies between Cape Tierrawitte and Cape Koamaroo, the diſtance between which we judged to be five leagues. The length of the ſtraight we could not determine. In paſſing it, we think it ſafeſt to keep to the north-eaſt ſhore, for on this ſide we ſaw nothing to fear. Cape Tierrawitte lies in 41 deg. 44 min. of ſouth latitude, and 183 deg. 45 min. of weſt longitude. And Cape Koamaroo is 41 deg. 34 min. ſouth, and in 113 deg. 30 min. weſt longitude. About nine leagues from the former cape, and under the ſame ſhore north, is a high iſland, which the captain called Entry Iſle. We were now facing a deep bay which we called Cloudy Bay. Some of our gentlemen doubting whether Eahienomauwee was an iſland, we ſteered ſouth-eaſt, in order to clear up this doubt; but the wind ſhifting we ſtood eaſtward, and ſteered north-eaſt by eaſt all night. The next morning they were off Cape Palliſer, and found that the land ſtretched away to the north-eaſtward of Cape Turnagain. In the afternoon, three canoes came off, having ſeveral Indians on board. Theſe made a good appearance, and were ornamented like thoſe on the northern coaſt. There was no difficulty in perſuading them to come on board, where they demeaned themſelves very civilly, and a mutual exchange of preſents took place. As they aſked for nails it was concluded that they heard of the Engliſh, by means of the inhabitants of ſome of the other places at which we had touched. Their dreſs reſembled that of the natives of Hudſon's Bay. One old man was tataowed in a very particular manner, he had likewiſe a red ſtreak acroſs his noſe; and his hair and beard were remarkable for their whiteneſs. The upper garment that he wore was made of flax, and had a wrought border: under this was a ſort of petticoat of a cloth called Aooree Waow. Teeth aud green ſtones decorated his ears: he ſpoke in a ſoft and low key, and it was concluded, from his deportment, that he was a perſon of diſtinguiſhed rank among his countrymen, and theſe people withdrew greatly ſatisfied with the preſents that they had received.

On the 9th, in the morning, we diſcovered that Eahienomauwee

Eahienomauwee was really an iſland. About ſixty Indians in four double canoes came within a ſtone's throw of the ſhip, on the 14th of February. As they ſurveyed her with ſurprize, Tupia endeavoured to perſuade them to come nearer, but this they could not be prevailed on to do. On this account the iſland was denominated the Iſland of Lookers-on. Five leagues diſtant from the coaſt of Tovy Poenamoo, we ſaw an iſland which was called after Mr. Banks's name; a few Indians appeared on it, and in one place they diſcovered a ſmoke, ſo that it was plain the place was inhabited. Mr. Banks going out in his boat for the purpoſe of ſhooting, killed ſome of the Port Egmont hens, which were like thoſe found on the iſle of Farc, and the firſt that they had ſeen upon this coaſt. A point of land was obſerved on Sunday the 25th, in latitude 45 deg. 35 min. ſouth, to which Capt. Cook gave the name of Cape Saunders, in honour of Admiral Saunders. We kept off from the ſhore, which appeared to be interſperſed with trees, and covered with green hills, but no inhabitants were diſcovered.

On the 4th of March, ſeveral whales and ſeals were ſeen; and on the 9th we ſaw a ledge of rocks, and ſoon after another ledge at three leagues diſtance from the ſhore, which we paſſed in the night to the northward, and at day-break obſerved the others under our bows, which was a fortunate eſcape; and in conſideration of their having been ſo nearly caught among theſe, they were denominated the Traps. We called the ſouthernmoſt point of land, the South Cape, and found it to be the ſouthern extremity of the whole coaſt. Proceeding northward, the next day we fell in with a barren rock about fifteen miles from the main land, which was very high, and appeared to be about a mile in circumference; and this was named Solander's Iſland.

On the 13th, we diſcovered a bay containing ſeveral iſlands, where we concluded if there was depth of water, ſhipping might find ſhelter from all winds. Duſky Bay was the appellation given to it by the captain, and five high peaked rocks, for which it was remarkable, cauſed

cauſed the point to be called Five Fingers. The weſtermoſt point of land upon the whole coaſt, to the ſouthward of Duſky Bay, we called Weſt Cape. The next day we paſſed a ſmall narrow opening, where there ſeemed to be a good harbour formed by an iſland, the land behind which exhibited a proſpect of mountains covered with ſnow.

On the 16th, we paſſed a point which conſiſted of high red cliffs, and received the name of Caſcade Point, on account of ſeveral ſmall ſtreams which fell down it. In the morning of the 18th the valleys were obſerved covered with ſnow as well as the mountains, which ſeemed to have fallen the night before, when we had rain at ſea. Thus we paſſed the whole north-weſt coaſt of Tovy Poenamoo, which had nothing worth our obſervation but a ridge of naked and barren rocks covered with ſnow, ſome of which we conjectured might probably have remained there ever ſince the creation. As far as the eye could reach, the proſpects were in general wild, craggy, and deſolate; ſcarcely any thing but rocks to be ſeen, the moſt of which Dr. Hawkeſworth deſcribes as having nothing but a kind of hollows, and dreadful fiſſures inſtead of valleys between them. From this uncomfortable country we determined to depart, having ſailed round the whole country by the 27th of this month. Capt. Cook therefore went on ſhore in the long-boat, and having found a place proper for mooring the ſhip, and a good watering place, the crew began to fill their caſks, while the carpenter was employed in cutting wood. The captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went in the pinnace to examine the bay, and the neighbouring country. Landing there they found ſeveral plants of a ſpecies which was before unknown to them; no inhabitants appeared; but they ſaw ſeveral huts which ſeemed to have been deſerted a long time before: all the wood and water being taken on board, the veſſel was ready to ſail by the time that they returned in the evening, and it was now reſolved at a council of war to ſteer for the coaſt of New Holland, in the courſe of their return by the way of the Eaſt-Indies.

On the 31ſt, we took our departure from an eaſtern point of land, to which we gave the name of Cape Farewel, calling the bay out of which we ſailed, Admiralty Bay; and two capes, Cape Stephens, and Cape Jackſon, (the names of the two ſecretaries of the Admiralty board.) We called a bay between the iſland and Cape Farewell, Blind Bay, which was ſuppoſed to have been the ſame that was called Murderers Bay, by Taſman, the firſt diſcoverer of New Zealand, but though he named it Staten Iſland, wiſhing to take poſſeſſion of it for the States General, yet being attacked here by the Indians he never went on ſhore to effect his purpoſe. This coaſt, now more accurately examined, is diſcovered to conſiſt of two iſlands, which were before thought to be a part of the ſouthern continent ſo much ſought after.

They are ſituated between the 34th and 48th deg. of ſouth latitude, and between 181 deg. and 194 deg. weſt longitude. The northern iſland is called Eahienomauwee, and the ſouthern is named Tovy Poenamoo by the natives. The former, though mountainous in ſome places, is ſtored with wood, and in every valley there is a rivulet. The ſoil in thoſe valleys is light, but fertile and well adapted for the plentiful production of all the fruits, plants and corn of Europe. The ſummer, though not hotter, is in general of a more equal temperature than in England; and from the vegetables that were found here it was concluded, that the winters were not ſo ſevere. The only quadrupeds that were diſcovered were dogs and rats, and of the latter very few, but the former the inhabitants (like thoſe of Otaheite) breed for food. There are ſeals and whales on the coaſts, and we once ſaw a ſea-lion. The birds are hawks, owls, quails, and ſome melodious ſong birds. There are ducks, and ſhags of ſeveral ſorts, like thoſe of Europe, and the gannet, which is of the ſame ſort. Albetroſſes, ſheerwaters, penguins, and pintados, alſo viſit the coaſt. The inſects found here are, butterflies, fleſh-flies, beetles, ſand flies, and muſquitos.

Tovy Poenamoo is barren and mountainous, and appeared to be almoſt deſtitute of inhabitants.

The

The ſea that waſhes theſe iſlands abounds with delicate and wholeſome fiſh. Whenever the veſſel came to an anchor, enough were caught with hook and line only, to ſupply the whole ſhip's company; and when we fiſhed with nets, every meſs in the ſhip, where the people were induſtrious, ſalted as much as ſupplied them for ſeveral weeks. There were many ſorts of fiſh here which we had never before ſeen, and which the ſailors named according to their fancies. They were ſold on moderate terms to the crew: among the reſt, fiſh like the ſkate, eels, congers, oyſters, flat-fiſh reſembling ſoles and flounders, cockles and various ſorts of mackarel were found in abundance upon the coaſt.

Here are foreſts abounding with trees, producing large, ſtrait and clean timber. One tree about the ſize of our oak, was diſtinguiſhed by a ſcarlet flower, compoſed of ſeveral fibres, and another which grows in ſwampy ground, very ſtrait and tall, bearing ſmall bunches of berries, and a leaf reſembling that of the yew-tree. About 400 ſpecies of plants were found, all of which are unknown in England, except garden night-ſhade, ſow thiſtle, two or three kinds of fern, and one or two ſorts of graſs. We found wild celery, and a kind of creſſes, in great abundance, on the ſea-ſhore; and of eatable plants raiſed by cultivation, only cocoas, yams, and ſweet potatoes. There are plantations of many acres of theſe yams and potatoes. The inhabitants likewiſe cultivate the gourd; and the Chineſe paper mulberry-tree is to be found, but in no abundance.

In New Zealand is only one ſhrub or tree, which produces fruit, which is a kind of berry almoſt taſteleſs; but they have a plant which anſwers all the uſes of hemp and flax. There are two kinds of this plant, the leaves of one of which are yellow, and the other a deep red, and both of them reſemble the leaves of flags. Of theſe leaves they make lines and cordage, and much ſtronger than any thing of the kind in Europe. Theſe leaves they likewiſe ſplit into breadths, and tying the ſlips together, form their fiſhing nets. Their common apparel, by a ſimple proceſs, is made from the leaves, and their finer, by another preparation, is made from

the fibres. This plant is found both in high and low ground, in dry mould and in deep bogs; but as it grows largeſt in the latter, that ſeems to be its proper ſoil.

The natives are as large as the largeſt Europeans. Their complexion is brown, but little more ſo than that of a Spaniard. They are full of fleſh, but not lazy and luxurious; and are ſtout and well ſhaped. The women poſſeſs not that delicacy, which diſtinguiſhes the European ladies; but their voice chiefly diſtinguiſhes them from the men. The men are active in a high degree; their hair is black, and their teeth are white and even. The features of both ſexes are regular; they enjoy perfect health, and live to an advanced age. They appeared to be of a gentle diſpoſition, and treat each other with the utmoſt kindneſs; but they are perpetually at war, every little diſtrict being at enmity with all the reſt. This is owing, moſt probably, to the want of food in ſufficient quantities at certain times. As they have neither black cattle, ſheep, hogs, nor goats; ſo their chief food was fiſh, which being not always to be had, they are in danger of dying through hunger. They have a few dogs; and when no fiſh is to be gotten, they have only vegetables, ſuch as yams and potatoes, to feed on: and if by any accident theſe fail them, their ſituation muſt be deplorable. Notwithſtanding the cuſtom of eating their enemies, the circumſtances and temper of theſe people is in favour of thoſe who might ſettle among them as a colony.

The inhabitants of New Zealand are as modeſt and reſerved in their behaviour and converſation as the moſt polite nations of Europe. The women, indeed, were not dead to the ſofter impreſſions; but their mode of conſent was in their idea as harmleſs as the conſent to marriage with us, and equally binding for the ſtipulated time. If any of the Engliſh addreſſed one of their women, he was informed, that the conſent of her friends muſt be obtained, which uſually followed, on his making a preſent. This done he was obliged to treat his temporary wife as delicately as we do in England. A

gentleman

gentleman who ſailed in the Endeavour, having addreſſed a family of ſome rank, received an anſwer, of which the following is an exact tranſlation. "Any of "theſe young ladies will think themſelves honoured by "your addreſſes, but you muſt firſt make me a preſent; "and you muſt then come and ſleep with us on ſhore, "for day-light muſt by no means be a witneſs of what "paſſes between you."

Theſe Indians anoint their hair with oil melted from the fat of fiſh or birds. The poor people uſe that which is rancid, ſo that they ſmell very diſagreeable; but thoſe of ſuperior rank make uſe of that which is freſh. They wear combs both of bone and wood, which is conſidered as an ornament when ſtuck upright in the hair. The men tie their hair in a bunch on the crown of the head, and adorn it with feathers of birds, which they likewiſe ſometimes place on each ſide of the temples. They commonly wear ſhort beards. The hair of the women ſometimes flows over their ſhoulders, and ſometimes is cut ſhort. Both ſexes, but the men more than the women, mark their bodies with black ſtains, called amoco. In general the women ſtain only the lips, but ſometimes mark other parts with black patches: the men on the contrary put on additional marks from year to year, ſo that thoſe who are very ancient are almoſt covered. Excluſive of the amoco, they mark themſelves with furrows. Thoſe furrows made a hideous appearance, the edges being indented, and the whole quite black. The ornaments of the face are drawn in the ſpiral form with equal elegance and correctneſs, both cheeks being marked exactly alike; while paintings on their bodies reſemble fillagree work, and the foliage in old chaſed ornaments; but no two faces or bodies are painted exactly after the ſame model. The people of New Zealand, frequently left the breech free from theſe marks, which the inhabitants of Otaheite adorned beyond any other. Theſe Indians likewiſe paint their bodies by rubbing them with red ocre, either dry or mixed with oil.

Their dreſs is formed of the leaves of the flag ſplit into ſlips, which are interwoven and made into a kind

of matting, the ends, which are ſeven or eight inches in length, hanging out on the upper ſide. One piece of this matting being tied over the ſhoulders, reaches to the knees: the other piece being wrapped round the waiſt falls almoſt to the ground. Theſe two pieces are faſtened to a ſtring, which by means of a bodkin of bone is paſſed through, and tacks them together. The men wear the lower garment only at particular times.

They have two kinds of cloth beſides the coarſe matting or ſhag above-mentioned; one of which is as coarſe, but beyond all proportion ſtronger than the Engliſh canvas; the other which is formed of the fibres of a plant, drawn into threads which croſs and bind each other, reſembles the matting on which we place our diſhes at table.

They make boarders of different colours to both theſe ſorts of cloth, reſembling girls ſamplers, and finiſhed with great neatneſs and elegance. What they conſider as the moſt ornamental part of their dreſs is the fur of dogs, which they cut into ſtripes, and ſew on different parts of their apparel. As dogs are not plenty, they diſpoſe their ſtripes with œconomy. They have a few dreſſes ornamented with feathers; and one man was ſeen covered wholly with thoſe of the red parrot.

The women never tie their hair on the top of their head, nor adorn it with feathers; and are leſs anxious about dreſs than the men. Their lower garment is bound tight round them, except when they go out fiſhing, and then they are careful that the men ſhall not ſee them. It once happened that ſome of the ſhip's crew ſurpriſed them in this ſituation, when ſome of them hid themſelves among the rocks, and the reſt kept their bodies under water till they had formed a girdle and apron of weeds; and their whole behaviour manifeſted the moſt refined ideas of female modeſty.

The ears of both ſexes were bored, and the holes ſtretched ſo as to admit a man's finger. The ornaments of their ears are feathers, cloth, bones, and ſometimes bits of wood; a great many of them made uſe of the nails which were given them by the Engliſh, for this purpoſe, and the women ſometimes adorned their

their ears with white down of the albetroſs, which they ſpread before and behind the whole in a large bunch. They likewiſe hung to their ears by ſtrings, chiſſels, bodkins, the teeth of dogs, and the teeth and nails of their deceaſed friends. The arms and ancles of the women are adorned with ſhells and bones, or any thing elſe through which they can paſs a ſtring. The men wear a piece of green talc or whalebone, with the reſemblance of a man carved on it, hanging to a ſtring round the neck. We ſaw one man who had the griſtle of his noſe perforated, and a feather paſſed through it, projecting over each cheek.

Theſe people ſhew leſs ingenuity in the ſtructure of their houſes, than in any thing elſe belonging to them; they are from ſixteen to twenty-four feet long, ten or twelve wide, and ſix or eight in height. The frame is of ſlight ſticks of wood, and the walls and roof are made of dry graſs pretty firmly compacted. Some of them are lined with bark of trees, and the ridge of the houſe is formed by a pole which runs from one end to the other. The door is only high enough to admit a perſon crawling on hands and knees, and the roof is ſloping. There is a ſquare hole near the door, ſerving both for window and chimney, near which is the fire place. A plank is placed over the door, adorned with a ſort of carving, and this they conſider as an ornamental piece of furniture. The ſide-walls and roof projecting two or three feet beyond the walls at each end form a ſort of portico where benches are placed to ſit on. The fire is made in the middle of a hollow ſquare in the floor, which is incloſed with wood or ſtone. They ſleep near the walls, where the ground is covered with ſtraw for their beds. Some who can afford it, whoſe families are large, have three or four houſes, incloſed in their court-yard. Their clothes, arms, feathers, ſome ill made tools, and a cheſt, in which all theſe are depoſited, form all the furniture of the inſide of the houſe. Their hammers to beat fern-root, gourds to hold water, and baſkets to contain proviſions, are placed without the houſe. One houſe was found near 40 feet long, 20 wide, and 14 high. Its ſides were

adorned

adorned with carved planks of workmanſhip ſuperior to the reſt; but the building appeared to have been left unfiniſhed. Though the people ſleep warm enough at home, they ſeem to deſpiſe the inclemency of the weather, when they go in ſearch of fiſh or fern roots. Sometimes, indeed, they place a ſmall defence to windward, but frequently ſleep undreſſed with their arms placed round them, without the leaſt ſhelter whatever.

Beſides the fern-root, which ſerves them for bread, they feed on albetroſſes, penguins, and ſome other birds. Whatever they eat is either roaſted or baked, as they have no veſſel in which water can be boiled. We ſaw no plantations of cocoas, potatoes, and yams, to the ſouthward, though there were many in the northern parts. The natives drink no other liquor than water, and enjoy perfect and uninterrupted health. When wounded in battle, the wound heals in a very ſhort time without the application of medicine; and the very old people carry no other marks of decay about them than the loſs of their hair, and teeth, and a failure of their muſcular ſtrength: but enjoy an equal ſhare of health and chearfulneſs with the youngeſt.

The canoes of this country are not unlike the whale-boats of New England, being long and narrow. The larger ſort ſeem to be built for war, and will hold from 30 to 100 men. One of theſe at Tolaga meaſured near 70 feet in length, ſix in width, and four in depth. It was ſharp at the bottom, and conſiſted of three lengths, about two or three inches thick, and tied firmly together with ſtrong plaiting; each ſide was found of one entire plank, about twelve inches broad, and about an inch and a half thick, which was fitted to the bottom part with equal ſtrength and ingenuity. Several thwarts were laid from one ſide to the other, to which they were ſecurely faſtened, in order to ſtrengthen the canoes. Some few of their canoes at Mercury Bay and Opoorage, are all made entirely of one trunk of wood, which is made hollow by fire; but by far the greater part are built after the plan above deſcribed. The ſmaller boats which are uſed chiefly in fiſhing, are adorned at head and ſtern with the figure of a man, the



A WAR CANOE *of* NEW ZEALAND, *with a* View *of* Gable End Foreland.

eyes of which are compoſed of white ſhells: a tongue of enormous ſize is thruſt out of the mouth, and the whole face a picture of the moſt abſolute deformity. The grander canoes, which are intended for war, are ornamented with open work, and covered with fringes of black feathers, which gives the whole an air of perfect elegance; the ſide-boards which are carved in a rude manner, are embelliſhed with tufts of white feathers. Theſe veſſels are rowed with a kind of paddles, between five and ſix feet in length, the blade of which is a long oval, gradually decreaſing till it reaches the handle; and the velocity with which they row with theſe paddles is very ſurpriſing. Their ſails are compoſed of a kind of mat or netting, which is extended between two upright poles, one of which is fixed on each ſide. Two ropes, faſtened to the top of each pole, ſerve inſtead of ſheets. The veſſels are ſteered by two men having ſuch a paddle, and ſitting in the ſtern; but they can only ſail before the wind, in which direction they move with conſiderable ſwiftneſs.

The Indians uſe axes, adzes, and chiſſels, with which laſt they likewiſe bore holes. The chiſſels are made of jaſper, or of the bone of a man's arm; their axes and adzes of a hard black ſtone. They uſe their ſmall jaſper tools till they are blunted, and then throw them away, having no inſtrument to ſharpen them with. The Indians at Tolaga having been preſented with a piece of glaſs, drilled a hole through it, and hung it round the neck. A ſmall bit of jaſper was thought to have been the tool they uſed in drilling it.

Their tillage is excellent, owing to the neceſſity they are under of cultivating or running the riſque of ſtarving. At Tegadoo their crops were juſt put into the ground, and the ſurface of the field was as ſmooth as a garden, the roots were ranged in regular lines, and to every root there remained a hillock. A long narrow ſtake, ſharpened to an edge at bottom, with a piece fixed acroſs a little above it, for the convenience of driving it into the ground with the foot, ſupplies the place both of plough and ſpade. The ſoil being light, their work is not very laborious, and with this inſtrument

ment alone they will turn up ground of ſix or ſeven acres in extent.

The ſeine, the large net which has been already noticed, is produced by the united labour, and is probably the joint property of a whole town. Their fiſh-hooks are of ſhell or bone; and they have baſkets of wicker-work to hold the fiſh. Their warlike weapons are ſpears, darts, battle-axes, and the patoo-patoo. The ſpear, which is pointed at each end, is about ſixteen feet in length, and they hold it in the middle, ſo that it is difficult to parry a puſh from it. Whether they fight in boats or on ſhore the battle is hand to hand, ſo that they muſt make bloody work of it. They truſt chiefly in the patoo-patoo, which is faſtened to their wriſts, by means of a ſtrong ſtrap, that it may not be wreſted out of their hands. Theſe are worn in the girdles of people of a ſuperior rank, as a military ornament. They have a kind of ſtaff of diſtinction, which is carried by the principal warriors. It is formed of a whale's rib, is quite white, and adorned with carving, feathers, and the hair of their dogs. Sometimes they had a ſtick ſix feet long, inlaid with ſhells, and otherwiſe ornamented like a military ſtaff. This honourable mark of diſtinction was commonly in the hands of the aged, who were alſo more daubed with the amoco.

When they came to attack us, one or more of theſe old men thus diſtinguiſhed, were uſually in each canoe. It is their cuſtom to ſtop about 50 or 60 yards from a ſhip, when the chiefs riſing from their ſeat, put on a dog's ſkin garment, and, holding out their decorated ſtaff, direct them how to proceed. When they were too far from the ſhip to reach it with their miſſile weapons, then the defiance was given, and the words uſually were Karomai haromai, harre uta a patoo-patoo, "Come on ſhore, come on ſhore, and we will kill you all with our patoo-patoos." While they thus threatened us, they approached gradually the bark, till cloſe along-ſide; yet talking at intervals in a peaceable manner, and anſwering whatever queſtions we aſked them. Then again their menaces were renewed, till

encouraged

encouraged by our ſuppoſed timidity, they began the war-ſong and dance, the ſure prelude of an attack, which always followed, and ſometimes continued until the firing of ſmall ſhot repulſed them; but at others, they vented their paſſion, by throwing a few ſtones at the ſhip, in the way of inſulting us.

The contortions of theſe ſavage Indians are numerous; their limbs are diſtorted, and their faces are agitated with ſtrange convulſive motions. Their tongue hangs out of their mouths to an amazing length, and their eye-lids are drawn ſo as to form a circle round the eye. At the ſame time they ſhake their darts, brandiſh their ſpears, and wave their patoo-patoos to and fro in the air. There is an admirable vigour and activity in their dancing; and in their ſong they keep time with ſuch exactneſs, that 60 or 100 paddles when ſtruck againſt the ſides of their boats at once, make only a ſingle report. In times of peace they ſometimes ſing in a manner reſembling the war-ſong, but the dance is omitted. The women, whoſe voices are exceeding melodious and ſoft, ſing likewiſe in a muſical, but mournful manner. One of their inſtruments of muſic is a ſhell, from which they produce a ſound not unlike that made with a common horn; the other is a ſmall wooden pipe, reſembling a child's nine-pin, not ſuperior in ſound to a child's whiſtle. We never heard them attempt to ſing to them, or to produce any meaſured notes like what we call a tune.

As to the horrid cuſtom of eating human fleſh, prevalent among them, to what has been already ſaid on this head, we ſhall only add, that in moſt of the coves, upon landing, we found near the places where fires had been made, fleſh bones of men; and among the heads that were brought on board, ſome of them had a kind of falſe eyes, and ornaments in their ears, as if alive. The head purchaſed by Mr. Banks, and ſold with great reluctance, was that of a young perſon, and, by the contuſions on one ſide, appeared to have received many violent blows. There had been lately a ſkirmiſh, and we ſuppoſed the young man had been killed with the reſt.

The hippahs or villages of theſe people, of which there are ſeveral between the bay of Plenty and Queen Charlotte's ſound, are all fortified. In theſe they conſtantly reſide; but near Tolaga, Hawk's Bay, and Poverty Bay, only ſingle houſes are to be ſeen, at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. On the ſides of the hills were erected long ſtages, ſupplied with darts and ſtones, thought by us to be retreats in time of action; as it appeared that from ſuch places they could combat with their enemies to great advantage. A magazine of proviſions, conſiſting of dried fiſh, and fern roots, was alſo diſcovered in theſe fortifications.

The inhabitants of this part of the country were all ſubjects of Teratu, who reſided near the Bay of Plenty; and to their being thus united under one chief, they owed a ſecurity unknown to thoſe of other parts. Several inferior governors are in the dominions of Teratu, to whom the moſt implicit obedience is paid. One of the inhabitants having robbed a ſailor belonging to the Endeavour, complaint was made to a chief, who chaſtized the thief by kicking and ſtriking him, which correction he bore with unreſiſting humility. The inhabitants of the ſouthern parts formed little ſocieties, who had all things in common, particularly fiſhing nets and fine apparel. The latter, probably obtained in war, were kept in a little hut, deſtined for that uſe, in the center of the town, and the ſeveral parts of the nets, being made by different families, were afterwards joined together for public uſe. Leſs account, in the opinion of Tupia, is made of the women here than in the South Sea iſlands. Both ſexes eat together; but how they divide their labour, we cannot determine with certainty, though we are inclined to believe that the men cultivate the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their canoes to fiſh; while the women are employed in weaving cloth, collecting ſhell-fiſh, and in dreſſing food.

As to the religion of theſe people, they acknowledge one Supreme Being, and ſeveral ſubordinate deities. Their mode of worſhip we could not learn, nor was any place proper for that purpoſe ſeen. There was indeed

deed a ſmall ſquare area, encompaſſed with ſtones, in the middle of which hung a baſket of fern-roots on one of their ſpades. This they ſaid was an offering to their gods, to obtain from them a plentiful crop of proviſions. They gave the ſame account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite. Tupia, however, ſeemed to have much more deep and extenſive knowledge of theſe ſubjects than any of the people of this iſland, and when he ſometimes delivered a long diſcourſe, he was ſure of a numerous audience, who heard with remarkable reverence and attention.

With regard to the manner of diſpoſing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion. The ſouthern diſtrict ſaid, they diſpoſed of their dead by throwing them into the ſea; but thoſe of the north buried them in the ground. We ſaw, however, not the leaſt ſign of any grave or monument; but the body of many among the living, bore the marks of wounds, in token of grief for the loſs of their friends and relations. Some of their ſcars were newly made, a proof that their friends had died while we were there; yet no one ſaw any thing like a funeral ceremony or proceſſion, the reaſon is, becauſe they affected to conceal every thing reſpecting the dead with the utmoſt ſecrecy.

We obſerved a great ſimilitude between the dreſs, furniture, boats, and nets of the New Zealanders, and the natives of the South Sea iſlands, which evidently demonſtrates that the common anceſtors of both were *ab origine* natives of the ſame country. Indeed the inhabitants of theſe different places have a tradition, that their anceſtors ſprang from another country many years ſince, and they both agree that this country was called Heawige. This is alſo certain, that Tupia when he accoſted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly underſtood; but perhaps a yet ſtronger proof that their origin was the ſame, will ariſe from a ſpecimen of their language, which we ſhall evince by a liſt of words in both languages, according to the dialect of the northern and ſouthern iſlands of which New Zealand conſiſts; whence it will appear,

that the language of Otaheite does not differ more from that of New Zealand, than the language of the two iſlands from each other.

THE LANGUAGE OF

NEW ZEALAND.		OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Northern.	*Southern.*		
Eareete	Eareete	Earee	*A chief.*
Taata	Taata	Taata	*A man.*
Whahine	Whahine	Ivahine	*A woman.*
Eupo	Heaowpoho	Eupo	*The head.*
Macauwe	Heoo-oo	Roourou	*The hair.*
Terringa	Hetaheyei	Terrea	*The ear.*
Erai	Heai	Erai	*The forehead.*
Mata	Hemata	Mata	*The eyes.*
Paparinga	Hepapaeh	Paparea	*The cheeks.*
Ahewh	Heeih	Ahew	*The noſe.*
Hangoutou	Hegaowai	Outou	*The mouth.*
Ecouwai	Hakaoewai	———	*The chin.*
Haringaringu	———	Rema	*The arm.*
Maticara	Hermaigawh	Maneow	*The finger.*
Ateraboo	———	Oboo	*The belly.*
Apeto	Heeapeto	Peto	*The navel.*
Haromai	Heromai	Harromai	*Come hither.*
Heica	Heica	Eyea	*Fiſh.*
Kooura	Kooura	Tooura	*A lobſter.*
Taro	Taro	Taro	*Cocoas.*
Cumala	Cumala	Cumala	*Potatoes.*
Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	Tuphwhe	*Yams.*
Mannu	Mannu	Mannu	*Birds.*
Kaoura	Kaoura	Oure	*No.*
Tahai	———	Tahai	*One.*
Rua	———	Rua	*Two.*
Torou	———	Torou	*Three.*
Ha	———	Hea	*Four.*
Rema	———	Rema	*Five.*
Ono	———	Ono	*Six.*
Etu	———	Hetu	*Seven.*
Warou	———	Warou	*Eight.*
Iva	———	Heva	*Nine.*

Angahourou

NEW ZEALAND. *Northern.*	*Southern.*	OTAHEITE.	ENGLISH.
Angahourou	——	Ahourou	*Ten.*
Hennihew	Heneaho	Nihio	*The teeth.*
Mehow	——	Mattai	*The wind.*
Amootoo	——	Teto	*A thief.*
Mataketake	——	Mataitai	*To examine.*
Eheara	——	Heiva	*To ſing.*
Keno	Keno	Eno	*Bad.*
Eratou	Eratou	Eraou	*Trees.*
Toubouna	Toubouna	Toubouna	*Grandfather.*
Owy Terra	——	Owy Terra	*What do you call this or that.*

Hence it appears evidently that the language of New Zealand and Otaheite, is radically one and the ſame. The dialect indeed is different as in England, where the word is pronounced *gate* in Middleſex, and *geate* in Yorkſhire; and as the northern and ſouthern words were taken down by two different perſons, one might poſſibly uſe more words than the other to expreſs the ſame ſound. Beſides, in the ſouthern parts they put the articles *ke* or *ko* before a noun, as we do thoſe of *the* or *a*: it is alſo common to add the word *oeia* after another word, as we ſay *certainly*, or *yes indeed*; and by not attending ſufficiently to this, our gentlemen ſometimes, judging by the ear only, formed words of an enormous length: for example, one of them aſking a native the name of the iſland, called Matuaro, he replied, with the particle *ke* prefixed *Ke-matuaro*; and upon the queſtion being repeated, the Indian added *oeia*, which made the word *Ke-matuaro-oeia*; and upon inſpecting the log-book, Capt. Cook found Matuaro transformed into *Cumettiwarroweia*. Now a ſimilar orthographical difference might happen, or a like miſtake might be made by a foreigner in writing an Engliſh word. Suppoſe a New Zealander to enquire, when near to aſk, *What village is this?* The anſwer might be, *It is Hackney indeed.* The Indian then for the information of his countrymen, had he the uſe of letters, might record,

record, that he had paſſed through, or been at a place called by the Engliſh *Itiſhackneyindeed*. We were ourſelves at firſt led into many ridiculous miſtakes, from not knowing that the article uſed in the South-Sea Iſlands, is *to* or *ta*, inſtead of *ke* or *ko*.

We have ſuppoſed, that the original inhabitants of theſe iſlands, and thoſe in the South-Seas, came from the ſame country; but what country that is, or where ſituated, remains ſtill a ſubject of enquiry. In this we all agreed, that the original natives were not of America, which lies to the eaſtward; and unleſs there ſhould be a continent to the ſouthward, in a temperate latitude, we cannot but conclude that they emigrated from the weſtward.

Before we cloſe this account of New Zealand, we beg leave farther to obſerve, that hitherto our navigation has been very unfavourable to the ſuppoſition of a Southern Continent. The navigators who have ſupported the poſitions upon which this is founded, are Taſman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, Quiros, and Roggewein; but the track of the Endeavour has totally ſubverted all their theoretical arguments. Upon a view of the chart it will appear, that a large ſpace extends quite to the tropics, which has not been explored by us nor any other navigators; yet we believe there is no cape of any Southern Continent, and no Southern Continent to the northward of 40 deg. ſouth. Of what may lie farther to the ſouthward of 40 deg. we can give no opinion; yet are far from diſcouraging any future attempts after new diſcoveries: for a voyage like this may be of public utility. Should no continent be found, new iſlands within the tropics may be diſcovered. Tupia in a rough chart of his own drawing laid down no leſs than ſeventy-four; and he gave us an account of above one hundred and thirty, which no European veſſel has ever yet viſited.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Paſſage from New Zealand to Botany Bay, in New Holland—Various Incidents related—A Deſcription of the Country and its Inhabitants—The Endeavour ſails from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay—With a further Account of the Country—Her dangerous Situation in her Paſſage from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River.

ON Saturday the 31ſt of March, 1770, we ſailed from Cape Farewell, having fine weather and a fair wind. This cape lies in latitude 40 deg. 33 min. S. and in 186 deg. W. longitude. The ſame day we ſteered weſtward, with a freſh gale till the 2nd of April, when by obſervation we found our latitude to be 40 deg. and our longitude from Cape Farewell, 2 deg. 31 min. Weſt. On the ninth in the morning, when in latitude 38 deg. 29 min. S. we ſaw a tropic bird, a ſight very unuſual in ſo high a latitude. On the 15th we ſaw an egg bird, and a gannet. As theſe birds never go far from land we ſounded all night, but had no ground at 130 fathom water. The day following a ſmall land bird perched on the rigging, but we had no ground at 120 fathom. Tueſday the 17th, we had freſh gales with ſqualls and dark weather in the morning; and in the afternoon a hard gale and a great ſea from the ſouthward, which obliged us to run under our fore-ſail and mizen all night. On the 18th in the morning, we were viſited by a pintado bird, and ſome Port-Egmont hens, an infallible ſign that land was near, which we diſcovered at ſix o'clock in the morning of the 19th, four or five leagues diſtant. To the ſouthermoſt point in ſight, we gave the name of Point Hicks, the name of our firſt lieutenant who diſcovered it. At noon, in latitude 37 deg. 5 min. and 210 deg. 29 min. W. longitude, another remarkable point of the ſame land bore N. 20 E. diſtant about four leagues. This point riſing in a round hillock, extremely like the Ram

Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, Capt. Cook therefore gave it the ſame name. What we had yet ſeen of the land was low and level; the ſhore white and ſandy; and the inland parts covered with wood and verdure. At this time we ſaw three water-ſpouts at once; two between us and the ſhore, and the third at ſome diſtance upon our larboard quarter. In the evening, at ſix o'clock, the northermoſt point of land was diſtant about two leagues, which we named Cape Howe. On the following day we had a diſtant view of the country, which was in general covered with wood, and interſperſed with ſeveral ſmall lawns. It appeared to be inhabited, as ſmoke was ſeen in ſeveral places. At four o'clock the next morning, we ſaw a high mountain, which from its ſhape, was called Mount Dromedary, under which there is a point which received the name of Point Dromedary. In the evening we were oppoſite a point of land which roſe perpendicular, and was called Point Upright. On Sunday the 22d, we were ſo near the ſhore, as to ſee ſeveral of the inhabitants on the coaſt, who were of a very dark complexion, if not perfect negroes. At noon we ſaw a remarkable peeked hill, to which the captain gave the name of the Pigeon Houſe, from its reſemblance of ſuch a building. The trees on this iſland were both tall and large, but we ſaw no place fit to give ſhelter even to a boat.

The captain gave the name of Cape George to a point of land diſcovered on St. George's-day, two leagues to the north of which the ſea formed a bay, which, from its ſhape, was called Long Noſe; eight leagues from which lies Red Point, ſo called from the colour of the ſoil in its neighbourhood. On the 27th, we ſaw ſeveral inhabitants walking along the ſhore, four of them carrying a canoe on their ſhoulders, but as they did not attempt to come off to the ſhip, the captain took Meſſrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia in the yawl, and employed four men to row them to that part of the ſhore where they ſaw the natives, near which four ſmall canoes lay cloſe in land. The Indians ſat on the rocks till the yawl was a quarter of a mile from the ſhore, and then they ran away into the woods. The

ſurf

ſurf beating violently on the beech, prevented the boat from landing; the gentlemen were therefore obliged to make what obſervations they could at a diſtance. The canoes reſembled generally the ſmaller ſort of thoſe of New Zealand. They ſaw a great number of cabbage trees on ſhore; the other trees were of the palm kind, and there was no underwood among them. At five in the evening they returned to the ſhip, and a light breeze ſpringing up, we ſailed to the northward, where we diſcovered ſeveral people on ſhore, who, on our approach, retired to an eminence, ſoon after which two canoes arrived on the ſhore, and four men, who came in them, joined the others. The pinnace having been ſent ahead to ſound, arrived near the ſpot where the Indians had ſtationed themſelves, on which one of them hid himſelf among the rocks near the landing place, and the others retreated farther up the hill. The pinnace keeping along ſhore, the Indians walked near in a line with her; they were armed with long pikes, and a weapon reſembling a ſcymitar, and, by various ſigns and words, invited the boat's crew to land; thoſe who did not follow the boat, having obſerved the approach of the ſhip, brandiſhed their weapons, and threw themſelves into threatening attitudes. The bodies, thighs, and legs of two of theſe, were painted with white ſtreaks, and their faces were almoſt covered with a white powder. They talked together with great emotion, and each of them held one of the above mentioned weapons. The ſhip having come to an anchor, we obſerved a few huts, in which were ſome of the natives; and ſaw ſome canoes, in each of which was a man employed in ſtriking fiſh with a kind of ſpear. We had anchored oppoſite a village of about eight houſes, and obſerved an old woman and three children come out of a wood, laden with fuel for a fire; they were met by three ſmaller children, all of whom, as well as the woman, were quite naked. The old woman frequently looked at the ſhip with the utmoſt indifference, and, as ſoon as ſhe had made a fire, the fiſhermen brought their canoes on ſhore, and they ſet about dreſſing their dinner with as much compoſure, as if a ſhip had been

no extraordinary ſight. Having formed a deſign of landing, we manned the boats, and took Tupia with us, and we had no ſooner come near the ſhore, than two men advanced, as if to diſpute our ſetting foot on land. They were each of them armed with different kinds of weapons. They called out aloud in a harſh tone, warra warra wai! the meaning of which Tupia did not underſtand. The captain threw them beads, nails, and other trifles, which they took up, and ſeemed very well pleaſed with. He then made ſignals that he wanted water, and uſed every poſſible means to convince them that no injury was intended. They made ſigns to the boat's crew to land, on which we put the boat in, but we had no ſooner done ſo, than the two Indians came again to oppoſe us. A muſquet was now fired between them, on the report of which, one of them dropped a bundle of lances, which he immediately ſnatched up again in great haſte. One of them then threw a ſtone at the boat, on which the captain ordered a muſquet loaded with ſmall ſhot to be fired, which wounding the eldeſt of them on the legs, he retired haſtily to one of the houſes that ſtood at ſome little diſtance. The people in the boats now landed, imagining that the wound which this man had received would put an end to the conteſt. In this, however, we were miſtaken, for he immediately returned with a kind of ſhield, of an oval figure, painted white in the middle, with two holes in it to ſee through. They now advanced with great intrepidity, and both diſcharged their lances at the boat's crew, but did not wound any of them. Another muſquet was fired at them, on which they threw another lance, and then took to their heels. We now went up to the huts, in one of which we found the children, who had ſecreted themſelves behind ſome bark. We looked at them, but left them without its being known we had ſeen them, and having thrown ſeveral pieces of cloth, ribbands, beads, and other things into the hut, we took ſeveral of their lances, and then reimbarked in the boat. The canoes on this coaſt were about 13 feet in length, each made of the bark of a ſingle tree, tied up at the ends, and kept open in the middle by the means of

ſticks

ſticks placed acroſs them; their paddles were very ſmall, and two were uſed at a time.

We now ſailed to the north point of the bay, and found plenty of freſh water. On taking a view of the hut where we had ſeen the children, we had the mortification to find that every Indian was fled, and that they had left all the preſents behind them. The captain now went in the pinnace to inſpect the bay, and ſaw ſeveral of the natives, who all fled as he approached them. Some of the men having been ſent to get wood and water, they no ſooner went on board to dinner, than the natives came down to the place, and examined the caſks with great attention, but did not offer to remove them. When the people were on ſhore in the afternoon, about twenty of the natives, all armed, advanced within a trifling diſtance of them, and then ſtopped, while two of their number approached ſtill nearer. Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer on ſhore, went towards them, with preſents in his hands, and endeavoured, by every poſſible means, to aſſure them of his friendly intentions, but to no purpoſe, for they retired before he came up to them. In the evening, Meſſrs. Banks and Solander, went with the captain to a cove north of the bay, where they caught between three and four hundred weight of fiſh, at four hauls.

On Monday the 30th, the natives came down to the huts before it was light, and were repeatedly heard to ſhout very loud, and ſoon after day-break they were ſeen on the beach, but quickly retired about a mile, and kindled ſeveral fires in the woods. This day ſome of the ſhip's crew being employed in cutting graſs at a diſtance from the main body, while the natives purſued them, but ſtopping within fifty or ſixty yards of them, they ſhouted ſeveral times, and retreated to the woods. In the evening they behaved exactly in the ſame manner, when the captain followed them alone and unarmed for ſome time, but they ſtill retired as he approached.

On Tueſday, May the firſt, the ſouth point of the bay was named Sutherland Point, one of the ſeamen of the name of Sutherland, having died that day, was

buried on ſhore; and more preſents were left in the huts, ſuch as looking-glaſſes, combs, &c. but the former ones had not been taken away. Making an excurſion about the country, we found it agreeably variegated with wood and lawn, the trees being ſtrait and tall, and without underwood. The country might be cultivated without cutting down one of them. The graſs grows in large tufts, almoſt cloſe to each other, and there is a great plenty of it. In this excurſion, we met with many places where the inhabitants had ſlept without ſhelter, and one man, who ran away the moment he beheld us. More preſents were left in their huts, and at their ſleeping-places, in hopes of producing a friendly intercourſe. We ſaw the dung of an animal which fed on graſs, and traced the foot-ſteps of another, which had claws like a dog, and was about the ſize of a wolf: alſo the track of a ſmall animal, whoſe foot was like that of a pole-cat; and ſaw one animal alive, about the ſize of a rabbit. We found ſome wood that had been felled, and the bark ſtript off by the natives, and ſeveral growing trees, in which ſteps had been cut, for the convenience of aſcending them. The woods abound with a vaſt variety of beautiful birds, among which were cockatooes, and parroquets, which flew in large flocks. The ſecond lieutenant, Mr. Gore, having been with a boat in order to drudge for oyſters, ſaw ſome Indians, who made ſigns for him to come on ſhore, which he declined: having finiſhed his buſineſs, he ſent the boat away, and went by land with a midſhipman, to join the party that was getting water. In their way they met with more than 20 of the natives, who followed them ſo cloſe as to come within a few yards of them; Mr. Gore ſtopped and faced them, on which the Indians ſtopped alſo, and when he proceeded again, they followed him; but they did not attack him though they had each man a lance. The Indians coming in ſight of the water-caſks, ſtood at the diſtance of a quarter of a mile, while Mr. Gore and his companion reached their ſhip-mates in ſafety. Two or three of the waterers now advanced towards the Indians, but obſerving they did not retire, they very imprudently

imprudently turned about, and retreated haſtily: this apparent ſign of cowardice inſpired the ſavages, who diſcharged four of their lances at the fugitives, which flying beyond them, they eſcaped unhurt. They now ſtopped to pick up the lances; on which the Indians retired in their turn. At this inſtant the captain came up with Meſſrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia advancing made ſigns of friendſhip; but the poor natives would not ſtay their coming up to them. On the following day they went again on ſhore, where many plants were collected by Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks. They ſaw ſeveral parties of the Indians, who all ran away on their approach. Tupia having learnt to ſhoot, frequently ſtayed alone to ſhoot parrots, and the Indians conſtantly fled away from him with as much precipitation as from the Engliſh. On the 3d of May, fourteen or fifteen Indians, in the ſame number of canoes, were engaged in ſtriking fiſh within half a mile of the watering-place. At this time a party of the ſhip's crew were ſhooting near the fiſhermen, one of whom Mr. Banks obſerved to haul up his canoe on the beach, and approach the people who were ſhooting. He watched their motions unobſerved by them, for more than a quarter of an hour, then put off his boat and returned to his fiſhing. At this time the captain, with Dr. Solander and another gentleman, went to the head of the bay to try to form ſome connection with the Indians. On their firſt landing they found ſeveral of the Indians on ſhore, who immediately retreated to their canoes, and rowed off. They went up the country, where they found the ſoil to be a deep black mould, which appeared to be calculated for the production of any kind of grain. They ſaw ſome of the fineſt meadows that were ever beheld, and met with a few rocky places, the ſtone of which is ſandy, and ſeemed to be admirably adapted for building. In the woods they found a tree bearing cherries, if ſhape and colour may intitle them to that name, the juice of which was agreeably tart. They now returned to their boat, and ſeeing a fire at a diſtance, rowed towards it; but the Indians fled at their coming near them. Near the

beach they found ſeven canoes, and as many fires, from which they judged that each fiſherman had dreſſed his own dinner. There were oyſters lying on the ſpot, and ſome muſcles roaſting on the fire. They ate of theſe fiſh, and left them ſome beads and other trifles in return. They now returned to the ſhip, and in the evening Mr. Banks went out with his gun, and ſaw a great number of quails, ſome of which he ſhot, and they proved to be the ſame kind as thoſe of England. On the following day a midſhipman having ſtayed from his companions, came ſuddenly to an old man and woman, and ſome children, who were ſitting naked under a tree together: they ſeemed afraid of him, but did not run away. The man wore a long beard, and both he and the woman were grey-headed; but the woman's hair was cut ſhort. This day likewiſe, two of another party met with ſix Indians on the border of a wood, one of whom calling out very loud, a lance was thrown from a wood, which narrowly miſſed them. The Indians now ran off, and, in looking round they ſaw a youth deſcend from a tree, who had doubtleſs been placed there for the purpoſe of throwing the lance at them. This day the captain went up the country on the north ſide of the bay, which he found to reſemble the moory grounds of England; but the land was thinly covered with plants about 16 inches high. The hills riſe gradually behind each other, for a conſiderable diſtance, and between them is marſhy ground. Thoſe who had been ſent out to fiſh this day, met with great ſucceſs, and the ſecond lieutenant ſtruck a fiſh called the Stingray, which weighed near two hundred and fifty pounds. The next morning a fiſh of the ſame kind was taken, which weighed three hundred and fifty pounds. The name of Botany Bay was given to this place from the large number of plants collected by Meſſrs. Banks and Solander. This country produces two kinds of wood which may be deemed timber, one of which is tall and ſtrait like the pine, and the other is hard, heavy, and dark-coloured, like lignum vitæ; it yields a red gum, like dragon's blood, and bears ſome reſemblance of the Engliſh oak. There

are

are mangroves in abundance, ſeveral kinds of palm, and a few ſhrubs. Among other kinds of birds, crows were found here, exactly like thoſe of England. There is great plenty of water-fowls, among the flats of ſand and mud; one of which is ſhaped like a pelican, is larger than a ſwan, and has black and white feathers. Theſe banks of mud abound with cockles, muſcles, oyſters, and other ſhell-fiſh, which greatly contribute towards the ſupport of the natives, who ſometimes dreſs them on ſhore, and at other times in their canoes. They likewiſe caught many other kinds of fiſh with hooks and line.

While the captain remained in the harbour, the Engliſh colours were diſplayed on ſhore, daily, and the name of the ſhip, with the date of the year, was carved on a tree near the place where we took in our water.

On Sunday the 6th of May, we ſailed from Botany Bay, and at noon were off a harbour, which was called Port Jackſon, and in the evening, near a bay, to which we gave the name of Broken Bay. The next day at noon, the northermoſt land in ſight projected ſo as to juſtify the calling it Cape Three Points. On Wedneſday the 9th, we ſaw two exceeding beautiful rainbows, the colours of which were ſtrong and lively, and thoſe of the inner one ſo bright, as to reflect its ſhadow on the water. They formed a complete ſemicircle, and the ſpace between them was much darker than the reſt of the ſky. On Thurſday we paſſed a rocky point, which was named Point Stephens. Next day ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places on ſhore, and in the evening diſcovered three remarkable high hills near each other, which the captain named the Three Brothers. They lie in latitude 31 deg. 40 min. and may be ſeen thirteen or fourteen leagues from the ſhore.

Sunday, the 13th, we ſaw the ſmoke of fires, on a point of land, which was therefore called Cape Smokey. As we proceeded from Botany Bay, northward, the land appeared high and well covered with wood. In the afternoon, we diſcovered ſome rocky

iſlands

iſlands between us and the land, the ſouthermoſt of which is in latitude 30 deg. 10 min. and the northermoſt in 29 deg. 58 min. On Tueſday morning, by the aſſiſtance of our glaſſes, we diſcerned about a ſcore of Indians, each loaded with a bundle, which we imagined to be palm leaves for covering their houſes. We traced them for more than an hour, during which time they took not the leaſt notice of the ſhip; at length they left the beach, and were loſt behind a hill, which they gained by a gentle aſcent. At noon, in latitude 28 deg. 37 min. 30 ſec. ſouth, and in 206 deg. 30 min. weſt longitude, the captain diſcovered a high point of land, and named it Cape Byron. We continued to ſteer along the ſhore with a freſh gale, and in the evening we diſcovered breakers at a conſiderable diſtance from the ſhore, ſo that we were obliged to tack, and get into deeper water; which having done, we lay with the head of the veſſel to the land till the next morning, when we were ſurprized to find ourſelves farther to the ſouthward than we had been the preceding evening, notwithſtanding we had a ſoutherly wind all night. The breakers lie in latitude 28 deg. 22 min. ſouth. In the morning we paſſed the breakers, near a peaked mountain, which we named Mount Warning, ſituated in 28 deg. 22 min. ſouth latitude. The point off which theſe ſhoals lie, Capt. Cook named Point Danger. We purſued our courſe, and the next day ſaw more breakers, near a point, which we diſtinguiſhed by the name of Point Look-out; to the north of which the ſhore forms a wide open bay, which we called Moreton's Bay, and the north point thereof Cape Moreton. Near this are three hills, which we called the Glaſs Houſes, from the very ſtrong reſemblance they bore to ſuch buildings.

On Friday, the 18th, at two in the morning, we deſcried a point ſo unequal, that it looks like two ſmall iſlands under the land, and it was therefore called Double Iſland Point. At noon, by the help of glaſſes, we diſcovered ſome ſands, which lay in patches of ſeveral acres. We obſerved they were moveable, and that they had not been long in their preſent ſituation; for

for we ſaw trees half buried, and the tops of others ſtill green. At this time two beautiful water-ſnakes ſwam by the ſhip, in every reſpect reſembling land ſnakes, except that their tails were flat and broad, probably to ſerve them inſtead of fins in ſwimming.

Saturday, the 19th at noon, we ſailed about four leagues from the land, and at one o'clock ſaw a point, whereon a number of Indians were aſſembled, from whence it was called Indian Head. Soon afterwards we ſaw many more of the natives; alſo ſmoke in the day time, and fires by night. The next day we ſaw a point, which was named Sandy Point, from two large tracts of white ſand that were on it. Soon after we paſſed a ſhoal, which we called Break Sea Spit, becauſe we had now ſmooth water, after having long encountered a high ſea. For ſome days paſt we had ſeen the ſea birds, called boobies, none of which we had met with before; and which, from half an hour after, were continually paſſing the ſhip in large flights: from which it was conjectured, that there was an inlet or river of ſhallow water to the ſouthward, where they went to feed in the day time, returning in the evening to ſome iſlands to the northward. In honour of Capt. Hervey we named this bay, Hervey's Bay.

On Tueſday, the 22nd, at ſix in the morning, by the help of our glaſſes, when a-breaſt of the ſouth point of a large bay, in which the captain intended to anchor, we diſcovered, that the land was covered with palm-nut-trees, none of which we had ſeen ſince we had quitted the iſlands within the tropic. On the 23d, early in the morning, Capt. Cook attended by ſeveral gentlemen, and Tupia, went on ſhore to examine the country. The wind blew ſo freſh, and we found it ſo cold, that being at ſome diſtance from the ſhore, we took with us our cloaks. We landed a little within the point of a bay, which led into a large lagoon, by the ſides of which grows the true mangrove, ſuch as is found in the Weſt-Indies, as it does alſo on ſome bogs, and ſwamps of ſalt water which we diſcovered. In theſe mangroves were many neſts of ants of a ſingular kind, being as green as graſs. When the

branches were moved, they came forth in great numbers, and bit the diſturber moſt ſeverely. Theſe trees likewiſe afforded ſhelter for immenſe numbers of green caterpillars, whoſe bodies were covered with hairs, which, on the touch, occaſioned a pain ſimilar to the ſting of a nettle, but much more acute. Theſe inſects were ranged ſide by ſide on the leaves, thirty or forty together, in a regular manner. Among the ſand-banks we ſaw birds larger than ſwans, which we imagined were pelicans; and ſhot a kind of buſtard, which weighed ſeventeen pounds. This bird proved very delicate food, on which account we named this bay, Buſtard Bay. We likewiſe ſhot a duck of a moſt beautiful plumage, with a white beak. We found an abundance of oyſters, of various ſorts, and among the reſt ſome hammer oyſters of a curious kind. The country here is much worſe than that about Botany Bay, the ſoil being dry and ſandy, but the ſides of the hills are covered with trees, which grow ſeparately without underwood. We ſaw the tree that yields a gum like the *ſanguis draconis*, but the leaves are longer than the ſame kind of trees in other parts, and hang down like thoſe of a weeping willow. While we were in the woods, ſeveral of the natives took a ſurvey of the ſhip and then departed. We ſaw on ſhore fires in many places, and repairing to one of them, found a dozen burning near them. The people were gone, but had left ſome ſhells and bones of fiſh they had juſt eaten. We perceived likewiſe ſeveral pieces of ſoft bark about the length and breadth of a man, which we judged had been uſed as beds. The whole was in a thicket of cloſe trees, which afforded good ſhelter from the wind. This kind of encampment was in a thicket well defended from the wind. The place ſeemed to be much trodden, and as there was no appearance of a houſe, it was imagined that they ſpent their nights, as well as their days, in the open air: even Tupia ſhook his head and exclaimed, Taata Enos! "Poor Wretches!"

On Thurſday, the 24th, we made ſail out of the bay, and on the day following were a-breaſt of a point, which being immediately under the tropic, the captain named

named Cape Capricorn, on the weſt ſide whereof we ſaw an amazing number of large birds reſembling the pelican, ſome of which were near five feet high. We now anchored in twelve fathom water, having the main land and barren iſlands in a manner all round us.

Sunday, the 27th, we ſtood between the range of almoſt barren iſlands, and the main land, which appeared mountainous. We had here very ſhallow water, and anchored in ſixteen feet, which was not more than the ſhip drew. Mr. Banks tried to fiſh from the cabin windows, but the water was too ſhallow. The ground indeed was covered with crabs, which greedily ſeized the bait, and held it till they were above water. Theſe crabs were of two kinds, one of a very fine blue, with a white belly; and the other marked with blue on the joints, and having three brown ſpots on the back.

On Monday, the 28th, in the morning, we ſailed to the northward, and to the northermoſt point of land we gave the name of Cape Manifold, from the number of high hills appearing above it. Between this cape and the ſhore is a bay which we called Keppel's, and to ſeveral iſlands, we gave the name of the ſame admiral. This day being determined to keep the main land cloſe aboard, which continued to trend away to the weſt, we got among another cluſter of iſlands. Here we were greatly alarmed, having on a ſudden but three fathom water, in a ripling tide; we immediately put the ſhip about, and hoiſted out the boat in ſearch of deeper water; after which we ſtood to the weſt with an eaſy ſail, and in the evening came to the entrance of a bay. In the afternoon, having ſounded round the ſhip, and found that there was water ſufficient to carry her over the ſhoal, we weighed, and ſtood to the weſtward, having ſent a boat a-head to ſound, and at ſix in the evening we anchored in ten fathom, with a ſandy bottom, at about two miles diſtant from the main.

On Tueſday, the 29th, we had thoughts of laying the ſhip aſhore, and cleaning her bottom, and therefore landed with the maſter in ſearch of a convenient place for that purpoſe. In this excurſion Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks accompanied us; we found walking ex-

tremely incommodious, the ground being covered with graſs, the ſeeds of which were ſharp and bearded, ſo that they were continually ſticking in our cloaths, whence they worked forwards to the fleſh by means of the beard. We were alſo perpetually tormented with the ſtings of muſquetos. Several places were found convenient to lay down the ſhip aſhore, but to our great diſappointment, we could meet with no freſh water. We proceeded, however, up the country, and in the interior part, we found gum trees, on the branches whereof were white ants neſts formed of clay, as big as a buſhel. On another tree we ſaw black ants, which perforated all the twigs, and after they had eaten out the pith, formed their lodging in the hollows which contained it; yet the trees were in a flouriſhing condition. We alſo ſaw in the air many thouſands of butterflies, which ever way we looked; and every bough was covered with incredible numbers. On the dry ground we diſcovered, ſuppoſed to have been left by the tide, a fiſh about the ſize of a minnow, having two ſtrong breaſt fins, with which it leaped away as nimbly as a frog: it did not appear to be weakened by being out of the water, nor even to prefer that element to the land, for when ſeen in the water it leaped on ſhore, and purſued its way. It was likewiſe remarked, that where there were ſmall ſtones projecting above the water, it choſe rather to leap from one ſtone to another, than to paſs through the water.

On Wedneſday, the 30th, Capt. Cook, and other gentlemen, went aſhore, and having gained the ſummit of a hill, took a ſurvey of the coaſt, and the adjacent iſlands, which being done, the captain proceeded with Dr. Solander up an inlet, that had been diſcovered the preceding day; but the weather proving unfavourable, and from a fear of being bewildered among the ſhoals in the night, they returned to the ſhip, having ſeen the whole day, only two Indians, who followed the boat a conſiderable way along ſhore; but the tide running ſtrong, the captain thought it not prudent to wait for them. While theſe gentlemen were tracing the inlet, Mr. Banks, with a party, endeavoured to penetrate

penetrate into the country, and having met with a piece of ſwampy ground, we reſolved to paſs it; but before we got half way, we found the mud almoſt knee deep. The bottom was covered with branches of trees, interwoven on the ſurface of the ſwamp, on which we ſometimes kept our footing; ſometimes our feet ſlipt through; and ſometimes we were ſo entangled among them, as not to be able to free ourſelves but by groping in the mud and ſlime with our hands. However, we croſſed it in about an hour, and judged it might be about a quarter of a mile over. Having performed this diſagreeable taſk, we came to a ſpot, where had been four ſmall fires, near which were ſome bones of fiſh that had been roaſted; alſo graſs laid in heaps, whereon four or five perſons probably had ſlept. Our ſecond lieutenant, Mr. Gore, at another place, ſaw the track of a large animal, near a gully of water; he alſo heard the ſounds of human voices, but did not ſee the people. At this place two turtles, ſome water fowl, and a few ſmall birds, were ſeen. As no water was to be found in our different excurſions, for ſeveral of our crew were alſo rambling about, the captain called the inlet where the ſhip lay, Thirſty Sound. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 10 min. ſouth, and in 210 deg. 18 min. weſt longitude, and may be known by a group of iſlands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at ſea. We had not a ſingle inducement to ſtay longer in a place, where we could not be ſupplied with freſh water, nor with proviſion of any kind. We caught neither fiſh nor wild fowl; nor could we get a ſhot at the ſame kind of water-fowl, which we had ſeen in Botany Bay. Therefore on the 31ſt at ſix o'clock, A. M. we weighed anchor, and put to ſea. We kept without the iſlands that lie in ſhore, and to the N. W. of Thirſty Sound, as there appeared to be no ſafe paſſage between them and the main, at the ſame time we had a number of iſlands without us, extending as far as we could ſee. Pier Head, the N. W. point of Thirſty Sound, bore S. E. diſtant ſix leagues, being half way between the iſlands which are off the eaſt point of the weſtern inlet, and three ſmall iſlands that lie directly without them.

them. Having ſailed round theſe laſt, we came to an anchor in fifteen fathom water, and the weather being dark, hazy, and rainy, we remained under the lee of them till ſeven o'clock of the next morning.

On the 1ſt of June, we got under ſail, and our latitude by obſervation was 21 deg. 29 min. ſouth. We had now quite open the weſtern inlet, which we have diſtinguiſhed by the name of Bread Sound. A point of land which forms its N. W. entrance, we named Cape Palmerſton, lying in 21 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, and in 210 deg. 54 min. W. longitude. Between this cape and Cape Townſhend is the bay, which we have called the Bay of Inlets. At eight in the evening, we anchored in eleven fathom, with a ſandy bottom, about two leagues from the main land.

Saturday the 2nd, we got under ſail, and at noon, in latitude 20 deg. 56 min. we ſaw a high promontory, which we named Cape Hilſborough. It bore W. half N. diſtant ſeven miles. The land appeared to abound in wood and herbage, and is diverſified with hills, plains, and valleys. A chain of iſlands large and ſmall are ſituated at a diſtance from the coaſt and under the land, from ſome of which we ſaw ſmoke aſcending in different places.

On Sunday, the 3d, we diſcovered a point of land, which we called Cape Conway, and between that and Cape Hilſborough, a bay to which we gave the name of Repulſe Bay. The land about Cape Conway forms a moſt beautiful landſcape, being diverſified with hills, dales, woods, and verdant lawns. By the help of our glaſſes we diſcovered two men and a woman on one of the iſlands, and a canoe with an outrigger like thoſe of Otaheite. This day we named the iſlands Cumberland Iſlands, in honour of the duke; and a paſſage which we had diſcovered, was called Whitſunday paſſage, from the day on which it was ſeen. At day-break, on Monday the 4th, we were abreaſt of a point, which we called Cape Glouceſter. Names were alſo given this day to three other places, namely, Holborne Iſle, Edgcumbe Bay, and Cape Upſtart, which laſt was ſo called becauſe it riſes abruptly from the low lands that ſurround

round it. Inland are ſome hills or mountains, which, like the cape, afford but a barren proſpect.

On Tueſday the 5th, we were about four leagues from land, and our latitude by obſervation was 19 deg. 12 min. S. We ſaw very large columns of ſmoke riſing from the low lands. We continued to ſteer W. N. W. as the land lay, till noon on the 6th, when our latitude by obſervation was 19 deg. 1 min. S. at which time we had the mouth of a bay all open, diſtant two leagues. This we named Cleveland Bay; and the eaſt point Cape Cleveland. The weſt, which had the appearance of an iſland, we called Magnetical iſland, becauſe the compaſs did not traverſe well when we were near it: they are both high, as is the main land between them, the whole forming a ſurface the moſt rugged, rocky, and barren of any we had ſeen upon the coaſt: yet it was not without inhabitants, for we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral parts of the bottom of the bay.

Thurſday the 7th, at day-break we were a-breaſt of the eaſtern part of this land, and in the afternoon ſaw ſeveral large columns of ſmoke upon the main; alſo canoes, and ſome trees, which we thought were thoſe of the cocoa-nut; in ſearch of which, as they would have been at this time very acceptable, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went aſhore with lieutenant Hicks; but in the evening they returned with only a few plants, gathered from the cabbage-palm, and which had been miſtaken for the cocoa-tree.

On Friday, the 8th, we ſtood away for the northermoſt point in ſight, to which we gave the name of Point Hillock. Between this and Magnetical Iſle the ſhore forms Halifax Bay, which affords ſhelter from all winds. At ſix in the evening we were a-breaſt of a point of land, which we named Cape Sandwich. From hence the land trends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which was named Rockingham Bay. We now ranged northward along the ſhore, towards a cluſter of iſlands, on one of which about forty or fifty men, women, and children were ſtanding together, all ſtark naked, and looking at the ſhip with a curioſity never obſerved among theſe people before. At noon

our

our latitude, by obſervation, was 17 deg. 59 min. and we were a-breaſt of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W. diſtant about two miles. This boundary of the bay is formed by an iſland of conſiderable height, which we diſtinguiſhed by the name of Dunk Iſle.

On Saturday, the 9th, in the morning, we were a-breaſt of ſome ſmall iſlands, which were named Frankland's Iſles. At noon we were in the middle of the channel, and by obſervation in latitude 16 deg. 57 min. S. and in longitude 214 deg. 6 min. W. with twenty fathom water. The point on the main of which we were now abreaſt Capt. Cook named Cape Grafton. Having hauled round this, we found a bay three miles to the weſtward, in which we anchored; and called the iſland Green Iſland. Here Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went aſhore with the captain, with a view of procuring water, which not being to be had eaſily, they ſoon returned aboard, and the next day we arrived near Trinity Bay, ſo called becauſe diſcovered on Trinity Sunday.

Sunday, the 10th, was remarkable for the dangerous ſituation of the Endeavour, as was Tueſday the 12th; for her preſervation and deliverance, as chriſtians, or only moral philoſophers, we ought to add, agreeable to the will of an over-ruling providence, who ſhut up the ſea with doors, who appointed for it a decreed place, and ſaid, Thus far thou ſhalt come, and here ſhall thy proud waves be ſtayed. As no accident remarkably unfortunate had befallen us, during a navigation of more than thirteen hundred miles, upon a coaſt every where abounding with the moſt dangerous rocks and ſhoals, no name of diſtreſs had hitherto been given to any cape or point of land which we had ſeen. But we now gave the name of Cape Tribulation, to a point we had juſt ſeen fartheſt to the northward, becauſe here we became acquainted with misfortune. The cape lies in latitude 16 deg. 6 min. S. and 214 deg. 39 min. W. longitude.

This day, Sunday the 10th, at ſix in the evening we ſhortened ſail, and hauled off ſhore cloſe upon a wind,

to avoid the danger of ſome rocks, which were ſeen a-head, and to obſerve whether any iſlands lay in the offing, as we were near the latitude of thoſe iſlands, ſaid to have been diſcovered by Quiros. We kept ſtanding off from ſix o'clock till near nine, with a fine breeze and bright moon. We had got into twenty-one fathom water, when ſuddenly we fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathom, in a few minutes. Every man was inſtantly ordered to his ſtation, and we were on the point of anchoring, when, on a ſudden, we had again deep water, ſo that we thought all danger at an end, concluding we had ſailed over the tail of ſome ſhoals, which we had ſeen in the evening. We had twenty fathoms and upwards before ten o'clock, and this depth continuing ſome time, the gentlemen, who had hitherto been upon duty, retired to reſt; but in leſs than an hour the water ſhallowed at once from twenty to ſeventeen fathoms, and before ſoundings could be taken the ſhip ſtruck upon a rock, and remained immoveable. Every one was inſtantly on deck, with countenances fully expreſſive of the horrors of our ſituation. Knowing we were not near the ſhore, we concluded that we were upon a rock of coral, the points of which are ſharp, and the ſurface ſo rough, as to grind away whatever it rubbed againſt, even with the gentleſt motion. All the ſails being immediately taken in, and our boats hoiſted out, we found, that the ſhip had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it. Finding the water was deepeſt a-ſtern, we carried out the anchor from the ſtarboard quarter, and applied our whole force to the capſtan, in hopes to get the veſſel off, but in vain. She now beat ſo violently againſt the rock, that the crew could ſcarcely keep on their legs. The moon ſhone bright, by the light of which we could ſee the ſheathing-boards float from the bottom of the veſſel, till at length the falſe keel followed, ſo that we expected inſtant deſtruction. Our beſt chance of eſcaping ſeemed now to be by lightening her; but having ſtruck at high water, we ſhould have been in our preſent ſituation after the veſſel ſhould draw as much leſs water as the water had ſunk; our anxiety abated a little, on finding that

the ſhip ſettled on the rocks as the tide ebbed, and we flattered ourſelves, that, if the ſhip ſhould keep together till next tide, we might have ſome chance of floating her. We therefore inſtantly ſtarted the water in the hold, and pumped it up. The decayed ſtores, oil-jars, caſks, ballaſt, ſix guns, and other things, were thrown overboard, in order to get at the heavier articles; and in this buſineſs we were employed till day-break, during all which time not an oath was ſworn, ſo much were the minds of the ſailors impreſſed with a ſenſe of their danger.

On Monday the 11th, at day-light, we ſaw land at eight leagues diſtance, but not a ſingle iſland between us and the main, on which part of the crew might have been landed, while the boat went on ſhore with the reſt: ſo that the deſtruction of the greater part of us would have been inevitable had the ſhip gone to pieces. It happened that the wind died away to a dead calm before noon. As we expected high-water about eleven o'clock, every thing was prepared to make another effort to free the ſhip, but the tide fell ſo much ſhort of that in the night, that ſhe did not float by 18 inches, though we had thrown over-board near fifty tons weight: we therefore renewed our toil, and threw over-board every thing that could poſſibly be ſpared; as the tide fell, the water poured in ſo rapidly, that we could ſcarce keep her free by the conſtant working of two pumps. Our only hope now depended on the midnight tide, and preparations were accordingly made for another effort to get the ſhip off. The tide began to riſe at five o'clock, when the leak likewiſe increaſed to ſuch a degree, that two pumps more were manned, but only one of them would work; three, therefore, were kept going till nine o'clock, at which time the ſhip righted; but ſo much water had been admitted by the leak, that we expected ſhe would ſink as ſoon as the water ſhould bear her off the rock. Our ſituation was now deplorable, beyond deſcription, almoſt all hope being at an end. We knew that when the fatal moment ſhould arrive, all authority would be at an end. The boats were incapable of conveying all on ſhore, and we

dreaded a conteſt for the preference, as more ſhocking than the ſhipwreck itſelf: yet it was conſidered, that thoſe who might be left on board, would eventually meet with a milder fate than thoſe who, by gaining the ſhore, would have no chance but to linger out the remains of life among the rudeſt ſavages in the univerſe, and in a country, where fire-arms would barely enable them to ſupport themſelves in a moſt wretched ſituation. At twenty minutes after ten the ſhip floated, and was heaved into deep water, when we were happy to find that ſhe did not admit more water than ſhe had done before: yet as the leak had for a conſiderable time gained on the pumps, there was now three feet nine inches water in the hold. By this time the men were ſo worn by fatigue of mind and body, that none of them could pump more than five or ſix minutes at a time, and then threw themſelves, quite ſpent, on the deck, amidſt a ſtream of water which came from the pumps. The ſucceeding man being fatigued in his turn, threw himſelf down in the ſame manner, while the former jumped up and renewed his labour, thus mutually ſtruggling for life, till the following accident had like to have given them up a prey to abſolute deſpair, and thereby inſured our deſtruction. Between the inſide lining of the ſhip's bottom, which is called the cieling, and the outſide planking, there is a ſpace of about ſeventeen or eighteen inches. The man who had hitherto taken the depth of water at the well, had taken it no farther than the cieling, but being now relieved by another perſon, who took the depth of the outſide plank, it appeared by this miſtake, that the leak had ſuddenly gained upon the pumps, the whole difference between the two planks. This circumſtance deprived us of all hopes, and ſcarce any one thought it worth while to labour, for the longer preſervation of a life which muſt ſo ſoon have a period: but the miſtake was ſoon diſcovered; and the joy ariſing from ſuch unexpected good news inſpired the men with ſo much vigour, that before eight o'clock in the morning, they had pumped out conſiderably more water than they had ſhipped. We now talked of nothing but getting the

ſhip into ſome harbour, and ſet heartily to work to get in the anchors; one of which, and the cable of another, we loſt; but theſe were now conſidered as trifles. Having a good breeze from ſea, we got under ſail at eleven o'clock, and ſteered for land. As we could not diſcover the exact ſituation of the leak, we had no proſpect of ſtopping it within ſide of the veſſel, but on Tueſday the 12th, the following expedient, which one of the midſhipmen had formerly ſeen tried with ſucceſs, was adopted. We took an old ſtudding ſail, and having mixed a large quantity of oakham and wool, chopped ſmall, it was ſtitched down in handfuls on the ſail, as lightly as poſſible, the dung of ſheep and other filth being ſpread over it. Thus prepared, the ſail was hauled under the ſhip, by ropes, which kept it extended till it came under the leak, when the ſuction carried in the oakham and wool from the ſurface of the ſail. This experiment ſucceeded ſo well, that inſtead of three pumps, the water was eaſily kept under with one.

We had hitherto no farther view than to run the ſhip into ſome harbour, and build a veſſel from her materials, in which we might reach the Eaſt-Indies; but we now began to think of finding a proper place to repair her damage, and then to purſue her voyage on its original plan. At ſix in the evening we anchored ſeven leagues from the ſhore; and found that the ſhip made 15 inches water an hour during the night; but as the pumps could clear this quantity, we were not uneaſy. At nine in the morning we paſſed two iſlands, which were called Hope Iſlands, becauſe the reaching of them had been the object of our wiſhes, at the time of the ſhipwreck. In the afternoon, the maſter was ſent out with two boats to ſound and ſearch for a harbour where the ſhip might be repaired, and we anchored at ſun-ſet, in four fathoms water, two miles from the ſhore. One of the mates being ſent out in the pinnace, returned at nine o'clock, reporting, that he had found ſuch a harbour as was wanted, at the diſtance of two leagues.

Wedneſday the 13th, at ſix o'clock we ſailed, having previouſly ſent two boats a-head, to point out the ſhoals that we ſaw in our way. We ſoon anchored about a

mile



Engraved by J.G.Wooding.

View of ENDEAVOUR RIVER on the Coast of New Holland, where Captn Cook had the Ship laid on Shore & repaired.

mile from the ſhore, when the captain went out, and found the channel very narrow, but the harbour was better adapted to our preſent purpoſe, than any place we had ſeen in the whole courſe of the voyage. As it blew very freſh this day and the following night, we could not venture to run into the harbour, but remained at anchor during the two ſucceeding days, in the courſe of which we obſerved four Indians on the hills, who ſtopped and made two fires.

Our men, by this time, began to be afflicted with the ſcurvey; and our Indian friend Tupia was ſo ill with it, that he had livid ſpots on both his legs. Mr. Green the aſtronomer was likewiſe ill of the ſame diſorder; ſo that our being detained from landing was every way diſagreeable. The wind continued freſh till the 17th, and then we reſolved to puſh in for the harbour, and twice ran the ſhip a-ground; the ſecond time ſhe ſtuck faſt, on which we took down the booms, fore-yard, and fore-top maſts, and made a raft on the ſide of the ſhip; and, as the tide happened to be riſing, ſhe floated at one o'clock. We ſoon got her into the harbour, where ſhe was moored along the ſide of a beach, and the anchors, cables, &c. immediately taken out of her.

CHAP. IX.

The Ship is refitted in Endeavour River—Tranſactions during that Time—The Country, its Inhabitants and Productions deſcribed—A Deſcription of the Harbour, the adjacent Country, and ſeveral Iſlands near the Coaſt—The Range from Endeavour River to the northern Extremity of the Country—And the Dangers of that Navigation—The Endeavour departs from South Wales—That Country, its Product and People deſcribed, with a Specimen of the Language.

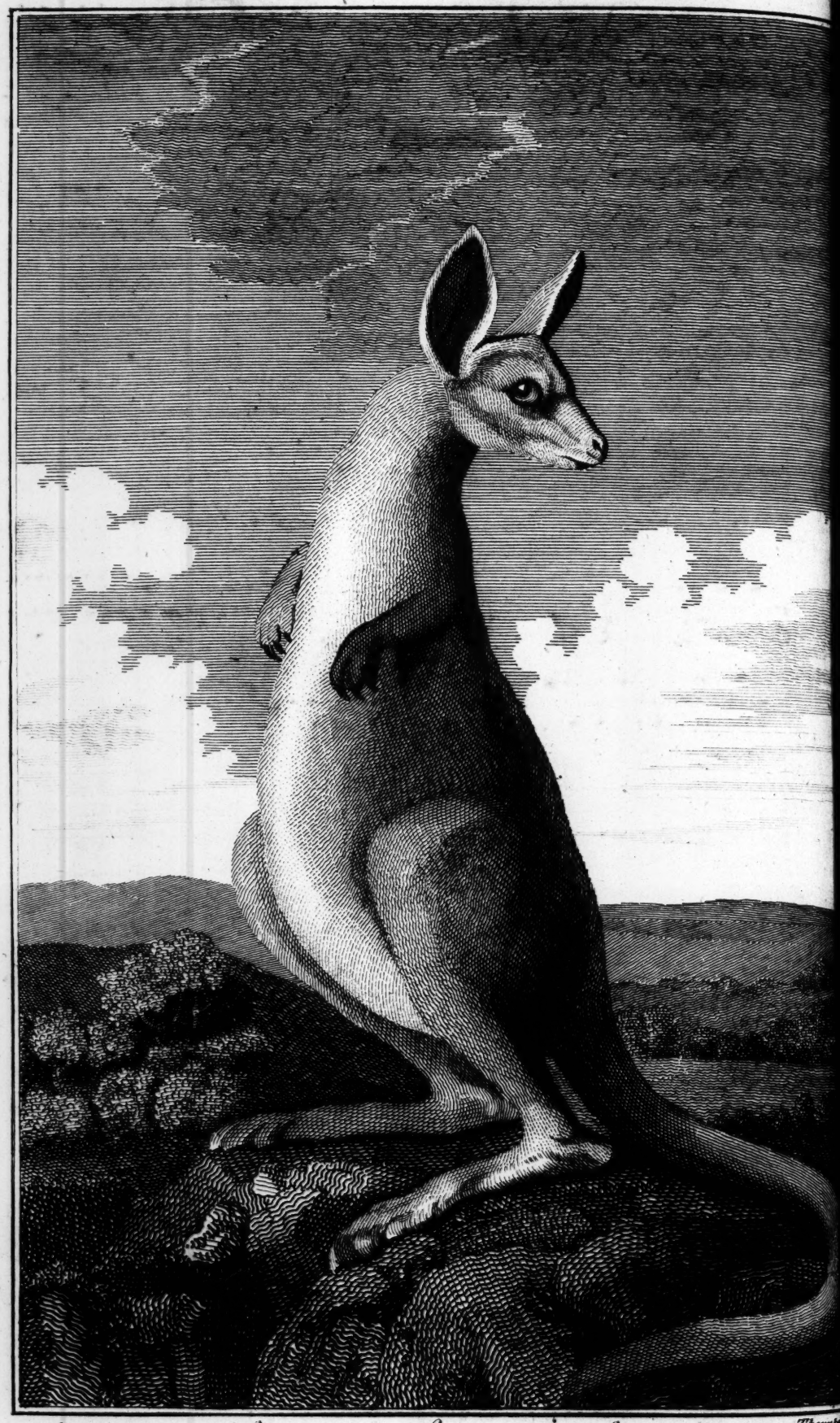
ON Monday, the 18th, in the morning, we erected a tent for the ſick, who were brought on ſhore as ſoon as it was ready for their reception. We likewiſe built

built a ſtage from the ſhip to the ſhore, and ſet up a tent to hold the proviſions and ſtores, that were landed the ſame day. The boat was now diſpatched in ſearch of fiſh for the refreſhment of the ſick, but ſhe returned without getting any; but Tupia employed himſelf in angling, and living entirely upon what he caught, recovered his health very faſt. In an excurſion Mr. Banks made up the country, he ſaw the frames of ſeveral huts, and Capt. Cook having aſcended one of the higheſt hills, obſerved the land to be ſtoney and barren, and the low land near the river over-run with mangroves, among which the ſalt-water flowed every tide.

Tueſday, the 19th, the ſmith's forge was ſet up, and the armourer prepared the neceſſary iron-work for the repair of the veſſel. The officers ſtores, ballaſt, water, &c. were likewiſe ordered out, in order to lighten the ſhip. This day Mr. Banks croſſed the river to view the country, which he obſerved to be little elſe than ſand hills. He ſaw vaſt flocks of pigeons, moſt beautiful birds, of which he ſhot ſeveral. On Wedneſday the 20th, as we were removing the coals, the water ruſhed in, near the foremaſt, about three feet from the keel; ſo that it was reſolved to clear the hold entirely; which being done on Friday the 22nd, we warped the ſhip higher up the harbour, to a ſtation more proper for laying her aſhore, in order to ſtop the leak. Early in the morning, the tide having left her, we proceeded to examine the leak, when it appeared that the rocks had cut through four planks into the timbers, and that three other planks were damaged. In theſe breaches not a ſplinter was to be ſeen, the whole being ſmooth as if cut away by an inſtrument: but it was the will of an omnipotent being, that the veſſel ſhould be preſerved by a very ſingular circumſtance: for though one of the holes was large enough to have ſunk her, even with eight pumps conſtantly at work, yet this inlet to our deſtruction was partly ſtopped up, by a fragment of the rock being left ſticking therein. We likewiſe found ſome pieces of the oakham, wool, &c. which had got between the timbers,

and

London: Published by Alex.r Hogg at the Kings Arms N.o 16 Paternoster Row.



An Animal found on the Coast of NEW HOLLA
called KANGUROO.

Thornto

and ſtopped thoſe parts of the leak that the ſtone had left open. Excluſive of the leak, great damage was done to various parts of the ſhip's bottom. While the ſmiths were employed in making nails and bolts, the carpenters began to work on the veſſel; and ſome of the people were ſent on the other ſide of the river to ſhoot pigeons for the ſick. They found a ſtream of freſh water, ſeveral inhabitants of the Indians, and ſaw a mouſe-coloured animal, exceeding ſwift, and about the ſize of a greyhound.

On Saturday the 23d, a boat was diſpatched to haul the ſeine, and returned at noon with only three fiſh, and yet we ſaw them in plenty leaping about the harbour. This day many of the crew ſaw the animal above-mentioned; and one of the ſeamen declared he had ſeen the devil, which John thus deſcribed, "He was, ſays he, as large as a one gallon keg, and very like it: he had horns and wings, yet he crept ſo ſlowly through the graſs, that if I had not been afeard, I might have touched him." This formidable apparition we afterwards diſcovered to have been a batt, which we muſt acknowledge has a frightful appearance, it being black, and full as large as a partridge; but the man's own apprehenſions had furniſhed his devil with horns.

Sunday, Mr. Gore and a party of men ſent out with him, procured a bunch or two of wild plantains, and a few palm cabbages, for the refreſhment of the ſick: and this day the Captain and Mr. Banks ſaw the animal already mentioned. It had a long tail that it carried like a greyhound, leaped like a deer, and the point of its foot reſembled that of a goat. The repairs of the ſhip on the ſtarboard ſide having been finiſhed the preceding day, the carpenters now began to work under her larboard bow; and being examined abaft it appeared ſhe had received very little injury in that quarter. Mr. Banks having removed his whole collection of plants into the bread room, they were this day under water, by which ſome of them were totally deſtroyed; however by great care moſt of them were reſtored to a ſtate of preſervation. A plant was found this day, the 25th, the leaves of which were almoſt as good as

ſpinnage;

ſpinnage; alſo a fruit of a deep purple colour, and the ſize of a golden pippin, which after having been kept a few days taſted like a damſon. On Tueſday, the 26th, the carpenter was engaged in caulking the ſhip, and the men in other neceſſary buſineſs; and on the 27th the armourer continued to work at the forge, and the carpenter on the ſhip; while the captain made ſeveral hauls with the large net, but caught only between twenty and thirty fiſh, which were diſtributed among the ſick, and thoſe who were not yet quite recovered. We began this day to move ſome of the weight from the after-part of the ſhip forward, to eaſe her. On the 28th, Mr. Banks with ſome ſeamen went up into the country, to whom he ſhewed a plant which ſerved them for greens, and which the inhabitants of the Weſt-Indies call Indian Kale. Here we ſaw a tree notched for climbing; alſo neſts of white ants from a few inches to five feet in height; prints of mens feet, and the tracks of three or four animals were likewiſe diſcovered.

On Friday the 29th, at two o'clock in the morning, Capt. Cook with Mr. Green, obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite: the time here was 2 hours 18 min. 53 ſec. which makes the longitude of this place 214 deg. 42 min. 30 ſec. W. and the latitude 15 deg. 26 min. S. At dawn of day the boat was ſent out to haul for fiſh, and took what made an allowance of one pound and a half to each man. One of our midſhipmen, this day abroad with his gun, reported, that he had ſeen a wolf, reſembling exactly the ſame ſpecies in America, at which he ſhot, but could not kill it. The next morning, being the 30th, the captain aſcended a hill to take a view of the ſea, when he obſerved innumerable ſand banks and ſhoals, in every direction; but to the northward there was an appearance of a paſſage, which ſeemed the only way to ſteer clear of the ſurrounding dangers, eſpecially as the wind blows conſtantly from the S. E. Mr. Gore ſaw this day two ſtraw coloured animals of the ſize of a hare, but ſhaped like a dog. In the afternoon the people returned with ſuch a quantity of fiſh, that two pounds and a half were diſtributed to each man; and plenty of greens

had

had been gathered, which when boiled with peas made an excellent meſs, and we all thought this day's fare an unſpeakable refreſhment.

On Sunday, the 1ſt of July, all the crew had permiſſion to go on ſhore, except one from each meſs, part of whom were again ſent out with the ſeine, and were again equally ſucceſsful. Some of our people who went up in the country, gave an account of their having ſeen ſeveral animals, and a fire about a mile up the river. On Tueſday the 3d, the maſter, who had been ſent in the pinnace, returned, and reported, that he had found a paſſage out to ſea, between ſhoals which conſiſted of coral rocks, many whereof were dry at low water. He found ſome cockles ſo large, that one of them was more than ſufficient for two men; likewiſe plenty of other ſhell-fiſh, of which he brought a ſupply to the ſhip, in his return to which he had landed in a bay where ſome Indians were at ſupper; but they inſtantly retired, leaving ſome ſea eggs by a fire for dreſſing them. This day we made another attempt to float the ſhip, and happily ſucceeded at high water; when we found, that by the poſition ſhe had lain in, one of her planks was ſprung, ſo that it was again neceſſary to lay her aſhore. An alligator ſwam by her ſeveral times at high water.

Wedneſday the 4th was employed in trimming her upon an even keel, warping her over, and laying her down on a ſand-bank, on the ſouth ſide of the river; and on the next day, the 5th, ſhe was again floated, and moored off the beach, in order to receive the ſtores on board. This day we croſſed the harbour, and found on a ſandy beach a great number of fruits, not diſcovered before; among others a cocoa-nut, which Tupia ſaid had been opened by a crab, and was judged to be what the Dutch call Beurs Krabbe. The vegetable ſubſtances which Mr. Banks picked up were encruſted with marine productions, and covered with barnacles, a proof of their having been tranſplanted, probably from Terra del Eſperito Santo. This gentleman with a party having ſailed up the river on the 6th, to make an excurſion up the country, returned on the

8th. Having followed the courſe of the river, they found it at length contracted into a narrow channel, bounded by ſteep banks, adorned with trees of a moſt beautiful appearance, among which was the bark tree. The land was low and covered with graſs, and ſeemed capable of being cultivated to great advantage. The night, though we had made a fire on the banks of the river, was rendered extremely diſagreeable by the ſtings of the muſquitos, that cauſe an almoſt intolerable torment. Going in purſuit of game, we ſaw four animals, two of which were chaſed by Mr. Banks's greyhound, but they greatly outſtripped him in ſpeed, by leaping over the long thick graſs, which incommoded the dog in running. It was obſerved of the animals, that they bounded forward on two legs inſtead of running on four. Having returned to the boat we proceeded up the river, till it contracted to a brook of freſh water, but in which the tide roſe conſiderably. Having ſtopped to paſs the night, with hope of ſome reſt, we ſaw a ſmoke at a diſtance, on which three of us approached it, but the Indians were gone. We ſaw the impreſſions of feet on the ſand, below high-water mark, and found a fire ſtill burning in the hollow of an old tree. At a ſmall diſtance were ſeveral huts, and we obſerved ovens dug in the ground: the remains of a recent meal were likewiſe apparent. We now retired to our reſting-place, and ſlept on plantain leaves, with a bunch of graſs for our pillows, on the ſide of a ſand-bank, under the ſhelter of a buſh. The tide favouring our return in the morning, we loſt no time in getting back to the ſhip. The maſter, who had been ſeven leagues at ſea, returned ſoon after Mr. Banks, bringing with him three turtles, which he took with a boat-hook, and which together weighed near eight hundred pounds. He was ſent out next morning, and Mr. Banks accompanied him with proper inſtruments for catching turtle: but not being ſucceſsful, he would not go back that night, ſo that Mr. Banks, after collecting ſome ſhells and marine productions, returned in his own ſmall boat. In the morning the ſecond lieutenant was ſent to bring the maſter back, ſoon after which four Indians,

dians, in a ſmall canoe, were within ſight. The captain now determined to take no notice of theſe people, as the moſt likely way to be noticed by them. This project anſwered; two of them came within muſquet ſhot of the veſſel, where they converſed very loud; in return, the people on board ſhouted, and made ſigns of invitation. The Indians gradually approached, with their lances held up; not in a menacing manner, but as if they meant to intimate that they were capable of defending themſelves. They came almoſt along-ſide, when the captain threw them cloth, nails, paper, &c. which did not ſeem to attract their notice, at length one of the ſailors threw a ſmall fiſh, which ſo pleaſed them, that they hinted their deſigns of bringing their companions, and immediately rowed for the ſhore. In the interim, Tupia and ſome of the crew landed on the oppoſite ſhore. The four Indians now came quite along-ſide the ſhip, and having received farther preſents, landed where Tupia and the ſailors had gone. They had each two lances, and a ſtick with which they threw them. Advancing towards the Engliſh, Tupia perſuaded them to lay down their arms, and ſit by him, which they readily did. Others of the crew now going on ſhore, the Indians ſeemed jealous, leſt they ſhould get between them and their arms, but care was taken to convince them that no ſuch thing was intended, and more trifles were preſented to them. The crew ſtaid with them till dinner-time, and then made ſigns of invitation for them to go to the ſhip and eat; but this they declined, and retired in their canoe. Theſe men were of the common ſtature, with very ſmall limbs; their complexion was of a deep chocolate; their hair black, either lank or curled, but not of the woolly kind; the breaſts and upper lip of one of them were painted with ſtreaks of white, which he called carbanda, and ſome part of their bodies had been painted red. Their teeth were white and even, their eyes bright, and their features rather pleaſing; their voices muſical, and they repeated ſeveral Engliſh words with great readineſs.

The next morning, the viſit of three of theſe Indians was renewed, and they brought with them a

fourth, whom they called Yaparico, who appeared to be a perſon of ſome conſequence. The bone of a bird, about ſix inches long, was thruſt through the griſtle of his noſe; and indeed all the inhabitants of this place had their noſes bored, for the reception of ſuch an ornament. Theſe people being all naked, the captain gave one of them an old ſhirt, which he bound round his head like a turban, inſtead of uſing it to cover any part of his body. They brought a fiſh to the ſhip, which was ſuppoſed to be in payment for that given them the day before: after ſtaying ſome time with apparent ſatisfaction, they ſuddenly leaped into their canoe, and rowed off, from a jealouſy of ſome of the gentlemen who were examining it.

On the 12th of July, three Indians viſited Tupia's tent, and after remaining ſome time, went for two others, whom they introduced by name. Some fiſh was offered them, but they ſeemed not much to regard it; after eating a little, they gave the remainder to Mr. Banks's dog. Some ribbands which had been given them, to which medals were ſuſpended round their necks, were ſo changed by ſmoke, that it was difficult to judge what colour they had been, and the ſmoke had made their ſkins look darker than their natural colour, from whence it was thought that they had ſlept cloſe to their fires, as a preventative againſt the ſting of the muſquitos. Both the ſtrangers had bones through their noſes, and a piece of bark tied over their foreheads; and one of them had an ornament of ſtrings round his arm; and an elegant necklace made of ſhells. Their canoe was about ten feet long, and calculated to hold four perſons, and when it was in ſhallow water they moved it by the help of poles. Their lances had only a ſingle point, and ſome of them were barbed with fiſh-bones. On the 14th Mr. Gore ſhot one of the mouſe-coloured animals above-mentioned. It chanced to be a young one, weighing more than 38 pounds; but when they are full grown, they are as large as a ſheep. The ſkin of this beaſt which is called Kangaroo, is covered with ſhort fur, and is of a dark mouſe colour; the head and ears are ſomewhat like thoſe of a hare;

hare; this animal was dreſſed for dinner, and proved fine eating. The ſhip's crew fed on turtle almoſt every day, which were finer than thoſe eaten in England, owing to their being killed before their natural fat was waſted, and their juices changed.

On the 17th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went with the captain into the woods, and ſaw four Indians in a canoe, who went on ſhore, and walked up without ſign of fear. They accepted ſome beads, and departed, intimating that they did not chuſe to be followed. The natives being now become familiar with the ſhip's crew, one of them was deſired to throw his lance, which he did with ſuch dexterity and force, that though it was not above four feet from the ground at the higheſt, it penetrated deeply into a tree at the diſtance of fifty yards. The natives now came on board the ſhip, and were well pleaſed with their entertainment.

On the 19th, we ſaw ſeveral of the women, who, as well as the men, were quite naked. We were this day viſited by ten Indians, who ſeemed reſolved to have one of the turtles that was on board, which they repeatedly made ſigns for, and being as repeatedly refuſed, they expreſſed the utmoſt rage and reſentment, one of them in particular, having received a denial from Mr. Banks, he ſtamped, and puſhed him away in a moſt violent manner. At length they laid hands on two of the turtles, and drew them to the ſide of the ſhip where the canoe lay, but the ſailors took them away. They made ſeveral ſimilar attempts, but being equally unſucceſsful, they leaped ſuddenly into their canoe, and rowed off. At this inſtant the captain, with Mr Banks, and five or ſix of the ſeamen, went on ſhore, where they arrived before the Indians, and where many of the crew were already employed. As ſoon as the Indians landed, one of them ſnatched a fire brand from under a pitch-kettle, and running to the windward of what effects were left on ſhore, ſet fire to the dry graſs, which burned rapidly, ſcorched a pig to death, burned part of the ſmith's forge, and would have deſtroyed a tent of Mr. Banks, but that ſome people came from the ſhip juſt in time to get it out of the way

way of the flames. In the mean while the Indians went to a place where the fiſhing-nets lay, and a quantity of linen was laid out to dry, and there again ſet fire to the graſs, in ſpite of all perſuaſion, and even of threats. A muſquet loaded with ſmall ſhot was fired, and one of them being wounded, they ran away, and this ſecond fire was extinguiſhed: but the other burned far into the woods.

The Indians ſtill continued in ſight, a muſquet charged with ball was fired, the report only of which ſent them out of ſight; but their voices being heard in the woods, the captain with a few people went to meet them. Both parties ſtopped when in ſight of each other; at which time an old Indian advanced before the reſt a little way, but ſoon halted, and after having ſpoke ſome words, which we could not underſtand, he retreated to his companions, and they all retired ſlowly in a body. Having found means to ſeize ſome of their darts, we continued following them about a mile, and then ſat down upon ſome rocks, the Indians ſitting down alſo about an hundred yards from us. The old man again came forward, having a lance without a point in his hand; he ſtopped ſeveral times at different diſtances, and ſpoke, whereupon the captain made ſigns of friendſhip, which they anſwered. The old man now returned, and ſpoke aloud to his companions, who placed their lances againſt a tree, and came forward in a friendly manner. When they came up to us, we returned the darts we had taken, and we perceived with great ſatisfaction, that this rendered the reconciliation complete. In this party were four perſons whom we had not ſeen before, who, as uſual, were introduced to us by name, but the man who had been wounded in the attempt to burn our nets, was not among them. Having received from us ſome trinkets, they walked amicably towards the coaſt, intimating by ſigns, that they would not fire the graſs again. When we came oppoſite the ſhip they ſat down, but we could not prevail with them to go on board. They accepted a few muſquet balls, the uſe and effect of which the captain endeavoured to explain. We then left them;

and when arrived at the ſhip, we ſaw the woods burning at the diſtance of two miles. We had no conception of the fury with which graſs would burn in this hot climate, nor of the difficulty of extinguiſhing it; but we determined, that if it ſhould ever again be neceſſary for us to pitch our tents in ſuch a ſituation, our firſt work ſhould be to clear the ground round us.

Friday the 20th, our ſhip being ready for ſea, the maſter was ſent in ſearch of a paſſage to the northward, but could not find any; while the captain ſounded and buoyed the bar. This day we ſaw not any Indians; but the hills for many miles were on fire, which at night made an appearance truly ſublime. On the 22nd, we killed a turtle, through both ſhoulders of which ſtuck a wooden harpoon, near fifteen inches long, bearded at the end, and about the thickneſs of a man's finger, reſembling ſuch as we had ſeen among the natives. The turtle appeared to have been ſtruck a conſiderable time, for the wound was perfectly healed. On the 24th, one of the ſailors, who with others had been ſent to gather kale, having ſtrayed from the reſt, fell in with four Indians at dinner. He was at firſt much alarmed, but had prudence enough to conceal his apprehenſions; and ſitting down by them gave them his knife, which having examined, they returned. He would then have left them; but they ſeemed diſpoſed to detain him, till, by feeling his hands and face, they were convinced he was made of fleſh and blood like themſelves. They treated him with great civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made ſigns that he might depart. When he left them, not taking the direct way to the ſhip, they came from the fire and ſhewed him the neareſt way; from whence we concluded, that they well knew from whence he came. We may here obſerve, that the language of theſe people ſeemed to us more harſh than that of the iſlanders in the South-Sea. They were continually repeating the word chercau, a term as we imagined of admiration. They alſo cried out, when they ſaw any thing new, cher, tut, tut, tut, tut! which probably was a ſimilar expreſſion. Mr. Banks having gone on ſhore in ſearch of plants, found

found the cloth which had been diſtributed among the natives, lying in a heap, as uſeleſs lumber. Indeed they ſeemed to ſet very little value upon any thing we had except our turtle, a commodity we were leaſt inclined and able to ſpare.

Tueſday the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returning from the woods, through a deep valley, found lying on the ground ſeveral marking nuts, the Anacardium orientale: but they ſought in vain for the tree that bore them. On the 26th, as Mr. Banks was again ſearching the country to enrich his natural hiſtory, he took an animal of the opoſſum kind, with two young ones. On the 27th, Mr. Gore ſhot a Kanguroo, which weighed eighty-four pounds, though not at its full growth. When dreſſed on the 28th, we found it had a much worſe flavour than that we had eaten before.

Sunday the 29th, we got the anchor up, and made all ready to put to ſea. A boat was ſent out to aſcertain what water was upon the bar; when returned, the officer reported, that there was only thirteen feet, which was ſix inches leſs than the ſhip drew. We therefore this day gave up all hopes of ſailing. Monday the 30th, we had freſh gales with hazy weather and rain, till Tueſday the 31ſt, at two in the morning, when the weather became more moderate. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable good ſucceſs, bringing in at different times a turtle, and from two to three hundred weight of fiſh.

On Wedneſday the 1ſt of Auguſt, the pumps were examined by the carpenter, who found them all in a ſtate of decay, and ſome quite rotten, owing, as he ſaid, to the ſap having been left in the wood: but as the ſhip admitted only an inch of water in an hour, we hoped ſhe was ſtout enough, and truſted to her ſoundneſs.

On Saturday the 4th, at ſeven o'clock in the morning, we once more got under ſail, and put to ſea. We ſtood off E. by N. with the pinnace a-head to keep ſounding. About noon we came to an anchor, when the harbour from whence we had ſailed bore S. 70 W. diſtant about five leagues. The captain here named the northermoſt point

point of land in ſight Cape Bedford, and the harbour we had quitted Endeavour River. Our latitude by obſervation was now 15 deg. 32 min. S. Endeavour River is only a ſmall bar harbour, or creek, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues inland. The depth of water for ſhipping is not more than a mile within the bar, and only on the north-ſide. At the new and full of the moon, it is high-water between nine and ten o'clock. It muſt alſo be remembered, that this part of the coaſt is ſo barricaded with ſhoals, as to make the harbour very difficult of acceſs: the ſafeſt approach is from the ſouthward, keeping the main land cloſe upon the board all the way. Over the ſouth point is ſome high land, but the north point is formed by a low ſandy beach. The proviſions we procured in this harbour conſiſted of turtle, oyſters of different ſorts, cavalhe or ſcomber, flat fiſh, ſkate or ray fiſh, purſlain, wild beans, and cabbage-palms. Of quadrupedes, there are goats, wolves, pole-cats, a ſpotted animal of the viverra kind, and ſeveral kinds of ſerpents, ſome of which only are venomous. Dogs are the only tame animals. The land fowls are kites, crows, hawks, loriquets, cockatoos, parrots, pigeons, and ſmall birds of various ſorts, the names of which we could not learn. The water fowls are wild geeſe, curlieus, hens, whiſtling ducks that perch on trees, and ſome few others. The ſoil of the hills, though ſtoney, produces coarſe graſs beſides wood, that of the valleys is in general well cloathed, and has the appearance of fertility. The trees here are of various ſorts, of which the gum trees are the moſt common. On each ſide of the river are mangroves, which in ſome parts extend a mile within the coaſt. The country is well watered, and ant-hills are every where in great numbers.

On Saturday the 4th, Capt. Cook went up to the maſt-head to look at ſome dangerous ſhoals, ſeveral of which he ſaw above the water. This day ſuch a quantity of fiſh was caught, as allowed a dividend of two pounds to each man. During the ſix following days we attempted to ſail between the ſhoals and breakers, by which we were every way ſurrounded. On the 10th

we were between a head land and three iſlands, which had been diſcovered the preceding day. We now entertained hopes of being out of danger; but this not proving to be the caſe, we called the head-land Cape Flattery. Some land was now diſcovered, and was generally taken for the main; but in the captain's opinion a cluſter of iſlands. Upon this diverſity of ſentiments it was reſolved to bring the ſhip to an anchor. This done, the captain landed, and from a high point took a ſurvey of the ſea-coaſt, by which he was confirmed in his conjecture. On the point where he ſtood were ſeen the prints of human feet, in white ſand of an exquiſite fineneſs; and the place was named Point Lookout. To the northward of this the coaſt appeared to be ſhoal and flat, for a conſiderable diſtance, which did not encourage our hope, that the channel we had hitherto found in with the land would continue.

On Saturday the 11th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Capt. Cook went to viſit the largeſt of the three iſlands, and having gained the ſummit of the higheſt hill, they beheld a reef of rocks, whereon the ſea broke in a frightful manner; but the hazy weather preventing a perfect view, they lodged under a buſh during the night, and next day ſeeing what had the appearance of a channel between the reefs, one of the mates on the 12th, was ſent out in the pinnace to examine it; and at noon returned, having found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathom of water; but it blew ſo hard, that the mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which he ſaid appeared to be very narrow; but the captain judged he had ſeen them to a diſadvantage. While buſy in his ſurvey, Mr. Banks was attentive to his favourite purſuit, and collected many plants he had not before ſeen. This iſland, viſible at twelve leagues diſtance, and in general barren, we found to be about eight leagues in circumference. There are ſome ſandy bays and low-land on the N. W. ſide, which is covered with long graſs, and trees of the ſame kind with thoſe on the main; lizards of a very large ſize alſo abounded, ſome of which we took. We found alſo freſh water in two places; one running ſtream, cloſe to the

the ſea, was a little brackiſh; the other was a ſtanding pool perfectly ſweet. We were ſurprized to ſee, that, notwithſtanding the diſtance of this iſland from the main, it was ſometimes viſited by the Indians from thence; as was plain from ſeven or eight frames of their huts which we found. All theſe were built on eminences, and from their ſituation, we judged, that the weather here, at certain ſeaſons, is invariably calm and mild. On our return to the ſhip, the captain named this place the Lizard Iſland, on account of our having ſeen no other animals but lizards. When returning, we landed on a low ſandy iſland, upon which were birds of various kinds. We took a neſt of young eagles, and therefore called the place Eagle Iſland. We found alſo a neſt of ſome other bird, of a moſt enormous ſize: it was made with ſticks upon the ground, and was not leſs than ſix and twenty feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. We perceived that this place alſo had been viſited by the Indians. During our abſence from the ſhip, the maſter had landed on ſeveral low iſlands, where he had ſeen great heaps of turtle ſhells, and found the fins of them, which the Indians had left hanging on the trees, ſo freſh, that they were dreſſed and eaten by the boat's crew.

On Sunday the 12th, the officers held a conſultation, and we were unanimous in opinion, that it would be beſt to quit the coaſt altogether, till we could approach it with leſs danger; in conſequence of which concurrent opinion, we ſailed on Monday the 13th, and got through one of the channels in the reef, happy at finding ourſelves once more in the open ſea, after having been ſurrounded by dreadful ſhoals and rocks for near three months. We had now ſailed above 1000 miles, during which run we had been obliged to keep ſounding, without the intermiſſion of a ſingle minute; a circumſtance which, it is ſuppoſed, never happened to any ſhip but the Endeavour. The paſſage through which we paſſed into the open ſea beyond the reef, is in latitude 14 deg. 32 min. S. and may always be known by the three high iſlands within it, which Capt. Cook called the Iſlands of Direction, becauſe by theſe

a ſtranger may find a ſafe channel through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Iſland N. E. half N. diſtant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and much the ſame in length. The iſlands abound in turtle and other fiſh, and on the beach we found bamboos, cocoa-nuts, pumice-ſtone, and the ſeeds of plants, ſuppoſed to be wafted thither by the trade winds, as the plants themſelves are not natives of the country.

On Tueſday the 14th, we anchored, and by obſervation, our latitude was 13 deg. 46 min. S. and at this time we had no land in ſight. On the 15th we ſteered a weſterly courſe, in order to get ſight of land, that we might not overſhoot the paſſage, if a paſſage there was between this land and New Guinea. Early in the afternoon we had ſight of land, which had the appearance of hilly iſlands, but it was judged to be part of the main, and we ſaw breakers between the veſſel and the land, in which there was an opening; to get clear, we ſet all our ſails, and ſtood to the northward till midnight, and then went on a ſouthward tack for about two miles, when the breeze died away to a dead calm. When day-light came on we ſaw a dreadful ſurf break at a vaſt height, within a mile of the ſhip, towards which the rolling waves carried her with great rapidity. Thus diſtreſſed, the boats were ſent a-head to tow, and the head of the veſſel was brought about, but not till ſhe was within a hundred yards of the rock, between which and her there was nothing left but the chaſm, and which had riſen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock; but in the moment we expected inſtant deſtruction, a breeze, hardly diſcernable, aided the boats in getting the veſſel in an oblique direction from the rock. The hopes, however, afforded by this providential circumſtance, were deſtroyed by a perfect calm, which ſucceeded in a few minutes; yet the breeze once more returned, before we had loſt the little ground which had been gained. At this time a ſmall opening was ſeen in the reef, and a young officer being ſent to examine it, found that its breadth did not much exceed the length of the ſhip, but that there was ſmooth water on the

other

other ſide of the rocks. Animated by the deſire of preſerving life, we now attempted to paſs the opening; but this was impoſſible; for it having become high-water in the interim, the ebb tide ruſhed through it with amazing impetuoſity, carrying the ſhip about a quarter of a mile from the reef, and ſhe ſoon reached the diſtance of near two miles, by the help of the boats. When the ebb tide was ſpent, the tide of flood again drove the veſſel very near the rocks, ſo that our proſpect of deſtruction was renewed, when we diſcovered another opening, and a light breeze ſpringing up, we entered it, and were driven through it, with a rapidity that prevented the ſhip from ſtriking againſt either ſide of the channel. The ſhip now came to an anchor, and our crew were grateful for having regained a ſtation, which they had been very lately moſt anxious to quit. The name of Providence Channel was given to the opening through which the ſhip had thus eſcaped the moſt imminent dangers. A high promontory on the main land in ſight, was denominated Cape Weymouth, and a bay near it Weymouth Bay. This day the boats went out to fiſh, and met with great ſucceſs, particularly in catching cockles, ſome of which were of ſuch an amazing ſize, as to require the ſtrength of two men to move them. Mr. Banks likewiſe ſucceeded in his ſearch for rare ſhells, and different kinds of coral.

On the 18th, we diſcovered ſeveral ſmall iſlands, which were called Forbes's Iſlands, and had a ſight of a high point of land on the main, which was named the Bolt Head. On the 19th, we diſcovered ſeveral other ſmall iſlands, the land of which was low, barren, and ſandy. A point was ſeen, and called Cape Grenville, and a bay which took the name of Temple Bay. In the afternoon many other iſlands were ſeen, which were denominated Bird Iſles, from their being frequented by numerous flocks of birds. On the 20th, many more ſmall iſlands were ſeen, on one of which were a few trees, and ſeveral Indian huts, ſuppoſed to have been erected by the natives of the main land, as temporary habitations during their viſit to theſe iſlands. On the 21ſt we ſailed through a channel, in which was a number of ſhoals;

and

and gave the name of York Cape to a point of the main land which forms the ſide of the channel. A large bay is formed to the ſouth of the cape, which was called Newcaſtle Bay, and in which are ſeveral little iſlands; on the north-ſide of the cape the land is rather mountainous, but the low parts of the country abound with trees; the iſlands diſcovered in the morning of this day, were called York Iſles. In the afternoon we anchored between ſome iſlands, and obſerved, that the channel now began to grow wider; we perceived two diſtant points, between which no land could be ſeen, ſo that the hope of having at length explored a paſſage into the Indian Sea, began to animate every breaſt; but, to bring the matter to a certainty, the captain took a party, and being accompanied by Meſſrs. Solander and Banks, they landed on an iſland, on which they had ſeen a number of Indians, ten of whom were on a hill, one of them carrying a bow and a bundle of arrows, the reſt armed with lances; and round the necks of two of them hung ſtrings of mother of pearl. Three of theſe Indians ſtood on ſhore, as if to oppoſe the landing of the boat, but they retired before it reached the beach. The captain and his company now aſcended a hill, from whence they had a view of near forty miles, in which ſpace there was nothing that threatened to oppoſe their paſſage, ſo that the certainty of a channel ſeemed to be almoſt indubitable. Previous to their leaving the iſland, Capt. Cook diſplayed the Engliſh colours, and took poſſeſſion of all the eaſtern coaſt of the country, from the 38th deg. of S. latitude to the preſent ſpot, by the name of New South Wales, for his ſovereign the King of Great Britain: and three volleys of ſmall arms being fired, and anſwered by an equal number from the Endeavour, the place received the name of Poſſeſſion Iſland. The next morning we ſaw three naked women collecting ſhell-fiſh on the beach; and weighing anchor, gave the name of Cape Cornwall to the extreme point of the largeſt iſland on the north-weſt ſide of the paſſage: ſome low iſlands near the middle of the channel receiving the name of Wallis's Iſle; ſoon after which the ſhip came to an anchor, and the long-boat was ſent

out

out to ſound. Towards evening we ſailed again, and the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a ſmall iſland which was frequented by immenſe numbers of birds, the majority of which being boobies, the place received the name of Booby Iſland. We were now advanced to the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the ſatisfaction of viewing the open ſea to the weſtward. The N. E. entrance of the paſſage is formed by the main land of New Holland, and by a number of iſlands, which took the name of the Prince of Wales's Iſlands, and which Capt. Cook imagines may reach to New Guinea; theſe iſlands abound with trees and graſs, and were known to be inhabited, from the ſmoke that was ſeen aſcending in many places.

To the paſſage we had ſailed through, Capt. Cook gave the name of Endeavour Streights. New South Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto known, and not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe, which is proved by the Endeavour's having coaſted more than 2000 miles, even if her tract were reduced to a ſtrait line. Northward of the latitude of 33 deg. the country is hilly, yet not mountainous; but to the ſouthward of that latitude, it is moſtly low and even ground. The hills in general are diverſified by lawns and woods, and many of the valleys abound with herbage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a fertile country. To the northward the graſs is not ſo rich, nor the trees ſo high as in the ſouthern parts, and almoſt every where, even the largeſt trees grow at a diſtance of not leſs than thirteen yards aſunder. In all theſe places where the land forms a bay, the ſhore is covered with mangroves, that grow about a mile in land, in a ſwampy ground, which the ſpring tides always overflow; in ſome parts there are bogs, covered with thick graſs, and plenty of under-wood in the valleys; the ſoil in general ſeems unfit for cultivation, though there are many ſpots where the arts of tillage might be attended with ſucceſs. There are ſeveral ſalt creeks, running in many directions through the country, where there are alſo brooks of freſh water, but there are no rivers of any conſiderable extent; yet it ſeemed to be well watered,

watered, as the time when the ſhip was on the coaſt was reckoned the drieſt ſeaſon of the year. The gum-tree yields a reſin like the dragons blood. Here are three kinds of palm-trees, two of which are found only in the northern diſtrict. Nuts ſomewhat reſembling cheſnuts are produced by one of theſe, which were ſuppoſed to be eatable, yet ſome of the ſeamen having made free with them were taken very ill; two of whom died within a week, and it was not without difficulty that the third was recovered. The ſecond ſort of palm is much like the Weſt Indian cabbage-tree, which yields a cabbage of an agreeable taſte. The third ſort abounds in the ſouthern part, and produces a ſmall cabbage of a very agreeable flavour, with many nuts, which furniſh food for hogs. There is likewiſe a tree on which grows a purple apple that taſtes like a damoſcene, as we have before obſerved. Beſides theſe there is a fig-tree, producing figs, but not of the fineſt ſort, and they have another which bears a ſort of plumb that is flat on the ſides like a cheeſe. A plant was found here, the leaves of which were like thoſe of the bulruſh; it yields a bright yellow reſin, that reſembles gumbouge, but does not ſtain—it had a very agreeable ſmell. We found two ſorts of yams, the one round and covered with ſtringy fibres, the other in ſhape like a radiſh; both of which are of a pleaſant taſte. A fruit of a diſagreeable flavour was found, in ſhape reſembling a pine-apple; and another that was much like a cherry, but had a ſoft kernel. The country produces purſlain and wild parſly. We ſaw here, beſides the beaſt already mentioned, one that was called a quall, the belly of this animal was quite white, its back was brown with white ſpots; and it was like a pole-cat. Vaſt numbers of beautiful pigeons were obſerved, and the ſeamen ſhot many of them, alſo eagles, hawks, cranes, herons, buſtards, crows, parrots, parroquets, cockatoos, and ſome other birds of fine plumage, beſides quails and doves.

In this country there are but few inſects, and the ants and muſquitos are the chief among them. There are four kinds of the former which deſerve particular notice. The firſt of theſe are entirely green, and live on trees,

where they build their neſts in a very curious manner, bending down the leaves, and gluing them together with an animal juice, ſuppoſed to proceed from their own bodies. While ſeveral of theſe animals were buſied in this employ, thouſands were joined to keep the leaf in its proper ſituation, which, when they were diſturbed in their work, flew back with a force that any one would have imagined to be ſuperior to their united ſtrength; at the ſame time they avenged themſelves by ſeverely ſtinging their diſturbers. The ſecond ſpecies of ants here are black, and live in the inſide of the branches, after they have worked out the pith. The third ſort lodged themſelves in the root of a plant that twines round the trunks of other trees. This they made hollow, and cut into a great number of paſſages that ran acroſs each other, yet there was no appearance of the plants having been injured. They are not above half the ſize of the red ants of this country. As to the fourth ſort they are like the Eaſt-Indian white ants, and had one ſort of neſts as big as a half-peck loaf which hung from the boughs of trees, and were compoſed of ſeveral minute parts of vegetables, which appeared to be ſtuck together by the glutinous juice before mentioned. There was a communication between the cells, and paſſages to other neſts upon the ſame tree; they had alſo a hollow covered paſſage to another neſt on the ground, at the root of a different tree. The height of the ground-neſt was found to be about ſix feet, and the breadth nearly the ſame: and the outſide was plaiſtered with clay almoſt two inches thick. Theſe had a ſubterraneous paſſage leading to the roots of the trees near which they were conſtructed, from whence theſe creatures aſcended the trunk and branches by covered ways, calculated for the purpoſe. It was concluded, that the ants reſorted to theſe ground-neſts during the wet ſeaſon, as they were water proof.

Variety of fiſh is ſupplied by the ſeas in theſe parts, among which are mullets, cray-fiſh and crabs. Upon the ſhoals are found the rock, pearl, and other oyſters, as well as the moſt delicate green turtle, beſides thoſe enormous cockles which have been already mentioned.

Alligators are found in the rivers and ſalt creeks. The country does not appear to be inhabited by numbers any way proportioned to its great extent; not above thirty being ever ſeen together but once, which was when thoſe of both ſexes, and all ages got together on a rock off Botany Bay, to view the ſhip. None of their villages conſiſted of more huts than would afford ſhelter for fourteen or fifteen men, and theſe were the largeſt numbers that were aſſembled with a view to attack us. No part of the country appeared to be cultivated, whence there muſt neceſſarily be fewer inhabitants on the inland parts than on the ſea-coaſt. The men are well made, of the middle ſize, and active, in a high degree; but their voices are ſoft, even to effeminacy. Their colour is chocolate; but they were ſo covered with dirt, as to look almoſt as black as negroes. Their hair is naturally long and black, but they commonly cropped it ſhort; in ſome few inſtances it is ſlightly curled, but in common quite ſtrait; it is always matted with dirt, yet wholly free from lice; their beards are thick and buſhy, but kept ſhort by ſingeing. The women were ſeen only at a diſtance, as the men conſtantly left them behind when they croſſed the river. The chief ornament of theſe people is the bone that is thruſt through the noſe, which the ſailors whimſically called their ſprit-ſail yard; but beſides this they wore necklaces formed of ſhells, a ſmall cord tied twice or thrice round the arm between the elbow and ſhoulder, and a ſtring of plaited human hair round the waiſt. Some few of them had an ornament of ſhells hanging acroſs the breaſt. Beſides theſe ornaments they painted their bodies and limbs white and red, in ſtripes of different dimenſions; and they had a circle of white round each eye, and ſpots of it on the face. Their ears were bored, but they did not wear ear-rings. They accepted whatever was given them, but ſeemed to have no idea of making an adequate return; and they would not part with their ornaments for any thing that was offered in exchange. Their bodies were marked with ſcars, which they ſignified were in remembrance of the deceaſed. Their huts were built with ſmall rods,

the

the two ends of which were fixed into the ground, ſo as to form the figure of an oven; they are covered with pieces of bark and palm-leaves. The door of this building, which is only high enough to ſit upright in, is oppoſite to the fire-places. They ſleep with their heels turned up toward their heads; and even in this poſture the hut will not hold more than four people. In the northern parts, where the weather was warmer, one ſide of the houſes was left open, and the other oppoſed to whatever wind might blow at the time there; huts were only built for temporary uſe, and left behind when they removed to other parts of the country; but if their ſtay was only for a night or two, they had no other protection from the weather than what the graſs and buſhes afforded. While the huts on the main land were turned from the wind, thoſe on the iſlands were towards it: a kind of proof that they viſit the iſlands in fine weather, and enjoy the refreſhing breeze while they ſlept. Theſe huts are furniſhed with a kind of bucket for fetching water, made of an oblong piece of bark tied up at each end with the twig of a tree; and this is the only furniture of the houſe. On their backs they have a kind of bag, of the ſize and form of a cabbage-net, in which they carry their fiſh-hooks and lines, of the ſhells of which they make theſe hooks; the ornaments which they wear conſiſt of ſome points of darts, and two or three bits of paint; and in this narrow compaſs lie all their riches. They feed on the kanguroo, and ſeveral kinds of birds when they can catch them; they likewiſe eat yams, and various kinds of fruit; but the principal article of their exiſtence is fiſh. They were frequently obſerved with the leaves of a tree in their mouths, but whether it had the qualities of either tobacco or beetle could not be known; but it was obſerved not to diſcolour the teeth or lips.

From the notches that were ſeen in a great number of trees, for the purpoſe of climbing them, it was imagined that their method of taking the kanguroo, was by ſtriking it with their lances as it paſſed under the tree. In theſe likewiſe, it is probable, that they took birds, while they were rooſting, as they ſeemed too

ſhy to be otherwiſe catched. Their method of producing fire, and extending the flames of it, is very ſingular: having wrought one end of a ſtick into an obtuſe point, they place this point upon a piece of dry wood, and turning the upright ſtick very faſt backward and forward between their hands, fire is ſoon produced, nor is it increaſed with leſs celerity. One of the natives was frequently obſerved to run along the ſea coaſt, leaving fire in various places. The method taken to do this was as follows: before he ſet off, he wrapped up a little ſpark of fire in dry graſs, and the quickneſs of his motion ſoon fanning it into a flame, he then placed it on the ground, and putting a ſpark of it in another bit of graſs ran on again, and increaſed the number of his fires at pleaſure. Theſe fires were ſuppoſed to be intended for the taking of the kanguroo, as that animal was ſo very ſhy of fire, that when purſued by the dogs, it would not croſs places which had been newly burnt, even when the fire was extinguiſhed.

The natives of New South Wales make uſe of ſpears or lances, but theſe are very differently conſtructed: thoſe that were ſeen in the ſouthern parts of the country had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed, and the points were rubbed with a kind of wax, the ſmoothneſs of which made an eaſier paſſage into what was ſtruck by them. On the contrary, the lances in the northern parts have only one point; the ſhafts of them are of different lengths, from eight to fourteen feet, are made of the ſtalk of a plant not unlike a bulruſh, and conſiſts of ſeveral joints let into each other, and tied together. The points of theſe lances are ſometimes made of fiſh-bone, and ſometimes of a hard heavy wood; they are barbed with other pieces of wood or ſtone, ſo that when they have entered any depth in the body, they cannot be drawn out without tearing the fleſh in a ſhocking manner, or leaving ſplinters behind them. When the natives intend to wound at a conſiderable diſtance, they diſcharge this inſtrument with a throwing ſtick, but if the object be near them, it is thrown from the hand only. The throwing-ſtick is a

piece of ſmooth, hard, red wood, half an inch thick, two inches broad, and about three feet in length, having a croſs piece near four inches long at one end, and a ſmall knob at the other. A ſmall hollow is made in the ſhaft of the lance, near the point, and in this hollow the knob is received, but, on being forced forward, it will eaſily ſlip from it. The lance being placed on this throwing-ſtick, the Indian holds it over his ſhoulder, ſhakes it, and then throws both lance and ſtick with his utmoſt power; but as the croſs-piece ſtrikes the ſhoulder the ſudden jerk ſtops the ſtick, while the lance is driven forward with amazing rapidity, and is generally ſo well aimed, that a mark at the diſtance of fifty yards is more certainly ſtruck with it than by a bullet from a gun. Theſe people make uſe of ſhields made of the bark of trees, of about eighteen inches broad, and three feet long. Many trees were ſeen from whence the bark had been taken, and others on which the ſhields were cut out but not taken away. In the northern parts of this country, the canoes are formed by hollowing the trunk of a tree, and it was conjectured, that this operation muſt have been performed by fire, as the natives did not appear to have any inſtruments proper for that purpoſe. The canoes are in length about fourteen feet, and ſo narrow, that they would be frequently overſet, but that they are provided with an out-rigger. The natives row them with paddles, uſing both hands in that employment. The canoes in the ſouthern parts are formed only of a piece of bark four yards long, faſtened together at each end, and the middle kept open by pieces of wood, paſſing from ſide to ſide. In deep water theſe are rowed by paddles, of about a foot and a half in length, the rower having one in each hand, but in ſhallow water they are puſhed forward by means of a long ſtick. As theſe veſſels are extremely light, and draw very little water, the Indians run them on the mud banks in ſearch of ſhell-fiſh, ſome of which, it is probable, they broil and eat as ſoon as they are taken, as it was remarked that in the centre of theſe veſſels there was uſually a fire burning on a quantity of ſea-weed. The natives

have

have no tools but a wooden mallet, a kind of wedge, and an adze, made of ſtone, with ſome pieces of coral and ſhells, which may poſſibly be applied to the purpoſes of cutting. They poliſh the points of their lances, and their throwing-ſticks, with the leaves of a tree that appears to be the wild fig, which bites with a ſharpneſs, almoſt equal to that of a raſp. Four people are the greateſt number that a canoe will contain: and when more than this number were to paſs a river, three were landed out of the firſt freight, and one man went back for the reſt.

The following may ſerve as a ſpecimen of their language,

NEW HOLLAND.	ENGLISH.
Aco,	*The arms.*
Aibudje,	*To yawn.*
Bamma,	*A man.*
Bonjoo,	*The noſe.*
Boota,	*To eat.*
Chucula,	*To drink.*
Cotta,	*A dog.*
Coyor,	*The breaſt.*
Doomboo,	*The neck.*
Dunjo,	*A father.*
Eboorbalga,	*The thumbs.*
Edamal,	*The feet.*
Eiyamoae,	*The crown of the head.*
Eya & ba,	*That or this.*
Galan,	*The ſun.*
Garbar,	*The eye-brows.*
Gippa,	*The belly.*
Kere,	*The ſky.*
Kolke,	*The nails.*
Mailelel,	*To ſwim.*
Maianang,	*Fire.*
Marra,	*To go.*
Mangal,	*The hands.*
Meul,	*The eyes.*
Melea,	*The ears.*
Mingoore,	*To dance.*

Mocoo,

NEW HOLLAND.	ENGLISH.
Mocoo,	*The back.*
Morcol,	*The throat.*
Moree,	*The hear of the head.*
Mootjel,	*A woman.*
Mulere,	*The teeth.*
Nakil,	*The little finger.*
Peegoorga,	*The legs.*
Peete,	*The forehead.*
Poapoa,	*Earth.*
Pongo,	*The knees.*
Poona,	*To ſleep.*
Poorai,	*Water.*
Poteea,	*Fiſh.*
Putai	*A turtle.*
Tabugga,	*A fly.*
Tacal,	*The chin.*
Te,	*A, or the.*
Tennapuke,	*The hole made in the noſtrils for the bone ornament.*
Tocaya,	*Sit down.*
Tumurre,	*A ſun.*
Unjar,	*The tongue.*
Wageegee,	*The head.*
Walloo,	*The temples.*
Waller,	*The beard.*
Walboolbool,	*A butterfly.*
Wonananio,	*Aſleep.*
Wulgar,	*The clouds.*
Yembe,	*The lips.*
Zoocoo,	*Wood.*

Though it appeared evident, that the natives of theſe iſlands waged war with each other, by the weapons they poſſeſſed, yet not a wound received from their enemies appeared on any part of their bodies.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The Endeavour continues her Voyage from South Wales to New Guinea—An Account of Incidents upon landing there—She proceeds from New Guinea to the Iſland of Savu—Tranſactions at this Iſle—Its Produce and Inhabitants, with a Specimen of their Language—Run from Savu to Batavia—Tranſactions while the Endeavour was refitting at this Place.

ON the 23d of Auguſt, 1770, in the afternoon, after leaving Booby Iſland, we had light airs till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a ſoft ſandy bottom. On Friday, the 24th, ſoon after the anchor was weighed, we got under ſail, ſteering N. W. and in a few hours one of the boats a-head made the ſignal for ſhoal-water. We inſtantly brought the ſhip to, with all her ſails ſtanding, and a ſurvey being taken of the ſea around her, it was found that ſhe had met with another narrow eſcape, as ſhe was almoſt encompaſſed with ſhoals, and was likewiſe ſo ſituated between them, that ſhe muſt have ſtruck before the boat's crew had made the ſignal, if ſhe had been half the length of a cable on either ſide. In the afternoon we made ſail with the ebb tide, and got out of danger before ſun-ſet, when we brought to for the night.

On Sunday, the 26th, it was the Captain's intention to ſteer N. W. but having met with thoſe ſhoals, we altered our courſe, and ſoon got into deep water. On the 27th we purſued our voyage, ſhortening ſail at night, and tacking till day-break of the 28th, when we ſteered due N. in ſearch of New Guinea. At this time our latitude by obſervation was 8 deg. 52 min. S. We here obſerved many parts of the ſea covered with a kind of brown ſcum, to which our ſailors gave the name of ſpawn. It is formed of an incredible number of minute particles, each of which, when ſeen through the microſcope, was found to conſiſt of a conſiderable number of tubes, and theſe tubes were

were ſubdivided into little cells. The ſcum being burnt, and yielding no ſmell like what is produced by animal ſubſtances, we concluded it was of the vegetable kind. This has often been ſeen on the coaſt of Brazil, and generally makes its appearance near the land. A bird called the Noddy was found this evening among the rigging of the ſhip. Land having been this day diſcovered from the maſt head, we ſtood off and on all night, and at day-break we ſailed towards it with a briſk gale. Between ſix and ſeven in the morning we had ſight of a ſmall low iſland, at about a league from the main, in latitude 80 deg. 13 min. S. and in longitude 221 deg. 25 min. W. and it has already been diſtinguiſhed by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoyſen. It appeared a very level iſland, clothed with trees, among which is the cocoa-nut; and we judged it to be inhabited by the ſmoke of the fires which were ſeen in different parts of it. The boats were now ſent out to ſound, as the water was ſhallow; but as the ſhip, in ſailing two leagues, had found no increaſe in its depth, ſignals were made for the boats to return on board. We then ſtood out to ſea till midnight, tacked, and ſtood in for land till the morning.

On Thurſday, the 30th, when about four leagues diſtant, we had ſight of it, and its appearance was ſtill flat and woody. Abundance of the brown ſcum was ſtill ſeen on the ſurface of the ſea, and the ſailors, convinced that it was not ſpawn, gave it the whimſical name of ſea-ſaw-duſt. We now held a northward courſe, ſcarcely within ſight of land, and as the water was but juſt deep enough to navigate the veſſel, many unſucceſsful attempts were made to bring her near enough to get on ſhore: it was therefore determined to land in one of the boats, while the ſhip kept plying off and on. In conſequence of this reſolution,

On Monday, Sept. the 3d, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, attended by the boat's crew, and Mr. Banks's ſervant, ſet off from the ſhip in the pinnace, being in all twelve perſons well armed. We rowed directly to the ſhore, but when come within two hundred yards of it, we found the water ſo ſhallow, that we

were obliged to leave the boat, in the care of two of the ſailors, and wade to land. We had no ſooner reached the ſhore, than we ſaw ſeveral prints of human feet on the ſand, below high-water mark, from whence it was evident, that the natives had been there. We concluded they could be at no great diſtance, and as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we proceeded with caution, that our retreat to the boat might not be cut off. We walked by the ſide of the wood, and came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, not far from which was a ſhed, or hut, which had been covered with leaves, and near it lay a number of freſh ſhells of the fruit. At a ſmall diſtance of from this place we found plantains; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians ruſhed out of the wood with a hideous ſhout, at about the diſtance of a hundred yards; and as they ran towards us, the foremoſt threw ſomething out of his hand, which flew on one ſide of him, and burnt exactly like gun-powder, but made no report; and the other two threw their lances at us. No time was to be loſt; we diſcharged our pieces, loaded with ſmall ſhot only; which we imagine they did not feel; for, without retreating, they caſt a third dart: we therefore now loaded with ball, and fired a ſecond time. It is probable ſome of them were wounded, as they all took to their heels with great agility. We improved this interval, in which the deſtruction of the natives was no longer neceſſary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned to our boat. In the way we perceived ſignals on board, that more Indians were coming down in a body; and before we got into the water, we perceived ſeveral of them coming round a point at the diſtance of about five hundred yards. When they ſaw us they halted, and ſeemed to wait till their main body ſhould join them. They continued in this ſtation, without giving us any interruption, while we entered the water, and waded toward the boat. We now took a view of them at our leiſure. They made much the ſame appearance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the ſame ſtature, and having their hair ſhort cropped.

They

They were alſo like them ſtark naked. During this time they were ſhouting at a diſtance, and letting off their fires, which ſeemed to be diſcharged by a ſhort piece of ſtick, probably a hollow cane, this being ſwung ſideways, produced fire and ſmoke like that occaſioned by a muſquet. The crew on board the ſhip ſaw this ſtrange appearance, and thought the natives had fire arms. Thoſe who went out in the boat, and had rowed a-breaſt of them, fired ſome muſquets above their heads, the balls of which being heard by the natives rattling among the trees, they retired very deliberately, and our people in the boat returned to the ſhip. Upon examining the lances that had been thrown at us, we found they were made of a reed, or bamboo cane, the points of which were of hard wood, and barbed in many places. They were light, ill made, and about four feet long. Such was the force with which they were diſcharged, that they went beyond us, though we were at ſixty yards diſtance, but in what manner they were diſcharged we could not determine; probably they might be thrown with a ſtick, in the manner practiced by the New Hollanders. This place is in latitude 6 deg. 15 min. S. The whole coaſt of this country is low land, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage beyond deſcription beautiful. The cocoa-nut, bread-fruit, and plantain tree, all flouriſhed here in the higheſt perfection, beſides moſt of the trees, ſhrubs, and plants, that are common to the South Sea iſlands. This day, Monday, Sept. the 3d, we made ſail to the weſtward, being reſolved to ſpend no more time upon this coaſt; but before we got under ſail, ſome of the officers ſtrongly urged the Captain to ſent a party of men on ſhore, to cut down the cocoa-nut trees, for the ſake of the fruit. This Capt. Cook, with equal wiſdom and humanity, peremptorily refuſed, as unjuſt and cruel; ſenſible that the poor Indians, who could not brook even the landing of a ſmall party on their coaſt, would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property had it been invaded; conſequently many muſt have fallen a ſacrifice on their ſide, and perhaps ſome of our own people. "I ſhould, (ſays Capt. Cook)

have regretted the neceſſity of ſuch a meaſure, if I had been in want of the neceſſaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred green cocoa-nuts; which would at moſt have procured us a mere tranſient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coaſt to the northward, or weſtward, in ſearch of a place where the ſhip might have lain ſo near the ſhore, as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the miſchief, and though it might have ſecured us, it would probably in the very act have been fatal to the natives. Beſides, we had reaſon to think that before ſuch a place could have been found, we ſhould have been carried ſo far to the weſtward as to have been obliged to go to Batavia, on the north ſide of Java, through the ſtreights of Sunday: the ſhip alſo was ſo very leaky that I doubted whether it would not be neceſſary to heave her down at Batavia, which was another reaſon for making the beſt of our way to that place, eſpecially as no diſcoveries could be expected in ſeas which had already been navigated, and where every coaſt had been laid down by the Dutch geographers."

On Saturday the 8th, we paſſed two ſmall iſlands, on one of which Capt. Cook would have landed, but having only ten fathom water, the ground being alſo rocky, and the wind blowing freſh, we might have endangered the ſafety of the ſhip. We now ſailed at a moderate rate till next morning at three o'clock; after which we had no ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon we had ſight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Arrou Iſlands, or Timor Laoet. We were now in latitude 9 deg. 37 min. S. and in longitude 233 deg. 54 min. W. We ſtood off and on during the night, and on Wedneſday the 12th, we ſaw a number of fires and ſmoke in ſeveral places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land near the ſhore was covered with high trees, not unlike pines; farther back were cocoa-trees and mangroves; there were many ſalt-water creeks, and ſeveral ſpots of

ground

ground which appeared to have been cleared by art; and the whole country roſe, by gradual ſlopes, into hills of a very conſiderable height. The land and ſea breezes being now very ſlight, we continued in ſight of the iſland for two days, when it was obſerved that the hills reached in many places quite to the ſea-coaſt, and where that was not the caſe, there were large and noble groves of the cocoa-nut tree, which ran about a mile up the county, at which diſtance great numbers of houſes and plantations were ſeen; the plantations were ſurrounded with fences, and extended nearly to the ſummits of the moſt lofty hills, yet neither the natives nor cattle were ſeen on any of them, which was thought a very extraordinary circumſtance. Fine groves of the fan palm ſhaded the houſes from the rays of the ſun.

On the 16th, we had ſight of the little iſland called Rotte; and the ſame day ſaw the iſland Semau, at a diſtance to tne ſouthward of Timor. The iſland of Rotte is chiefly covered with buſhy wood without leaves; but there are a number of fan palm trees on it, growing near the ſandy beaches; and the whole conſiſts of alternate hills and valleys. The iſland of Semau is not ſo hilly as Timor, but reſembles it greatly in other reſpects. At ten o'clock this night a dull reddiſh light was ſeen in the air, many parts of which emitted rays of a brighter colour, which ſoon vaniſhed, and were ſucceeded by others of the ſame kind. This phœnomenon, which reached about ten degrees above the horizon, bore a conſiderable reſemblance to the Aurora Borealis, only that the rays of light which it emitted had no tremulous motion: it was ſurveyed for two hours, during which time its brightneſs continued undiminiſhed. As the ſhip was now clear of all the iſlands which had been laid down in ſuch maps as were on board, we made ſail during the night, and were ſurpriſed the next morning at the ſight of an iſland to the W. S. W. which we flattered ourſelves was a new diſcovery. Before noon we had ſight of houſes, groves of cocoa-nut trees, and large flocks of ſheep. This was a welcome ſight to people whoſe health

health was declining for want of refreſhment, and it was inſtantly reſolved to attempt the purchaſe of what we ſtood ſo much in need of. The ſecond lieutenant was immediately diſpatched in the pinnace, in ſearch of a landing-place; and he took with him ſuch things as it was thought might be acceptable to the natives.—During Mr. Gore's abſence, the people on board ſaw two men on horſeback upon the hills, who frequently ſtopped to take a view of the veſſel. The lieutenant ſoon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which ſtood a few houſes; that ſeveral men advanced and invited him to land; and that they converſed together ſo well as they could by ſigns. He reported that theſe people were very like the Malays, both in perſon and dreſs; and ſaid they had no other arms but a knife which each of them wore in his girdle.

The lieutenant not being able to find any place in which the ſhip might come to anchor, he was diſpatched again with money and goods to buy ſuch neceſſaries as were immediately wanted for the ſick. Dr. Solander attended the lieutenant, and during their abſence, the ſhip ſtood on and off the ſhore. Soon after the boat had put off, two other horſemen were ſeen from the ſhip, one of whom had a laced hat on, and was dreſſed in a coat and waiſtcoat, of the faſhion of Europe. Theſe men rode about on ſhore taking little notice of the boat, but regarding the ſhip with the utmoſt attention. As ſoon as the boat reached the ſhore, ſome other perſons on horſeback, and many on foot haſtened to the ſpot, and it was obſerved that ſome cocoa-nuts were put into the boat, from whence it was concluded, that a traffick had commenced with the natives. A ſignal being made from the boat that the ſhip might anchor in a bay at ſome diſtance, ſhe immediately bore away for it. When the lieutenant came on board, he reported, that he could not purchaſe any cocoa-nuts, as the owner of them was abſent, and that what he had brought were given him, in return for which he had preſſed the natives with ſome linen. The method by which he learned that there was a harbour in the neighbourhood, was by the natives drawing a kind

kind of rude map on the ſand, in which the harbour, and a town near it, was repreſented; it was likewiſe hinted to him, that fruit, fowls, hogs, and ſheep might be there obtained in great abundance. He ſaw ſeveral of the principal inhabitants of the iſland, who had chains of gold about their necks, and wore fine linen. The word Portugueſe being frequently repeated by the Indians, it was conjectured that ſome natives of Portugal were in the iſland, and one of the boat's crew being of that kingdom, he ſpoke to the iſlanders in his own language, but ſoon found that they had only learned a few words, of which they did not know the meaning. While the natives were endeavouring to repreſent the ſituation of the town near the harbour, one of them, in order to be more particular in directions, informed the Engliſh that they would ſee ſomething which he endeavoured to deſcribe by placing his fingers acroſs each other; and the Portugueſe ſailor took it for granted, that he could mean nothing but a croſs. When the boat's crew were on the point of returning to the ſhip, the gentleman who had been ſeen on horſeback in the dreſs of Europe, came down to the beach; but the lieutenant did not think it proper to hold a conference with him, becauſe he had left his commiſſion on board the ſhip.

When the ſhip had entered the bay, in the evening, according to the directions received, an Indian town was ſeen at a diſtance; upon which a jack was hoiſted on the fore-top-maſt head, preſently afterwards three guns were fired, and Dutch colours were hoiſted in the town; the ſhip, however, held on her way, and came to an anchor at ſeven in the evening. The colours being ſeen hoiſted on the beach the next morning, the captain concluded, that the Dutch had a ſettlement on the iſland, he therefore diſpatched the ſecond lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal reſident, who they were, and that the ſhip had put in for neceſſary refreſhments. The lieutenant having landed, he was received by a kind of guard of ſomething more than twenty Indians, armed with muſquets, who after they had taken down their colours from the beach, pro-

ceeded without the leaſt military order; and thus eſcorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoiſted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the Raja, or king of the iſland, to whom, by means of a Portugueſe interpreter, he made known his buſineſs. The Raja ſaid, he was ready to ſupply the ſhip with the neceſſary refreſhments, but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having firſt obtained their conſent; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whoſe name was Lange, and who proved to be the perſon that was ſeen from the ſhip in the European dreſs, a letter was diſpatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the iſland. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the Raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wiſhes to go on board the ſhip, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hoſtages for their ſafe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both theſe requeſts, and took them on board juſt before dinner was ſerved. It was thought that they would have ſat down without ceremony; but now the Raja intimated his doubts, whether being a black, they would permit him to ſit down with them. The politeneſs of the officers ſoon removed his ſcruples, and the greateſt good humour and feſtivity prevailed among them. As Dr. Solander and another gentleman on board, were tolerable proficients in Dutch, they acted as interpreters between Mr. Lange and the officers, while ſome of the ſailors, who underſtood Portugueſe, converſed with ſuch of the Raja's attendants as ſpoke that language. Our dinner conſiſted chiefly of mutton, which when the Raja had taſted, he requeſted of us an Engliſh ſheep, and the only one we had left was preſented to him. Our complaiſance in this particular, encouraged the king to aſk for an Engliſh dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave him his greyhound. A ſpying-glaſs was alſo put into his hand, Mr. Johan Chriſtopher Lange having intimated,

timated, that ſuch a preſent would be very acceptable. Our viſitors now informed us, that the iſland abounded with buffaloes, ſheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which ſhould be driven down to the ſhore the next day. This put us all in high ſpirits, and the liquor circulated rather faſter than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the reſolution to expreſs a deſire to depart, before they were quite intoxicated. When they came upon deck, they were received in the ſame manner as when they came aboard, by the marines under arms; and the Raja expreſſing a deſire to ſee them exerciſe, his curioſity was gratified. They fired three rounds. The king obſerved them with great attention, and appeared much ſurprized at the regularity and expedition of their manœuvres. When they cocked their firelocks, he ſtruck the ſide of the ſhip with his ſtick, exclaiming at the ſame time violently, "That all the locks made but one click." They were diſmiſſed with many preſents, and on their departure were ſaluted with nine guns. Mr. Banks with Dr. Solander accompanied them, and when they put off returned our compliments with three cheers. Our gentlemen on their arrival at the town, taſted their palm-wine, which was the freſh juice of the trees, unfermented. It had a ſweet, but not diſagreeable taſte, and hopes were entertained, that it might contribute to recover our ſick from the ſcurvy. The houſes of the natives conſiſted of only a thatched roof, ſupported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high.

Wedneſday the 19th, in the morning, Capt. Cook, attended by ſeveral gentlemen, went on ſhore to return the Raja's viſit; but their principal intention was to purchaſe the cattle and fowls, which they had been aſſured the preceding day ſhould be driven down to the beach. We were greatly chagrined at finding no ſteps had been taken to fulfil this promiſe: however, we proceeded to the houſe of aſſembly, which, with a few other houſes, built by the Dutch Eaſt-India Company, are diſtinguiſhed from the reſt, by having two pieces of wood, reſembling a pair of cows horns, fixed at each end of the roof; and theſe we concluded to be what the

Portugueſe ſailor conſtrued into croſſes, from the Indian having croſſed his fingers when he was deſcribing the town. At the houſe of aſſembly we ſaw Mr. Lange and the Raja, whoſe name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, ſurrounded by many of the principal people; Capt. Cook having informed them, that he had loaded his boat with goods, which he wiſhed to exchange for neceſſary refreſhments, permiſſion was given him to land them. We now endeavoured to make an agreement for the hogs, ſheep, and buffaloes, which were to be paid for in caſh; but this buſineſs was no ſooner hinted than Mr. Lange took his leave, having firſt told the captain, that he had received a letter from the governor of Concordia, in Timor, the contents of which ſhould be diſcloſed at his return. As the morning was now far advanced, and we had no freſh proviſions on board, we requeſted the Raja's permiſſion to buy a ſmall hog and ſome rice, and to order his people to dreſs the dinner for us. He very obligingly replied, that if we could eat victuals dreſſed by his ſubjects, which he could ſcarcely ſuppoſe, he would do himſelf the honour of entertaining us. A dinner being thus procured, the captain ſent off his boat to bring liquors from the ſhip. It was ready about five o'clock, and after we were ſeated on mats, which were ſpread on the floor, it was ſerved in ſix and thirty baſkets. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which ſtood a man with water in a veſſel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who aſſiſted us in waſhing our hands. This done we returned to our places and expected the king. Having waited ſome time, we enquired the reaſon of his abſence, and were informed that the perſon who gave the entertainment never partook of it with his gueſts; but that the Raja was ready to come and taſte of what was provided, if we entertained a thought that the victuals were poiſoned. We declared that we did not harbour any ſuch ſuſpicion, and deſired that the cuſtom of the country might not be violated on our account. When dinner was ended, the wine paſſed briſkly, and we invited the Raja to drink with us, thinking if he would not eat with us, he might at leaſt ſhare in the jollity

jollity of the bottle; but he again excuſed himſelf, ſaying, the man who entertained his gueſts ſhould never get drunk with them, and that the ſureſt way to avoid this was to refrain from taſting the liquor. The prime miniſter and Mr. Lange were of our party, and we made a moſt luxurious meal. The pork and rice were excellent, and the broth not to be deſpiſed; but the ſpoons, made of leaves, were ſo ſmall, that few of us had patience to uſe them. We did not drink our wine at the place where we had dined; and the remains of the dinner we left to the ſeamen and ſervants, who immediately took our places. They could not diſpatch all we had left; but the Raja's female ſervants, who came to take away the utenſils, obliged them to carry away what they had not eaten. When we thought the wine had ſo far operated as to open the heart, we took an opportunity to enquire after the buffaloes and ſheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a ſyllable, though they were to have been at the beach early in the morning. Mr. Lange, the Saxon Dutchman, now began to communicate to us the contents of the letter, which he pretended to have received from the governor of Concordia, and wherein he ſaid, inſtructions were given, that if the ſhip ſhould touch at this iſland, and be in want of proviſions, ſhe ſhould be ſupplied; but he was not to permit her to remain longer than was neceſſary; nor were any large preſents to be made to the natives of low rank, nor to be even left with their ſuperiors to be divided among them after the ſhip had ſailed; but he added, any trifling civilities received from the Indians might be acknowledged by a preſent of beads, or other articles of very ſmall value. It is probable that the whole of this ſtory was a fiction; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, the Saxon Dutchman hoped more eaſily to draw all the preſents of any value into his own pocket. In the evening we were informed, that only a few ſheep had been brought to the beach, which had been driven away before our people could procure money from the ſhip to pay for them. Some fowls however were bought, and a large quantity of a kind of ſyrup made of the juice of the

palm-tree. This, though infinitely ſuperior to molaſſes or treacle, ſold at a very low price. Vexed at being thus diſappointed in purchaſing the chief articles moſt wanted, we remonſtrated with Mr. Lange, who now found another ſubterfuge. He ſaid, had we gone down to the beach ourſelves, we might have purchaſed what we pleaſed; but that the natives were afraid of being impoſed on by our ſeamen with counterfeit money. We could not but feel ſome indignation againſt a man who had concealed this, being true; or alledged it, being falſe; and Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the beach, but no cattle were to be ſeen, nor were any at hand to be bought. During his abſence, Lange told Mr. Banks, that the Indians were offended at our not having offered them gold for what we had to ſell, and without which nothing could be bought. Mr. Banks did not think it worth his while to hold farther converſation with a man who had been guilty of ſuch repeated falſities; but roſe up ſuddenly, and we all returned on board much diſſatisfied with our fruitleſs negotiations. The Raja had indeed given a more plauſible reaſon for our diſappointment: he ſaid, the buffaloes being far up in the country, there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

On Thurſday the 20th, Dr. Solander went again aſhore with Capt. Cook, and while the former went up to the town to ſpeak to Lange, the captain remained on the beach with a view of purchaſing proviſions. Here he met with the old Indian, who, as he appeared to have ſome authority, we had among ourſelves diſtinguiſhed by the name of the Prime Miniſter. In order to engage this man in our intereſt, the captain preſented him with a ſpying-glaſs; but only a ſmall buffalo was offered to be ſold. The price was five guineas, nearly twice its real value. Three, however, were offered, which the dealer thought a good price; but ſaid, he muſt acquaint the king with what had been bid before he could ſtrike the bargain. A meſſenger was immediately diſpatched to the Raja, and on his return brought word, that not leſs than five guineas would be taken for the buffalo. The captain abſolutely refuſed to give the

ſum

ſum demanded, which occaſioned the ſending away a ſecond meſſenger, and during his abſence, Dr. Solander was ſeen coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, ſome of whom were armed with muſquets, and others with lances. Upon enquiring into the meaning of this hoſtile appearance, the doctor informed us, the purport of a meſſage from the king was, according to Mr. Lange's interpretation, that the people would not trade with us becauſe we had refuſed to give them more than half the value for their commodities; and that we were not to expect permiſſion to trade upon any terms longer than this day.

A native of Timor, whoſe parents were Portugueſe, came down with this party, and delivered to the captain what was pretended to be the order of the Raja, and which was in ſubſtance the ſame that Lange had told Dr. Solander; but it was afterwards diſcovered that this man was a confident of Lange's in the ſcheme of extortion. The Engliſh gentlemen had at the ſame time no doubt, but that the ſuppoſed order of the Raja was a contrivance of theſe men, and while they were debating how to act in this critical conjuncture, anxious to bring the affair to a ſpeedy iſſue, the Portugueſe began to drive away ſuch of the natives as had brought palm-ſyrup and fowls to ſell, and others who were now bringing ſheep and buffaloes to the market. At this juncture Capt. Cook happening to look at the old man who had been diſtinguiſhed by the name of prime miniſter, imagined that he ſaw in his features a diſapprobation of the preſent proceedings; and, willing to improve the advantage, he graſped the Indian's hand, and gave him an old broad-ſword. This well-timed preſent produced all the good effects that could be wiſhed; the prime miniſter was enraptured at ſo honourable a mark of diſtinction, and brandiſhing his ſword over the head of the impertinent Portugueſe, he made both him and a man who commanded the party, ſit down behind him on the ground. The whole buſineſs was now accompliſhed; the natives, eager to ſupply whatever was wanted, brought their cattle in for ſale, and the market was ſoon ſtocked. For the firſt two buffaloes, Capt.

Cook gave ten guineas: but he afterwards purchaſed them by way of exchange, giving a muſquet for each, and at this rate he might have bought any number he thought proper. There remained no doubt but that Lange had a profit out of the two that were ſold; and that his reaſon for having ſaid the natives would take nothing but gold for their cattle, was, that he might the more eaſily ſhare in the produce. Capt. Cook purchaſed of the natives of this iſland ſome hundred gallons of palm-ſyrup, a ſmall quantity of garlick, a large number of eggs, ſome limes and cocoa-nuts, thirty dozen of fowls, three hogs, ſix ſheep, and nine buffaloes. We having obtained theſe neceſſary articles, now prepared for ſailing from this place.

The iſland of Savu is ſituated in 10 deg. 35 min. S. latitude, and 237 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. Its length is between twenty and thirty miles. But its breadth Capt. Cook could not aſcertain, as he only ſaw the north ſide of it. The harbour in which the ſhip lay, was called Seba, from a diſtrict of the country ſo denominated: and there are two other bays on different parts of the iſland. At the time the Endeavour lay there it was near the end of the dry ſeaſon, when it had not rained for almoſt ſeven months, nor was there a running ſtream of freſh water to be ſeen, and the natives were ſupplied only by ſmall ſprings, ſituated at a diſtance up the country, yet even in this dry ſeaſon the appearance of the iſland was beautiful. Near the coaſt the land lies level, and well cloathed with palm, called arecao, and cocoa-nut trees. Farther off, the ground riſes in the moſt gradual aſcent, and is covered with fair palm-trees even to the tops of the hills, ſo as to preſent a regular grove to the view. The rains in this country ceaſe in March or April, and fall again in October or November, and theſe rains produce abundance of indico, millett, and maize, which grow beneath the fineſt trees in the country. Beſides theſe articles, the iſland produces tobacco, cotton, betel, tamarinds, limes, oranges, mangoes, guinea corn, rice, callevances, and water-melons. A ſmall quantity of cinnamon was ſeen, and ſome European herbs, ſuch as garlick, fennel, celery, and

and marjoram, beſides which, there are fruits of various kinds, and particularly the blimbi, which has a ſharp taſte, and is a fine pickle, but it is not eaten raw; its length is from 3 to 4 inches; it is nearly as thick as a man's thumb, of an oval form, covered with a very thin ſkin, of a very light green, and contains a number of ſeeds ranged in the ſhape of a ſtar. Several buffaloes were ſeen on this iſland which were almoſt as large as an ox; and from a pair of enormous horns of this animal, which Mr. Banks ſaw, it was ſuppoſed that ſome of them were much larger; yet they did not weigh more than half as much as an ox of the ſame ſize; having loſt the greater part of their fleſh through the late dry weather: the meat however was juicy, and of a delicate flavour. The horns of theſe animals bend backwards; they had no dew-laps, and ſcarce any hair on their ſkins, and their ears were remarkably large. The other tame animals on the iſland are dogs, cats, pigeons, fowls, hogs, goats, ſheep, aſſes, and horſes. Few of the horſes are above twelve hands high, yet they are full of mettle, and pace naturally in an expeditious manner; the natives ride them with a halter only. The hogs of this country are fed on the huſks of rice and palm-ſyrup mixed with water, and are remarkably fine and fat. The ſheep is not unlike a goat, and are therefore called cabaritos; their ears, which are long, hang down under their horns; their noſes are arched, and their bodies covered with hair. The fowls are of the game kind, and though they are rather large, the hen lays a very ſmall egg. The ſea-coaſt furniſhes the inhabitants with turtle, but not in any great abundance.

The people of this iſland are rather below the middle ſtature; their hair is black and ſtrait, and perſons of all ranks, as well thoſe that are expoſed to the weather, as thoſe that are not, have one general complexion, which is the dark brown. The men are well formed and ſprightly, and their features differ much from each other; the women, on the contrary, have all one ſet of features, are very ſhort, and broad built. The men have ſilver pincers hanging by ſtrings round their necks,

necks, with which they pluck out the hair of their beards; and both men and women root out the hair that grows under their arms; the hair of the womens heads is tied in a club behind, while the men wear a kind of turban on their heads, formed of muſlin, cotton, or even with ſilk handkerchiefs, but the heads of the women have no covering. The dreſs of the men conſiſts of two pieces of cotton cloth, one of which is bound round the middle, and the lower edge of it being drawn pretty tight between the legs, the upper edge is left looſe, ſo as to form a kind of pocket, in which they carry knives and other things: the other piece being paſt under the former on the back of the wearer, the ends of it are carried over the ſhoulders, and tucked into the pocket before. The women drew the upper edge of the piece round the waiſt tight, while the lower edge dropping to the knees, make a kind of petticoat: the other piece of cloth is faſtened acroſs the breaſt, and under the arms. This cloth, which is manufactured by the natives, is dyed blue while in the yarn; and as it is of various ſhades, its look, when it comes to be worn, is very beautiful.

Their ornaments are very numerous, and conſiſt of rings, beads worn round the neck and on the wriſts, and chains of plaited gold wire, are likewiſe worn by both ſexes; but the women had likewiſe girdles of beads round their waiſts, which ſerved to keep up their petticoats. Both ſexes had their ears bored without a ſingle exception, that we ſaw, but we never obſerved an ornament in any of them. Nor did we perceive either man or woman in any thing but what appeared to be their ordinary dreſs, except the king and his miniſter, who in general wore a kind of night-gown of coarſe chintz, and the latter once received us in a black robe, which appeared to be made of prince's ſtuff. One perſon, in the way of finery, had a ſilver-headed cane, marked with a kind of cypher, conſiſting of the Roman letters V. O. C. which might have been a preſent from the Dutch Eaſt-India Company, whoſe mark it is. We alſo ſaw boys about twelve or fourteen years old, having ſpiral circles of thick braſs wire paſſed three or four

four times round their arms, above the elbow; and upon the ſame part of the arm, ſome of the men had rings of ivory, two inches broad, and about one in thickneſs; theſe we were informed were the ſons of the Raja's or chiefs, whoſe high births were diſtinguiſhed by theſe cumbrous ornaments. Moſt of the men had their names marked on their arms, and the women had a ſquare ornament of flouriſhed lines imprinted juſt under the bend of the elbow. On enquiry it was found that this practice had been common among the Indians long before they were viſited by any Europeans; and in the neighbouring iſlands, it was ſaid, the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breaſts. We were ſtruck with the ſimilitude between theſe marks, and thoſe made by tattaowing in the South Sea iſlands; and M. Boſſu's account of ſome Indians who dwell on the banks of Akanza, a river in North America, which falls into the Miſſiſſippi, will afford a probable conjecture how the operation is performed. "The Alkanzas, ſays he, have adopted me, and as a mark of my privilege, have imprinted the figure of a roe-buck upon my thigh, which was done in this manner: an Indian having burnt ſome ſtraw, diluted the aſhes with water, and with this mixture, drew the figure upon my ſkin; he then retraced it, by pricking the lines with needles, ſo as at every puncture juſt to draw the blood, and the blood mixing with the aſhes of the ſtraw, forms a figure which can never be effaced."

The houſes of Savu are all built upon the ſame plan, but differ in ſize, according to the rank and wealth of the proprietors, being from twenty feet to four hundred, and they are fixed on poſts of about four or five feet from the ground. One end of theſe is driven into the ground, and upon the other is laid a floor of wood, which makes a vacant ſpace of four feet between the floor of the houſe and the ground. On this floor are raiſed other pillars that ſupport a roof of ſloping ſides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like thoſe of our barns; the caves of this roof, which is thatched with palm-leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and over-hang it as much. The ſpace within is gene-

rally divided lengthwiſe into three equal parts; the middle part, or center, is incloſed by a partition of four ſides, reaching about ſix feet above the floor, and one or two ſmall rooms are alſo ſometimes taken off from the ſides; the reſt of the ſpace under the roof is open, ſo as freely to admit the air and the light. The particular uſes of theſe apartments we could not, during our ſhort ſtay, learn, except that the cloſe room in the center was appropriated to the women.

As to the food of theſe people, they eat all the tame animals to be found in the iſland; but they prefer the hog to all others; next to this they admire horſe-fleſh; to which ſucceeds the buffalo, then poultry; and they prefer cats and dogs to goats and ſheep. Fiſh, we believe, is not eaten but by the poor, nor by them, except when their duty or buſineſs requires them to be upon the beach, and then each man has a light caſting net, which is girt round his body, and with this he takes any ſmall fiſh which may come in his way.

The moſt remarkable and uſeful tree that grows on the iſland is the fan palm. Its uſes are ſo various, that it requires particular notice. At certain times it is a ſuccedaneum for all other food both to man and beaſt. A kind of wine, called toddy, is extracted from this tree, by cutting the buds, and tying under them ſmall baſkets, made of the leaves. The juice which trickles into theſe veſſels is collected morning and evening, and is the common drink of all the inhabitants. The natives call this liquor dua or duac, and both the ſyrup and ſugar, gula. The ſyrup is not unlike treacle, but is ſomewhat thicker, and has a more agreeable taſte. The ſugar is of a rediſh brown, probably the ſame with the Jugata ſugar upon the continent of India, and to our taſte it was more agreeable than any cane ſugar, unrefined. We at firſt apprehended that the ſyrup, of which ſome of our people eat great quantities, would have occaſioned fluxes, but what effect it produced was rather ſalutary than hurtful. This ſyrup is uſed to fatten hogs, dogs, and fowls; and the inhabitants themſelves have ſubſiſted upon this alone for ſeveral months, when other crops have failed, and animal

mal food has been ſcarce. With the leaves of this tree the natives thatch their houſes, and make baſkets, cups, umbrellas and tobacco-pipes. They make leaſt account of the fruit, and as the buds are wounded for the tuac or toddy, there is very little produced. It is nearly of the ſize of a full grown turnip; and the kernels muſt be eaten before it is ripe, otherwiſe they are ſo hard, that the teeth will not penetrate them.

As fire-wood is very ſcarce, the natives, by the following method, make a very little anſwer the ends of cookery and diſtillation. A hollow is dug under ground, like a rabbit burrow, in a horizontal direction, about two yards long, with a hole at each end, one of which is large, and the other ſmall. The fire is put in at the large hole, and the ſmall one ſerves for a draught. Circular holes are made through the earth which covers this cavity, on which are ſet earthen pots, large in the middle, and ſmaller towards the bottom, ſo that the fire acts upon a large part of the ſurface. They contain generally about eight or ten gallons each, and it is ſurpriſing to ſee with what a ſmall quantity of fuel they are kept boiling. In this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their ſyrup and ſugar. The Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the ſame kind; and perhaps by the poor in other countries it might be adopted with advantage.

In this iſland both ſexes are enſlaved by the pernicious cuſtom of chewing beetle and areca, contracted even while they are children. With theſe they mix a ſort of white lime, compoſed of coral ſtones and ſhells, to which is added frequently a ſmall quantity of tobacco, whereby their mouths are rendered diſguſtful both to the ſight and the ſmell; for the tobacco infects their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth both black and rotten. We ſaw many of both ſexes whoſe fore teeth were conſumed, irregularly, almoſt down to the gums, and corroded like iron by ruſt. This loſs of teeth has generally been attributed to the tough ſtringy coat of the areca nut; but our gentlemen imputed it wholly to the lime; for the teeth are not looſened or broken, as might be the caſe by chewing of

hard and rough ſubſtances, but they are gradually waſted, as even metals are by powerful acids; and they may not be miſtaken who ſuppoſe that ſugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, ſeeing refined ſugar contains a conſiderable quantity of lime, and it is well known, that lime will deſtroy bone of any kind. When the natives are at any time not chewing beetle and areca, they then are ſmoking. The manner of doing this is by rolling up a ſmall quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube, about ſix inches long, as thick as a gooſe quill, and made of a palm-leaf. The women in particular were obſerved to ſwallow the ſmoke.

The iſland is divided into five diſtricts or nigrees, each of which is governed by a Raja. Theſe are called Laai, Seba, Regeeua, Timo, and Maſſara. We went aſhore at Seba, and found a Raja that governed with abſolute authority. He was about five and thirty, and the moſt corpulent man we had ſeen upon the whole iſland. But though he governed with an unlimited authority, he took very little regal pomp upon him. He was directed almoſt implicitly by Mannu Djarme, the old man, his prime miniſter, already mentioned; yet notwithſtanding the power with which he was inveſted, he was univerſally beloved, a ſure proof that he did not abuſe it. Mr. Lange informed Capt. Cook, that the chiefs who had ſucceſſively preſided over the five principalities of this iſland, had lived for time immemorial in the moſt cordial friendſhip with each other; yet, he ſaid, the people were of a warlike diſpoſition, and had always courageouſly defended themſelves againſt foreign invaders. We were told alſo, that the inhabitants of the iſland could raiſe, on a ſhort notice, 7,300 fighting men armed with muſquets; of which number Laai was ſaid to furniſh 2,600, Seba 2000, Regeeua 1,500, Timo 800, and Maſſara 400. Beſides the arms already mentioned, each man is furniſhed with a large maſſy pole-ax, which, in the hands of people who have courage, muſt be a formidable weapon. In the uſe of their lances theſe people are ſaid to be ſo expert, that they can pierce a man through

the

the heart at ſixty or ſeventy yards diſtance: yet the Raja had always lived at peace with his neighbours. This account of the martial proweſs of the inhabitants of Savu may be true; but during our ſtay we ſaw no appearance of it. Before the town houſe indeed, we ſaw about one hundred ſpears and targets, which ſerved to arm thoſe who were ſent down to intimidate us at the trading place, but they ſeemed to be the refuſe of old armories, no two being of the ſame make or length, for ſome were ſix, others ſixteen feet long. Not one lance was among them, and though the muſquets were clean on the outſide, within they were eaten by the ruſt into holes; and the people themſelves appeared to be ſo little acquainted with military diſcipline, that they came down like a diſorderly rabble, every one having a cock, ſome tobacco, or other merchandiſe, and few or none of their cartouch boxes were furniſhed with either powder or ball, but a piece of paper was thruſt into the holes to ſave appearances. We likewiſe ſaw before the houſe of aſſembly a great gun, ſome ſwivels, and patararoes: but the great gun lay with the touch-hole to the ground, and the ſwivels and patararoes were not in their carriages.

The inhabitants of Savu are divided into five ranks, namely, the Rajas, the land owners, the manufacturers, the ſervants, and the ſlaves. The Rajas are chief; the land owners are reſpected in proportion to their eſtates, and the number of their ſlaves, which laſt are bought and ſold with their eſtates; but a fat hog is the price of one if purchaſed ſeparately. Notwithſtanding a man may thus ſell his ſlave, or convey him with his lands, yet his power does not extend farther, as he may not even ſtrike him without the Raja's permiſſion. The eſtates of theſe land-holders are of very different extent: ſome of them not poſſeſſing above five ſlaves, whilſt others have 500. When a man of rank goes abroad, one of his ſlaves follows him with a ſilver-hilted ſword or hanger, ornamented with horſe hair taſſels, and another carries a little bag containing tobacco, beetle, areca, and lime. This is all the ſtate that even the Rajas themſelves take upon them.

Theſe

Theſe people have a great veneration for antiquity. Their principal boaſt is of a long line of venerable anceſtors. Thoſe houſes that have been well tenanted for ſucceſſive generations, are held in the higheſt eſteem; even the ſtones which are worn ſmooth by having been ſat upon for ages, derive a certain value from that circumſtance. He whoſe progenitors have bequeathed him any of theſe ſtones, or whoſe wealth has enabled him to purchaſe them, cauſes them to be ranged round his habitation, for his ſervants and ſlaves to ſit upon. The Raja cauſes a large ſtone to be ſet up in the chief town of each diſtrict as a monument of his reign. In the province of Seba, thirteen ſuch ſtones were ſeen as well as the remains of ſeveral others which were much worn. Theſe ſtones were all placed on the top of a hill, and ſome of them were of ſuch an enormous ſize that it was amazing by what means they could have been brought thither; nor could any information on this head be obtained from the natives: theſe monuments however, indicated that for a ſeries of generations, the iſland had been regularly governed.—When a Raja dies, proclamation is made that all thoſe who have been his ſubjects ſhall hold a ſolemn feſtival. On this they proceed to the hill where theſe ſtones are erected, and feaſt for ſeveral weeks, killing all the animals that ſuit their purpoſe, wherever they can be found, in order to furniſh the treat, which is daily ſerved up on the monumental ſtones. When they have thus exhauſted their whole ſtock, they are compelled to keep a faſt; and when the feaſt happens to end in the dry ſeaſon, when they cannot get vegetables to eat, they have no other ſubſiſtance than the palm ſyrup and water, till the few animals which have eſcaped the general maſſacre have bred a ſufficient number for a freſh ſupply, except the adjacent diſtrict happens to be in a condition to relieve them.

The natives of Savu have an inſtrument with which they clear the cotton of its ſeeds; it is about ſeven inches in height and fourteen in length. They have alſo a machine with which they ſpin by hand, as was the cuſtom before the invention of ſpinning wheels in Europe.

The

The inhabitants of this iſland were in general robuſt and healthy, and had every mark of longevity. The ſmall pox, however, is a diſtemper with which they are acquainted, and which they dread as much as a peſtilence. When any perſon is attacked by it, he is carried to a ſpot at a diſtance from the houſes, where his food is conveyed to him by means of a long ſtick, as no one dares to venture near him. Abandoned by all his friends, he is there left to live or die as it may happen, without being admitted to any comforts of the community.

The Portugueſe very early viſited this iſland, on which they eſtabliſhed a ſettlement, but ſoon after they were ſucceeded by the Dutch, who without formally taking poſſeſſion of the place, ſent a number of trading veſſels in order to eſtabliſh a commerce with the natives. Moſt of the Dutch purchaſes, it is ſuppoſed, are confined to a ſupply of proviſions for the Spice-Iſlands, the inhabitants of which breed but a ſmall number of cattle. The Dutch Eaſt India Company made an agreement with the ſeveral Rajas of the iſlands, that a quantity of rice, maize, and callavances ſhould be annually furniſhed to their people, who, in return, were to ſupply the Rajas with ſilk, linen, cutlery wares, and arrack. Certain ſmall veſſels, each having on board ten Indians, are ſent from Timor to bring away the maize and callavances, and a ſhip that brings the articles furniſhed by the Dutch, receives the rice on board once a year; and as there are three bays on this coaſt, this veſſel anchors in each of them in turn. The Dutch articles of commerce are accepted by the Rajas as a preſent; and they and their chief attendants drink of the arrack without intermiſſion till it is exhauſted.

It was in the agreement above-mentioned that the Rajas ſtipulated, that a Dutch reſident ſhould be conſtantly on the iſland. Accordingly this Lange, whom we have mentioned, was ſent thither in that capacity, and a ſort of aſſiſtant with him, whoſe father was a Portugueſe, and his mother a native of Timor, with one Frederic Craig, whoſe father was a Dutchman, and

his mother an Indian. Mr. Lange viſits the Raja in ſtate, attended by fifty ſlaves on horſe-back, and if the crops are ripe, orders veſſels to convey them immediately to Timor, ſo that they are not even houſed upon the iſland. It is likewiſe part of his buſineſs to perſuade the landholders to plant, if he perceives that they are backward in that particular. This reſident had been ten years on the iſland, when the Endeavour touched there, during all which time he had not ſeen any white perſons, except thoſe who came annually in the Dutch veſſel, to carry off the rice, as above-mentioned. He was married to a native of Timor, and lived in the ſame manner as the natives of Savu, whoſe language he ſpoke better than any other. He ſat on the ground like the Indians, and chewed beetle, and ſeemed in every thing to reſemble them, except in his complexion and the dreſs of his country. As to Mr. Craig, his aſſiſtant, he was employed in teaching the natives to write and read, and inſtructing them in the principles of Chriſtianity. Though there was neither clergyman nor church to be ſeen upon the iſland, yet this Mr. Craig averred, that in the townſhip of Seba only, there were 600 Chriſtians: as to the religion of thoſe who have not embraced Chriſtianity, it is a peculiar ſpecies of Paganiſm, every one having a god of his own, ſomewhat after the manner of the Cemies heretofore mentioned. Their morality, however, is much purer than could be expected from ſuch a people. Robberies are ſcarcely ever committed. Murder is unknown among them; and though no man is allowed more than one wife, they are ſtrangers to adultery, and almoſt ſo to the crime of ſimple fornication. When any diſputes ariſe between the natives, the determination of the Raja is deciſive and ſatisfactory. Some obſervations were made upon the language of the natives, by the gentlemen, while the veſſel lay here; and a kind of vocabulary formed, a ſketch of which we have here inſerted:

Momonne,	-	*A man.*
Mobunne,	-	*A woman.*
Catoo,	- -	*The head.*

Row

Row catoo, -	*The hair.*
Matta, - -	*The eyes.*
Rowna matta, -	*The eye-laſhes.*
Swanga, -	*The noſe.*
Cavaranga, -	*The cheeks.*
Wodeele, - -	*The ears.*
Vaio, - -	*The tongue.*
Lacoco, - -	*The neck.*
Sooſoo, - -	*The breaſts.*
Caboo ſooſoo -	*The nipples.*
Dulloo, - -	*The belly.*
Aſſoo, - -	*The navel.*
Tooga, - -	*The thighs.*
Rootoo, -	*The knees.*
Baibo, - -	*The legs.*
Dunceala, -	*The feet.*
Kiſſovei yilla, -	*The toes.*
Camacoo, -	*The arms.*
Wulaba, -	*The hand.*
Cabaou, -	*A buffalo.*
Djara, - -	*A horſe.*
Vavee, -	*A hog.*
Doomba, -	*A ſheep.*
Keſavoo, -	*A goat.*
Guaca, -	*A dog.*
Maio, - -	*A cat.*
Mannu, -	*A fowl.*
Carow, - -	*The tail.*
Pangoutoo, -	*The beak.*
Ica, - -	*A fiſh.*
Unjoo, - -	*A turtle.*
Nieu, - -	*A cocoa-nut.*
Boaceree, -	*Fan palm.*
Calella, - -	*Areca.*
Canama, -	*Beetle.*
Aou, - -	*Lime.*
Maanadoo, -	*A fiſh-hook.*
Tata, - -	*Tatou, or marks on the ſkin.*
Lodo, - -	*The ſun.*
Wurroo, -	*The moon.*
Aidaſſee, -	*The ſea.*

Ailea, - -	*Water.*
Aoe, - -	*Fire.*
Maate, - -	*To die.*
Tabudge, -	*To ſleep.*
Tatee too, -	*To riſe.*
Uſſe, - -	*One.*
Lhua, - -	*Two.*
Tullu, - -	*Three.*
Uppah, - -	*Four.*
Lumme, - -	*Five.*
Unna, - -	*Six.*
Pedu, - -	*Seven.*
Arru, - -	*Eight.*
Saou, - -	*Nine.*
Singooroo, -	*Ten.*
Singurunguſſe, -	*Eleven.*
Lhuangooroo, -	20.
Singaſſu, -	100.
Setuppah, -	1000.
Selacuſſa, -	10,000.
Serata, - -	100,000.
Sereboo, -	1,000,000.

It is here neceſſary to obſerve, that this iſland has not been laid down in any of the charts hitherto publiſhed, and as to our account of it, let it be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange, upon whoſe authority it muſt therefore reſt.

Of the iſlands in the neighbourhood of Savu, the principal is Timor, which is annually viſited by the Dutch reſidents on the other iſlands, in order to make up their accounts. Some of the towns on the north ſide of Timor are in the hands of the Portugueſe; but the Dutch poſſeſs a far greater proportion of the iſland, on which they have built a fort, and erected ſeveral ſtore-houſes. There are three ſmall iſlands, called the Solars, which produce great abundance of the various neceſſaries of life, that are carried in ſmall veſſels to the

the Dutch ſettlements on the iſland of Timor. Theſe iſlands are low and flat, and one of them has a commodious harbour. To the weſtward of the Solars lies the little iſland of Ende, in the poſſeſſion of the Portugueſe, who have built a conſiderable town on the N. E. point of it; and cloſe to the town is an harbour where ſhips may ride in ſafety. The iſland of Rotte has a Dutch reſident, whoſe buſineſs is ſimilar to that of Mr. Lange on the iſland of Savu. Rotte produces, beſides ſuch things as are common to other iſlands, a conſiderable quantity of ſugar, which is made to a great degree of perfection. There is likewiſe a ſmall iſland lying to the weſt of Savu, the chief produce of which is the areca nut, of which the Dutch receive in exchange for European commodities, as large a quantity every year as load two veſſels.

About two years before the Endeavour was in theſe ſeas, a French ſhip was wrecked on the coaſt of Timor: ſhe had been lodged on the rocks ſeveral days, when the wind tore her to pieces in an inſtant, and the Captain, with the greater part of the ſeamen were drowned; but the lieutenant and about eighty men, having reached the ſhore, travelled acroſs the country of Concordia, where their immediate wants were relieved, and they afterwards returned to the wreck, in company with ſome Dutchmen and Indians, who aſſiſted them in recovering all their cheſts of bullion, and other effects. This done they returned to Concordia, where they remained ſeveral weeks; but in this interval death made ſuch havock among them, that not above half their number remained to return to their native country, which they did as ſoon as a veſſel could be fitted out for them.

On Friday, the 21ſt of September, in the morning, we got under ſail, and bent our courſe weſtward, along the north ſide of the iſland of Savu, and of another lying to the weſtward of it, which at noon bore S. S. E. diſtant two leagues. At four in the afternoon, in latitude 10 deg. 38 min. S. and longitude 238 deg. 28 min. W. we diſcovered a ſmall low iſland. In the evening of the 23d, we got clear of the iſlands, and

on the 26th, our latitude by obſervation was 10 deg. 51 min. S. and our longitude 252 deg. 11 min. W. On the 28th, we ſteered all day N. W. with a view of making the land of Java, and on the 30th, Capt. Cook took into his poſſeſſion the log-book and journals, at leaſt all he could find of the officers, petty officers, and ſeamen, whom he ſtrictly enjoined ſecrecy with reſpect to where they had been. At ſeven in the evening we had thunder and lightning, and about twelve by the light of the flaſhes we ſaw the weſt end of Java.

On Monday, October the 1ſt, at ſix o'clock in the morning, Java Head bore S. E. by E. diſtant five leagues. Soon after we ſaw Prince's Iſland, and at ten Cracatoa, a remarkable high peaked iſland. At noon it bore N. 40 E. diſtant ſeven leagues. On the 2nd, we were cloſe in with the coaſt of Java, in fifteen fathom water, along which we ſtood. In the forenoon a boat was ſent aſhore, in order to procure ſome fruit for Tupia, who was at this time extremely ill. Our people returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a ſmall bunch of plantains, for which they had paid a ſhilling; but ſome herbage for the cattle the Indians gave our ſeamen, and aſſiſted them to cut it. The country had a delightful appearance, being every where covered with trees, which looked like one continued wood. About eleven o'clock we ſaw two Dutch Eaſt Indiamen, from whom we heard with great pleaſure, that the Swallow had reached the Engliſh channel in ſafety, having been at Batavia about two years before. We alſo learnt, that there was ſtationed here a fly-boat or packet, to carry letters, as was ſaid, from the Dutch ſhips, that came hither from Batavia, but the Captain thought it was appointed to examine all ſhips, that ſhould have paſſed the ſtreight. We had now been ſome hours at anchor, but in the evening a light breeze ſpringing up, we got under ſail, yet having little wind, and a ſtrong current againſt us, we reached no further by eight in the morning, of the 3d, than Bantam Point. We now perceived the Dutch packet ſtanding after us, but the wind ſhifting to the N. E. ſhe bore away. We were now obliged to anchor; which we did in twenty-

two

two fathom water, at about two miles from the ſhore. At ſix o'clock in the evening, the country boats came along ſide of us, on board one of which was the maſter of the packet. They brought in them fowls, ducks, parrots, turtle, rice, birds, monkeys, and other articles, with an intention to ſell them, but having fixed very high prices on their commodities, and our Savu ſtock being not yet expended, very few articles were purchaſed. The captain indeed gave two dollars for twenty-five fowls, and a Spaniſh dollar for a turtle, which weighed about ſix and thirty pounds. We might alſo for a dollar have bought two monkeys, or a whole cage of rice-birds. The maſter of the packet brought with him two books, in one of which he deſired of our officers, that one of them would write down the name of our ſhip and commander; the place from whence we came; to what port bound; with ſuch other particulars relating to ourſelves, as we might think proper, for the information of any of our countrymen who might come after us. In the other book the maſter himſelf entered the names of our ſhip and its captain, in order to tranſmit them to the governor and council of the Indies. We perceived, that in the firſt book many ſhips, particularly Portugueſe, had made enteries of the ſame kind with that for which it was preſented to us. Mr. Hicks, our lieutenant, however, having written the name of the ſhip, only added "from Europe." The maſter of the packet took notice of this, but ſaid, that he was ſatisfied with any thing we thought fit to write, it being intended ſolely for the information of our friends.

Friday the fifth, we made ſeveral attempts to ſail with a wind that would not ſtem the current, and as often came to an anchor. In the morning a proa, with a Dutch officer, came along-ſide of us, and ſent to Captain Cook a printed paper in exceeding bad Engliſh, duplicates of which he had in other languages, all regularly ſigned, in the name of the governor and council of the Indies, by their ſecretary; the contents whereof were the following enquiries, contained in nine queſtions.

1. The

1. The ſhip's name, and to what nation ſhe belonged?
2. If ſhe came from Europe, or any other place?
3. From what place ſhe had laſt departed?
4. Whereunto deſigned to go?
5. What and how many ſhips of the Dutch company by departure from the laſt ſhore there layed, and their names?
6. If one or more of theſe ſhips, in company with the Endeavour, is departed for this or any other place?
7. If during the voyage any particularities is happened, or ſeen?
8. If not any ſhips in ſea, or the ſtreights of Sunda, have ſeen, or hailed in, and which?
9. If any other news worth of attention, at the place from whence the ſhip laſtly departed, or during the voyage, is happened?

BATAVIA in the Caſtle.
By order of the Governor General, and the Counſellors of India,
J. BRANDER BUNGL. Sec.

The officer obſerving, that the captain did not chuſe to anſwer any of the above queſtions, except the firſt and fourth, he ſaid that the reſt were not material, though it was remarked that juſt afterwards he affirmed he muſt diſpatch the paper to Batavia, at which place it would arrive by the next day. This examination was rather extraordinary, and the more ſo, as it does not ſeem to have been of any long ſtanding.

As ſoon as the Dutch officer departed, the anchor was weighed, but in four hours the ſhip was forced to come to an anchor again, till a breeze ſprang up; ſhe then held on her courſe till the next morning, when on account of the rapidity of the current, the anchor was dropped again. At laſt we weighed on the 8th, and ſtood clear of a large ledge of rocks, which we had almoſt ran upon the preceding day. But in the forenoon we were once more obliged to anchor near a little iſland that was not laid down in any chart on board.

It

It was found to be one of thoſe called the Milles Iſles. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander having landed upon it, collected a few plants, and ſhot a bat which was a yard long, being meaſured from the extreme points of the wings; they alſo killed a few plovers on this iſland, the breadth of which does not exceed one hundred yards, and the length five hundred; they found a houſe and a little ſpot of cultivated ground, and on it grew the Palma Chriſti, from which the Weſt Indians make their caſtor oil.

In a little time after the gentlemen returned to the ſhip, ſome Malays came along-ſide in a boat, bringing with them pompions, dried fiſh, and turtle, for ſale; one of the turtles, which weighed near one hundred and fifty pounds, they ſold for a dollar, and ſeemed to expect the ſame piece of money for their fruit; but it being hinted to them that a dollar was too much, they deſired that one might be cut, and a piece of it given to them, but this not being complied with, they at length ſold twenty-ſix pompions for a Portugueſe petacka. When they departed, they intimated their wiſhes, that this tranſaction might not be mentioned at Batavia.

We now made but little way till night, when the land-breeze ſpringing up, we ſailed to the E. S. E. and on the following day, by the aſſiſtance of the ſea-breeze, came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. At this place we found a number of large Dutch veſſels, the Harcourt Eaſt-Indiaman from England, which had loſt her paſſage to China, and two ſhips belonging to the private trade of our India company. The Endeavour had no ſooner anchored, than a ſhip was obſerved, with a broad pendant flying, from which a boat was diſpatched to demand the name of the veſſel, with that of the commander, &c. To theſe enquiries Captain Cook gave ſuch anſwers as he thought proper, and the officer who commanded the boat departed. This gentleman, and the crew that attended him, were ſo worn out with the unhealthineſs of the climate, that it was apparent many deaths would follow: yet at preſent there was not one invalid on board of our ſhip, except

the

the Indian Tupia. The captain now diſpatched an officer to the governor of the town, to apologize for the Endeavour's not ſaluting: for he had but three guns proper for the purpoſe, except ſwivels, and he was apprehenſive that they would not be heard. The ſhip was ſo leaky, that ſhe made about nine inches water in an hour, on the average; part of the falſe keel was gone; one of her pumps was totally uſeleſs, and the reſt ſo much decayed, that they could not laſt long. The officers and ſeamen concurring in opinion that the ſhip could not ſafely put to ſea again in this condition, the captain reſolved to ſolicit permiſſion to heave her down; but as he had learned that this muſt be done in writing, he drew up a petition, and had it tranſlated into Dutch.

On Wedneſday, October the 10th, the captain and the reſt of the gentlemen went on ſhore, and applied to the only Engliſh reſident at Batavia; this gentleman, whoſe name was Leith, received his countrymen in the politeſt manner, and entertained them at dinner with great hoſpitality. Mr. Leith informed us, that a public hotel was kept in town, by order of the Dutch governor, at which place merchants and other ſtrangers were obliged to lodge, and that the landlord of the hotel was bound to find them warehouſes for their goods, on the condition of receiving ten ſhillings on every hundred pounds of their value, but as the Endeavour was a king's ſhip, her officers, and the other gentlemen, might reſide where they thought proper, only aſking leave of the governor, whoſe permiſſion would be inſtantly obtained. Mr. Leith added, that they might live cheaper in this way than at the hotel, if they had any perſon who ſpoke the Batavian tongue, whom they could rely on to purchaſe their proviſions, but as there was no ſuch perſon among the whole ſhip's crew, the gentlemen immediately beſpoke beds at the hotel. In the afternoon Captain Cook attended the governor-general, who received him politely, and told him to wait on the council the next morning, when his petition ſhould be laid before them, and every thing that he ſolicited ſhould be granted. Late in the even-

ing of this day, there happened a moſt terrible ſtorm of thunder and lightning, accompanied with very heavy rain. In this ſtorm the main-maſt of a Dutch Eaſt Indiaman was ſplit and carried away by the deck; and the main-top-maſt and main-top-gallant-maſt were torn to pieces; it is ſuppoſed, that the lightning was attracted by an iron ſpindle at the main-top-gallant-maſt-head. The Endeavour, which was at a ſmall diſtance from the Dutch ſhip, eſcaped without damage, owing, moſt probably, to the electrical chain which conducted the lightning over the veſſel.—A centinel on board the Endeavour, who was charging his muſquet at the time of the ſtorm, had it ſhaken out of his hand, and the ram-rod broken to pieces; the electrical chain looked like a ſtream of fire, and the ſhip ſuſtained a very violent ſhock.

On Thurſday the 11th, Capt. Cook waited on the gentlemen of the council, who informed him that all his requeſts ſhould be complied with. In the interim the other gentlemen made a contract with the maſter of the hotel, to furniſh them and their friends with as much tea, coffee, punch and tobacco, as they might have occaſion for, and to keep them a ſeparate table, for nine ſhillings a day Engliſh money: but on the condition that every perſon who ſhould viſit them, ſhould pay at the rate of four ſhillings and ſix-pence for his dinner, and the ſame ſum for his ſupper and bed, if he choſe to ſleep at the hotel; they were likewiſe to pay for every ſervant that attended them fifteen pence a day. It was ſoon diſcovered, that they had been much impoſed on; for theſe charges were twice as much as could have been demanded at a private houſe. They appeared to live elegantly, but at the ſame time were but ill ſupplied. Their dinner conſiſted of fifteen diſhes, all ſerved up at once; and their ſupper of thirteen, but of theſe, nine or ten were of the moſt ordinary, becauſe the cheapeſt, (poultry) that could be purchaſed, and even ſome of theſe diſhes were obſerved to be ſerved up four times ſucceſſively: a duck, which was hot at dinner, was brought cold in the evening, the next day ſerved up as a fricaſſee, and was converted

into forced meat at night. We, however, only fared as others had done before us: it was the conſtant cuſtom of the conſcientious maſter of the hotel, to treat all his gueſts in the ſame manner: if we took no notice of it, all was well, for the landlord had the better cuſtomers of us: if we remonſtrated againſt ſuch treatment, the table was better ſupplied from time to time, till, in the end, we had no reaſon to complain. However, after a few days, Mr. Banks hired for himſelf and party, a ſmall houſe, next door to the hotel, for which he paid forty-five ſhillings per month; but they were far from having the conveniencies and privacy they expected: for no perſon was permitted to ſleep in it as an occaſional gueſt, under a penalty; and Dutchmen were continually running in without the leaſt ceremony, to aſk what was to be ſold, it being a cuſtom for moſt private perſons in Batavia to be furniſhed with ſome articles of traffic. Every one here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks engaged two. Theſe carriages are open chaiſes; they hold two perſons, and are driven by a man ſitting on a kind of coach-box: for each of theſe Mr. Banks paid two rix-dollars a day.

Our Indian friend Tupia had hitherto continued on board on account of his diſorder, which was of the bilious kind, yet he perſiſted in refuſing every medicine that was offered him. Mr. Banks ſent for him to his houſe, in hopes that he might recover his health. While in the ſhip, and even in the boat, he was exceedingly liſtleſs and low ſpirited, but he no ſooner entered the town than he ſeemed as if reanimated. The houſes, the carriages, ſtreets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, wholly new to him, produced an effect like the ſuppoſed power of faſcination. But if Tupia was aſtoniſhed at the ſcene, his boy Tayeto was perfectly enraptured. He expreſſed his wonder and delight with leſs reſtraint. He danced along the ſtreet in a kind of extacy, and examined every object with a reſtleſs curioſity which was each moment excited and gratified. Tupia remarked particularly the variety of dreſſes worn by the paſſing multitude, concerning which he made many enquiries. Being informed, that here were people of different

different nations, each of whom wore the habit of his reſpective country, he deſired that he might conform to the cuſtom, and appear in that of Otaheite; and ſome South-ſea cloth being ſent for from the ſhip, he dreſſed himſelf with great expedition and dexterity. The people of Batavia, who had ſeen an Indian brought thither in M. Bougainville's ſhip, named Otourou, miſtook Tupia for that perſon, and frequently aſked if he was not the ſame. About this time we had procured an order to the ſuperintendant of the iſland of Ouruſt, where the ſhip was to be repaired, to receive her there, and by one of the ſhips that ſailed for Holland, an account was ſent to Mr. Stephens, ſecretary to the admiralty, of our arrival at this place. Here the captain found an unexpected difficulty in procuring money for the expences that would be incurred by refitting the Endeavour; private perſons had neither the ability nor inclination to advance the ſum required; he therefore ſent a written application to the governor himſelf, who ordered the Shebander to ſupply the captain with what money he might want out of the company's treaſury.

Thurſday the 18th, early in the morning, after a delay of ſome days, we ran down to Ouruſt, and laid the ſhip along-ſide of the wharf, on Cooper's Iſland, in order to take out her ſtores. After little more than nine days, we began to experience the fatal effects of the climate and ſituation. Tupia ſunk on a ſudden, and grew every day worſe and worſe. Tayeto, his boy, was ſeized with an inflammation on his lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers, and the two ſervants of the former became very ill; in ſhort, almoſt every perſon both on board and aſhore fell ſick in a few days, owing, as we imagined, to the low ſwampy ſituation of the place, and the numberleſs dirty canals, that interſect the town in all directions.

On the 26th, when few of the crew were able to do duty, we erected a tent for their reception. Tupia, of whoſe life we began to deſpair, deſired to be removed to the ſhip, in hopes of breathing a freer air; however this could not be done, as ſhe was unrigged, and pre-

paring to be laid down at the careening-place; but on the 28th, Mr. Banks conveyed him to Cooper's Iſland, or as it is called here, Kuypor, and, as he ſeemed pleaſed with the ſpot near which the ſhip lay, a tent was pitched for him. When the ſea and land breezes blew over him, he expreſſed great ſatisfaction at his ſituation. On the 30th Mr. Banks returned to town, having, from humanity alone, been two days with Tupia, whoſe fits of an intermitting fever, now became a regular tertian, and were ſo violent as to deprive him of his ſenſes while they laſted, and left him ſo weak, that he could ſcarcely crawl from his bed. At the ſame time Dr. Solander's fever increaſed, and Mr. Monkhouſe, our ſurgeon, was confined to his bed.

On Monday the 5th of November, after many unavoidable delays, the ſhip was laid down, and the ſame day Mr. Monkhouſe, our ſurgeon, fell a ſacrifice to this fatal country; whoſe loſs was more ſeverely felt, by his being a ſenſible, ſkilful man, and dying at a time when his abilities were moſt wanted. Dr. Solander was juſt able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks, in his turn, was confined to his bed. Great, inexpreſſibly great was our diſtreſs at this time; the proſpect before us in the higheſt degree diſcouraging; our danger ſuch as we could not ſurmount by any efforts of our own, for courage, diligence, and ſkill, were all equally ineffectual; and death was every day making advances towards us, when we could neither reſiſt nor fly. The power of diſeaſe, from the peſtiferous air of the country, daily gaining ſtrength, ſeveral Malay ſervants were hired to attend the ſick, but they had ſo little ſenſe either of duty or humanity, that the patient was obliged frequently to get out of bed to ſeek them.

Friday the 9th, our Indian boy Tayeto paid the debt of nature, and poor Tupia was ſo affected at the loſs, that it was doubted whether he would ſurvive it till the next day. In the mean time the ſhip's bottom having been carefully examined, it was found to be in a worſe condition than we apprehended. The falſe keel was conſiderably gone to within twenty feet of the ſtern poſt; the main keel was injured in many places; much

of

of the ſheathing was torn off; and ſeveral planks were greatly damaged: two of them, and half of a third, particularly, for the length of ſix feet, were ſo worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and the worms had made their way quite into the timbers: yet, in this condition, the Endeavour had ſailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the globe. How much miſery did we eſcape, by being ignorant that ſo conſiderable a part of the bottom of the veſſel was thinner than the ſole of a ſhoe, and that every life on board depended on ſo ſlight a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean!

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were now ſo worn down by their diſorders, that the phyſician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country. In conſequence of this advice a houſe was hired for them, at the diſtance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the maſter of the hotel, who engaged to ſupply them with proviſions, and the uſe of ſlaves. As they had already experienced the unfeeling inattention of theſe follows to the ſick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, who, from the tenderneſs of their ſex made them good nurſes. While theſe gentlemen were taking meaſures for the recovery of their health, we received an account of the death of our faithful Tupia, who ſunk at once after the loſs of his boy, Tayeto, whom he loved with the tenderneſs of a parent. When Tayeto was firſt ſeized with the fatal diſorder, he ſeemed ſenſible of his approaching end, and frequently ſaid to thoſe that were about him Tyau mate ſee, "My friends I am dying;" he was very tractable, and took any medicines that were offered him: they were both buried in the iſland of Edam.

On the 14th, the bottom of the ſhip was thorougly repaired, and much to Capt. Cook's ſatisfaction, who beſtowed great encomiums on the officers and the workmen at the Marine-yard; in his opinion there is not one in the world, where a ſhip can be laid down with more convenient ſpeed and ſafety, nor repaired with more

more diligence and ſkill. At this place they heave down with two maſts, a method we do not now practiſe; it is, however, unqueſtionably more ſafe and expeditious to heave down with two maſts than one, and the man muſt want common ſenſe, or be ſtrangely attached to old cuſtoms, who will not allow this, after ſeeing with what facility the Dutch heave down and refit their largeſt veſſels at Ouruſt. At this time Capt. Cook was taken ill. Mr. Sporing alſo, and a ſailor who attended Mr. Banks, were ſeized with the deadly intermittents, and only ten of the ſhip's company were capable of doing duty. As to Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, they recovered ſlowly at their country-houſe, which was open to the ſea-breeze, and ſituated upon a running ſtream; circumſtances that contributed not a little to a free circulation of air. Yet notwithſtanding theſe perplexing obſtacles, though harraſſed by a contagious diſeaſe, and alarmed by frequent deaths, we proceeded in rigging the ſhip, and getting water and neceſſary ſtores aboard: the ſtores were eaſily obtained and ſhipped, but the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of ſix ſhillings and eight-pence a leager, or one hundred and fifty gallons.

On the 25th, in the night there fell ſuch a ſhower of rain, for the ſpace of four hours, as even all of us had cauſe ever to remember. The water poured through every part of Mr. Banks's houſe, and the lower apartments admitted a ſtream ſufficient to turn a mill. As this gentleman was now greatly reſtored in health, he went to Batavia the following day, and was ſurprized to ſee that the inhabitants had hung their bedding to dry. About the 26th of this month the weſterly monſoon ſet in; it blows in the day-time from the N. or N. W. and from the S. W. during the night; previous to this, there had been violent ſhowers of rain for ſeveral nights. The muſquitoes and gnats, whoſe company had been ſufficiently diſagreeable in dry weather, now began to ſwarm in immenſe numbers, riſing from the puddles of water like bees from a hive; they were extremely troubleſome during the night, but the pain ariſing from the ſting, though very ſevere, ſeldom laſted more than half

an

an hour, and in the day-time they ſeldom made their attack. The frogs kept a perpetual croaking in the ditches, a certain ſign that the wet ſeaſon was commenced, and that daily rain might be expected.

The ſhip being repaired, the ſick people received on board her, and the greater part of her water and ſtores taken in, ſhe ſailed from Ouruſt on the 8th of December, and anchored in the road of Batavia: twelve days were employed in receiving the remainder of her proviſions, water, and other neceſſaries, though the buſineſs would have been done in much leſs time, but that ſome of the crew died, and the majority of the ſurvivors were ſo ill, as to be unable to give their aſſiſtance.

On the 24th, Capt. Cook took leave of the governor, and ſome other gentlemen, who had diſtinguiſhed themſelves by the civilities they ſhewed him; but at this juncture an incident occurred, that might have produced conſequences by no means deſirable A ſailor belonging to one of the Dutch ſhips in the road of Batavia, deſerted from the veſſel, and entered himſelf on board the Endeavour. The captain of the Dutch ſhip having made application to the governor, claiming the delinquent as a ſubject of the States General, the governor iſſued his order for the reſtoration of the man; when this order was delivered to him, he ſaid, that the man ſhould be given up, if he appeared to be a Dutchman. As the captain was at this time on ſhore, and did not intend going on board till the following day, he gave the Dutch officer a note to the lieutenant, who commanded on board the Endeavour, to deliver the deſerter on the condition above-mentioned. On the following day the Dutchman waited on Capt. Cook, informing him, that the lieutenant had abſolutely refuſed to give up the ſeaman, ſaying he was an Iriſhman, and of courſe a ſubject of his Britannic Majeſty; Capt. Cook applauded the conduct of his officer, and added, that it could not be expected that he ſhould deliver up an Engliſh ſubject. The Dutch officer then ſaid, he was authoriſed, by the governor, to demand the fugitive as a Daniſh ſubject, adding that his name was entered in the ſhip's books as having been born at Elſineur;

to this Capt. Cook very properly replied, that the governor muſt have been miſtaken, when he gave this order for delivering the deſerter, who had his option whether he would ſerve the Dutch or the Engliſh; but in compliment to the governor, the man ſhould be given up, as a favour, if he appeared to be a Dane, but that in this caſe, he ſhould by no means be demanded as a right, and that he would certainly keep him, if he appeared to be a ſubject of the crown of Great Britain. The Dutchman now took his leave, and he had not been long gone before the captain received a letter from the commanding officer on board, containing full proof, that the man was an Engliſh ſubject. This letter the captain carried to the ſhebander, deſiring him to lay it before the governor, and to inform him, that the man ſhould not be delivered up on any terms whatever. This ſpirited conduct on the part of Capt. Cook, had the deſired effect; and thus the matter ended.

This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen who had hitherto lived in the town, repaired on board the ſhip, which got under ſail the next morning. The Endeavour was ſaluted by the fort, and by the Elgin Eaſt Indiaman, which then lay in the road; but ſoon after theſe compliments were returned, the ſea-breeze ſetting in, they were obliged to come to anchor. Since the arrival of the ſhip in Batavia Road every perſon belonging to her had been ill, except the ſail-maker, who was more than ſeventy years old, yet this man got drunk every day while we remained there. The Endeavour buried ſeven of her people at Batavia, viz. Tupia and his boy, three of the ſailors, the ſervant of Mr. Green the aſtronomer and the ſurgeon; and at the time of the veſſel's ſailing, forty of the crew were ſick, and the reſt ſo enfeebled by their late illneſs, as to be ſcarcely able to do their duty.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

A deſcriptive Account of the Town of Batavia, and the circumjacent Country—Its various Productions particularized—The Manners, Cuſtoms, and Way of Living of the Inhabitants fully deſcribed—The Endeavour ſails from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope—An Account of the Inhabitants of Prince's Iſland, with a comparative View of their Language, with that of the Malay and Javaneſe—The Arrival of the Endeavour at the Cape of Good Hope—Obſervations on the Run from Java Head to that Place—The Cape and St. Helena deſcribed—Remarks on the Hottentots—The Endeavour returns to England, and anchors in the Downs on Wedneſday, June 12, 1771.

BAtavia, ſituated in 6 deg. 10 min. S. latitude, and 106 deg. 50 min. E. longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, is built on the bank of a large bay, ſomething more than twenty miles from the Streight of Sunda, on the north ſide of the iſland of Java, on a low boggy ground. Several ſmall rivers, which riſe forty miles up the country, in the mountains of Blaeuwen Berg, diſcharge themſelves into the ſea at this place, having firſt interſected the town in different directions. There are wide canals of nearly ſtagnated water in almoſt every ſtreet, and as the banks of the canals are planted with trees, they appear at firſt very agreeable; but theſe trees and canals combine to render the air peſtilential. Some of the rivers are navigable, more than thirty miles up the country; and indeed, the Dutch appear to have choſen this ſpot to build the town on, for the ſake of water-carriage, in which convenience Batavia exceeds every place in the world, except the towns of Holland. A writer who publiſhed an account of this place near 50 years ago, makes the number of houſes at that time 4760, viz. 1242 Dutch houſes, and 1200 Chineſe houſes, within the walls; and 1066 Dutch houſes, and 1240 Chineſe houſes, without the walls, with 12 houſes for the vending of arrack. The ſtreets

of Batavia being wide, and the houſes large, it ſtands on more ground than any place that has only an equal number of houſes. In dry weather a moſt horrid ſtench ariſes from the canals, and taints the air to a great degree; and when the rains have ſo ſwelled their canals that they overflow their banks, the ground-floors of the houſes, in the lower part of the town, are filled with ſtinking water, that leaves behind it dirt and ſlime in amazing quantities. The running ſtreams are ſometimes as offenſive as the ſtagnated canals, for the bodies of dead animals are frequently lodged on the ſhallow parts, where they are left to putrify and corrupt the air, except a flood happens to carry them away; this was the caſe of a dead buffalo, while the crew of the Endeavour were there, which lay ſtinking on the ſhoal of a river, in one of the chief ſtreets for ſeveral days. They ſometimes clean the canals; but this buſineſs is performed in ſuch a manner, as ſcarcely to make them leſs a nuiſance than before, for the bottom being cleared of its black mud, it is left on the ſide of the canal till it is hard enough to be taken away in boats, and as there are no houſes for neceſſary retirement in the whole town, the filth is thrown into the canals regularly once a day; ſo that this mud is a compound of every thing that can be imagined diſagreeable and offenſive.

The new church in Batavia, is a fine piece of building, and the dome of it may be ſeen far off at ſea. This church is illuminated by chandeliers of the moſt ſuperb workmanſhip, and has a fine organ: moſt of the other public buildings are ancient, conſtructed in an ill taſte, and gave a very compleat idea of Dutch clumſineſs. Their method of building their houſes ſeems to have been taught them by the climate. On the ground-floor there is no room but a large hall, a corner of which is parted off for the tranſaction of buſineſs; the hall has two doors, which are commonly left open, and are oppoſite each other, ſo that the air paſſes freely through the room, in the middle of which there is a court, which at once increaſes the draft of air, and affords light to the hall; the ſtairs, which are at one corner, lead to large and lofty apartments above.

above. The female ſlaves are not permitted to ſit in any place but the alcove formed by the court, and this is the uſual dining place of the family.

Batavia is encompaſſed by a river of ſhallow water, the ſtream of which is very rapid; within this river, which is of different widths in various places, is an old ſtone wall, much decayed in many places, and within the wall is a canal wider in ſome places than in others, ſo that there is no entering the gates of the town but by croſſing two draw-bridges; there are but few on the ramparts, and no perſons are permitted to walk there. There is a kind of citadel, or caſtle, in the N. E. corner of the town, the walls of which are both broader and higher than they are in other parts; it is furniſhed with a number of large guns, which command the landing-place.

Apartments are provided in this caſtle for the governor-general and all the council; and in caſe of a ſiege they have orders to retire thither. In the caſtle are likewiſe a number of ſtore-houſes, in which the effects belonging to the company are depoſited. The company have in their poſſeſſion large quantities of gun-powder, which is kept in different places, that the lightning may not deſtroy the whole ſtock at once; a great number of cannon are likewiſe laid up within the caſtle. There are a great many forts built in different parts of the country, ſeveral miles diſtant from Batavia, moſt probably erected to keep the natives in ſubmiſſion; and beſides theſe there are a number of fortified houſes, each mounting eight guns, which are ſo ſtationed as to command the canals and the roads on the borders. There are houſes of this kind in many parts of the iſland of Java, and the other iſlands in its neighbourhood, of which the Dutch have obtained poſſeſſion. The Chineſe having rebelled againſt them in the year 1740, all their principal houſes were demoliſhed by the cannon of one of theſe fortified houſes, which is in the town of Batavia, where, likewiſe, there are a few more of them.

The roads of this country are only banks between the ditches and canals, and the fortified houſes being

erected among the moraſſes near theſe roads, nothing is eaſier than to deſtroy them, and conſequently to prevent an enemy from bringing any heavy artillery near the town: if, indeed, an enemy be only hindered a ſhort time in his approach, he is effectually ruined, for the climate will preclude the neceſſity of the uſe of weapons for his deſtruction. Before the Endeavour had been a week at Batavia, her crew began to feel the ill effects of the climate; half of them were rendered incapable of doing their duty before the expiration of a month. They were informed, that it was a very uncommon thing for 50 ſoldiers out of 100 brought from Europe, to be alive at the expiration of the firſt year, and that of the fifty who might happen to be living, not ten of thoſe would be in ſound health, and, probably, not leſs than half of them in the hoſpital.

In Batavia all the white inhabitants are ſoldiers, and, at the expiration of five years ſervice, they are bound to hold themſelves in readineſs to go to war, if they ſhould be wanted, and the younger inhabitants are frequently muſtered; but as they are neither trained nor exerciſed after the expiration of the five years beforementioned, the little they have learned is ſoon forgotten. The Indians, of whatever nation, who reſide here, and have either been made free, or were born ſo, are called Mardykers; but neither theſe nor the Chineſe are acquainted with fire-arms, yet as theſe people are ſaid to poſſeſs great perſonal bravery, much might be expected from their expert uſe of their daggers, ſwords and lances. It would be a laborious taſk to attack Batavia by land, and it is not poſſible to make any attack at all by ſea, for the ſhallowneſs of the water would hinder any veſſels from advancing within cannon-ſhot of the walls; indeed there is barely depth of water for a ſhip's long-boat, except a narrow channel, called the river, which extends half a mile into the harbour, and is ſtrongly bounded on each ſide with piers, the other end of it being directly under the fire of the caſtle, while its communication with the canals of the town is prevented by a boom of wood, which is

every

every night ſhut preciſely at ſix o'clock, and never opened till the following day.

In the harbour of Batavia, any number of ſhips may anchor, the ground is ſo excellent that the anchor will never quit its hold. This harbour is ſometimes dangerous for boats, when the ſea-breezes blow freſh; but, upon the whole, it is deemed the beſt and moſt commodious in all India. There is a conſiderable number of iſlands, which are ſituated round the outſide of the harbour, and all theſe are in the poſſeſſion of the Dutch, who deſtine them to different purpoſes. On one of them, which is called Purmerent, an hoſpital is erected, on acconnt of the air being purer than it is at Batavia. In a ſecond, the name of which is Kuyper, are erected numbers of warehouſes, wherein are lodged the rice and ſome other commodities, which belong to the Dutch Eaſt-India Company; at this iſland thoſe ſhips belonging to different nations, which are to be repaired at Ouruſt, unload their cargoes: and it was here that the ſtores of the Falmouth man of war were laid up, when ſhe was condemned on her return from Manilla; her warrant officers, of whom mention has been made in the account of Captain Willis's voyage, were ſent to Europe in Dutch ſhips about half a year before the Endeavour anchored in the road of Batavia. A third of theſe iſlands, the name of which is Edam, is appropriated to the reception of certain offenders, whoſe crimes are not deemed worthy of death, and thither they are tranſported from Holland, and detained from five to forty years, in proportion to the heinouſneſs of the offence they have committed: making of ropes is the principal part of the employment of theſe criminals.

The environs of Batavia have a very pleaſing appearance, and would in almoſt any other country, be an enviable ſituation. Gardens and houſes occupy the country for ſeveral miles, but the former are ſo covered with trees, that the advantage of the land having been cleared of the wood that originally covered it, is almoſt wholly loſt; while theſe gardens and the fields adjacent to them are ſurrounded by ditches which yield a diſagreeable

diſagreeable ſmell; and the bogs and moraſſes in the adjacent fields are ſtill more offenſive. For the ſpace of more than thirty miles beyond the town, the land is totally flat, except in two places, on one of which the governor's country-ſeat is built, and on the other they hold a large market; but neither of theſe places is higher than ten yards from the level of the plain. At near forty miles from the town the land riſes into hills, and the air is purified in a great degree; to this diſtance the invalids are ſent by their phyſicians when every other proſpect of their recovery has failed, and the experiment ſucceeds in almoſt every inſtance, for the ſick are reſtored to health; but they no ſooner return to the town, than their former diſorders reviſit them. On theſe hills the moſt opulent of the inhabitants have country ſeats, to which they pay an annual viſit. Thoſe who reſide conſtantly on the hills, enjoy an almoſt perpetual flow of health; and moſt of the vegetables of Europe grow as freely there as in their native ground: the ſtrawberry in particular flouriſhes greatly, which is a ſufficient proof of the coolneſs of the air.

In this country rice is very plentiful, and, in order to be brought to perfection, ſhould lie under water more than half the time it is growing: but they have a ſort which grows on the ſides of the hills, which is unknown in the Weſt-India iſlands; this ſort is planted when the wet ſeaſon commences, and the crop is gathered in, ſoon after the rains are over. The maize, which grows near Batavia, is gathered while young, and roaſted in the ear. The land likewiſe produces carrots, celery, parſley, aſparagus, onions, radiſhes, cabbages, lettuces, cucumbers, lentiles, kidney-beans, hyſſop, ſage, rue, Chineſe white radiſhes, which when boiled, are not unlike a parſnip, common potatoes, ſweet potatoes, wet and dry yams, millet, and the egg plant, the fruit of which, when broiled and eaten with ſalt and pepper, is moſt exquiſite food. Amazing crops of ſugar are produced here, and, while the quantity is beyond compariſon greater, the care of cultivation is inconceivably leſs than in the Weſt-India iſlands. White ſugar is retailed at two-pence half-penny the pound; and arrack

is

is made of the molaſſes, with a ſmall addition of rice, and the wine of the cocoa-nut. The inhabitants likewiſe raiſe a little indigo for their own uſe, but do not export it.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of ſome of theſe there are of ſeveral kinds. Pine-apples grow in ſuch abundance, that they may be purchaſed at the firſt hand, for the value of an Engliſh farthing; and we bought ſome very large ones for a half-penny a piece at the fruit-ſhops, and their taſte is very excellent. They grow ſo luxuriantly, that ſeven or eight ſuckers have been ſeen adhering to one ſtem. The ſweet oranges of Batavia are good of their kind, but very dear at particular times. The ſhaddocks of the Weſt-Indies, called here pamplemooſes, have an agreeable flavour. Lemons were very ſcarce when the Endeavour lay in the harbour, but limes were altogether as plentiful, and ſold at little more than two-pence the ſcore. There are many kinds of oranges and lemons, but none of them excellent. Of mangoes there are plenty, but their taſte is far inferior to the melting peach of England, to which they have been compared. It is ſaid that the heat, and extreme dampneſs of the climate does not agree with them, yet there are many different kinds of them. Of bananas, there are an amazing variety of ſorts, ſome of which being boiled, are eaten as bread, while others are fried in batter, and are a nouriſhing food: but of the numerous ſorts of fruit, three only are fit to be eaten: one indeed is remarkable, becauſe it is filled with ſeeds, which are not common to the reſt. Grapes are ſold from one ſhilling to eighteen pence a pound, though they are far from being good. The tamarinds are cheap and plentiful; but as the method of preſerving them, which is in ſalt, renders them a mere black lump, they are equally nauſeating to the ſight, and to the palate. The water melons are excellent of their kind, and are produced in great abundance. The pompions are boiled as turnips, and eaten with ſalt and pepper. This fruit is admirably adapted to the uſe of voyagers, as it will keep many months without care, and makes an excellent

pye, when mixed with the juice of lemons and ſugar. The papans of this country are ſuperior to turnips, if the cores are extracted, after paring them when they are green. The guava has a ſtrong ſmell, and a taſte not leſs diſagreeable: it is probable, that the guava of the Weſt-Indies, which many writers have diſtinguiſhed by their praiſes, has a very different flavour. The ſweet ſop is a fruit that has but little flavour: it abounds in large kernels, from which the pulp is ſucked. The taſte of the cuſtard-apple very much reſembles the diſh from which its name is taken. The caſheu apple produces a nut which is not unknown in England, but the fruit has ſuch an aſtringent quality, that the Batavians ſeldom eat of it: the nut grows on the top of the apple. The cocoa-nut is plentiful in this country, and there are ſeveral kinds of this fruit, the beſt of which is very red between the ſhell and the ſkin. The jamboo is a fruit that has but little taſte, but is of a cooling nature: it is conſiderably leſs than a common-ſized apple, and thoſe that have grown to their full ſize, are always the beſt; its ſhape is oval, and its colour a deep red. Of the Jambu-eyer, there are two kinds, the white and the red: they are ſhaped like a bell, and are ſomething bigger than a cherry: they have no kind of taſte but that of a watry acid. The Jambu-eyer mauwar, ſmells like a roſe, and its taſte is not unlike that of conſerve of roſes. The mangoſtan is of a dark red colour, and not larger than a ſmall apple: to the bottom of this fruit adhere ſeveral little leaves of the bloſſoms, while on its tops are a number of triangles combined in a circle, it contains ſeveral kernels ranged in a circular form, within which is the pulp, a fruit of moſt exquiſite taſte; it is equally nutritious and agreeable, and is conſtantly given to perſons who are troubled with inflammatory or putrid fevers. The ſweet orange of this country is likewiſe given in the ſame diſorders. The pomegranate of theſe parts differs in nothing from that generally known in England. The durion takes its name from the word dure, which, in the language of that country, means prickles, and the name is well adapted to the fruit, the ſhell of which is covered

vered with ſharp points, ſhaped like a ſugar-loaf: its contents are nuts not much ſmaller than cheſnuts, which are ſurrounded with a kind of juice reſembling cream; and of this the inhabitants eat with great avidity: the ſmell of this fruit is more like that of onions, that any other European vegetable, and its taſte is like that of onions, ſugar, and cream intermixed: the inſide of the durion, when ripe, is parted, lengthways, into ſeveral diviſions. The nanca is a fruit that ſmells like garlick and apples mixed together: its ſize in the gardens of Batavia, is not bigger than that of a middling ſized pompion, and its ſhape is nearly the ſame: it is covered with prickles of an angular form. We were informed that, at a place called Madura, it has been known to grow to ſuch an enormous ſize as to require the ſtrength of two men to carry it. The champada is in all reſpects like the nanca, only that it is not ſo large. The rambutan contains a fruit within which is a ſtone, that is perhaps the fineſt acid in the world: this fruit is not unlike a cheſnut with its huſk on; and it is covered with ſmall prickles of a dark red colour, and ſo ſoft as to yield to the ſlighteſt impreſſion. The gambolan reſembles a damaſcen both in colour and ſize, and is of a very aſtringent nature. The boa bidarra taſtes like an apple, and is likewiſe extremely aſtringent: its ſize is that of a gooſeberry, its form round, and its colour yellow. The nam nam makes an excellent fritter, if fried in batter, but is not eſteemed when raw: the rind of it is rough, its length is about three inches, and its ſhape not unlike that of a kidney. The catappa and the canare are two ſpecies of nuts, the kernels of which are like thoſe of an almond, but ſo hard, that it is almoſt impoſſible to break them. The madja contains a pulp of a ſharp taſte, which is eaten with ſugar: this fruit is covered with a hard ſhell. The ſuntal is a fruit ſcarcely fit to be eaten, being at once aſtringent, acid, and of a moſt unpleaſant taſte, yet it is publicly ſold in the ſtreets of Batavia: it contains a number of kernels, which are incloſed in a thick ſkin. The ſalack is nearly of the ſize of a ſmall golden pippin, and contains a few kernels of a yellow colour, the taſte of which is

not unlike that of a ſtrawberry; but the covering of this fruit is very remarkable, as it conſiſts of a number of ſcales, reſembling thoſe of a fiſh. The cheſrema and the blimbing, are two ſour fruits, exceedingly well adapted to make ſour ſauce, and pickles. The blimbing beſſe is another fruit of the ſame kind, but conſiderably ſweeter.

Of the fruits not in ſeaſon when Captain Cook was at Batavia, are the boa atap, and the kinſhip, which he ſaw preſerved in ſugar: and there are ſeveral other ſorts which the Batavians are fond of, but they are never eaten by ſtrangers: among thoſe are the moringa, the guilindina, the killer, and the ſoccum; this laſt has the appearance of the bread-fruit which is produced in the iſlands of the South Seas, but it is not near ſo good, though the tree on which it grows is almoſt exactly like the bread-fruit tree. At Batavia vaſt quantities of fruit are eaten. There are two markets held weekly, at diſtant places, for the better accommodation of thoſe who reſide in different parts of the country. Here the fruit-ſellers meet the gardeners, and purchaſe the goods at low rates. We are told it is not uncommon to ſee fifty or ſixty loads of pine-apples careleſly thrown together at thoſe markets. Flowers are ſtrewn by the inhabitants of Batavia and Java, about their houſes, and they are conſtantly burning aromatic woods and gums, which is ſuppoſed to be done by way of purifying the air from the ſtench that ariſes from the canals and ditches about the town.

In this country ſweet ſcented flowers are plentiful, many ſpecies of which being entirely unknown, are worth remarking. The combang tonquin, and combang carenaſſi, are particularly fragrant flowers, which bear ſcarcely any reſemblance to any of thoſe flowers with which we are acquainted. They are very ſmall, and ſeem to be of the dog's-bane ſpecies. The camunga which is more like a bunch of leaves than a flower, is of a ſingular ſmell, but very grateful. The bon tanjong is of a pale yellow caſt, and has a very agreeable ſmell; it is about an inch and a half in circumference, and conſiſts of pointed leaves, which give

it

it the appearance of a ſtar. The champacka ſmells ſomewhat like a jonquil, but is rather of a deeper yellow. A large tree upon the iſland produces this flower. There is alſo an extraordinary kind of flower called fundal malam, which ſignifies the intriguer of the night. This flower has no ſmell in the day-time, but as night comes on, it has a very fragrant ſcent, and is very much like the Engliſh tuberoſe. Theſe flowers being made into noſegays of different ſhapes, or ſtrung upon thread, are carried through the ſtreet for ſale on an evening. The gardens of the gentlemen produce ſeveral other ſorts of flowers beſides theſe which we have mentioned, but they are not offered to ſale, becauſe there is not a ſufficient plenty of them. A plant, called the pandang, is produced here, the leaves of which being ſhred ſmall, and mixed with other flowers, the natives of both ſexes fill their cloaths and hair with this mixture, which they likewiſe ſprinkle on their beds, and ſleep under this heap of ſweets, a thin piece of chintz being their only covering.

Formerly the only ſpice that grew on the iſland of Java was pepper. A conſiderable quantity is brought from thence by the Dutch, but very little of it is made uſe of in the country. The inhabitants perfer cayan pepper, and are fond of cloves and nutmeg, but theſe firſt are too dear to be commonly uſed. Near the iſland of Amboyna are ſome little iſles, on which the cloves grow, and the Dutch were not eaſy till they all became their property. Scarcely any other nutmegs are found but on the iſland of Banda, which however furniſhes enough for all the nations that have a demand for that commodity. There are but few nutmeg-trees on the coaſt of New Guinea. The iſland of Java, of which we have already ſpoken, produces horſes, buffaloes, ſheep, goats, and hogs. The ſort of horſes ſaid to have been met with here when the country was firſt diſcovered, appeared to be nimble animals though ſmall, being generally ſeldom above thirteen hands high. The horned cattle of this country are different from thoſe of Europe. They are quite lean, but of a very fine grain. The Chineſe and the natives of Java

eat the buffaloes fleſh, which the Dutch conſtantly refuſe, being impreſſed with a ſtrange idea that it is feveriſh. The ſheep are hairy like goats, and have long ears: they are moſtly found to be tough and ill-taſted. There happening to be a few from the Cape of Good Hope at Batavia, ſome of them were purchaſed at the rate of one ſhilling a pound. The hogs, eſpecially thoſe of the Chineſe ſtock, are very fine food, but ſo fat, that the lean is ſeparately ſold to the butchers, who are Chineſe; the fat, they melt and ſell to their countrymen to be eaten with their rice. Yet though theſe hogs are ſo fine, the Dutch prefer their own breed, and the conſequence is that theſe latter are ſold at extravagant rates.

As the Portugueſe ſhoot the wild hogs and deer, they are ſold at a moderate price, and are good eating. As to the goats of this country they are as indifferent as the ſheep. Dogs and cats are found here in abundance, and there are numbers of wild horſes at a conſiderable diſtance from Batavia, on the mountains. There are a few monkeys ſeen near the town; but there are many on the mountains and deſart-places, where there are alſo tygers, and a few rhinoceroſes.

Of fiſh an aſtoniſhing quantity is taken here, and all are fine food, except a few that are ſcarce; yet the inhabitants will not eat thoſe that are found in abundance, but purchaſe thoſe which are worſe and ſcarcer, a circumſtance that contributes to keep up the price of the latter. A prejudice likewiſe prevails among the Dutch which prevents them from eating any of the turtle caught in theſe parts, which are very good food, though not equal to thoſe that are found in the Weſt-Indies. Very large lizards are common at Batavia; ſome of them are ſaid to be as thick as a man's thigh; and Mr. Banks ſhot one five feet long, which being dreſt, proved very agreeable to the taſte. We found ſnipes of two different ſorts; and thruſhes might have been purchaſed of the Portugueſe, who were the only dealers in this ſort of birds, and venders of wild fowl in the country. In the iſland are palm-wine, and arrack. Of the former are three ſorts, the firſt of which is drank in a few hours after it is drawn from the tree, and is moderately

ſweet;

ſweet; the ſecond and third ſorts are made by fermentation, and by putting ſeveral ſorts of herbs and roots into the liquor.

In Java, the religion of Mahomet is profeſſed, for which reaſon the natives do not make uſe of wine publicly; but in private few of them will refuſe it. They alſo chew opium, whoſe intoxicating qualities prove its recommendation to the natives of India.

If we exclude the Chineſe, and the Indians of different nations, who inhabit Batavia and its environs, the inhabitants only amount to a ſmall number, not a fifth part of whom are ſaid to be Dutchmen, even by deſcent. The Portugueſe out-number all the European ſettlers on the iſland. The troops in the ſervice of the ſtates of Holland, are compoſed of the natives of almoſt all the nations of Europe; but the greater part of them are Germans. When any perſon goes to reſide at Batavia, he is obliged to enter firſt as a ſoldier, to ſerve their company for five years. Afterwards he applies for a leave of abſence to the council, which being granted as a thing of courſe, he engages in any buſineſs that he thinks proper to chuſe. There is however a ſort of policy in this matter, ſince the Dutch have thus always a force ready to arm and join their troops in this country upon any emergency; all places of power and profit are held by the Dutch, and no foreigner has any ſhare in the management of public affairs.

Notwithſtanding all the men of other countries are bound to obſerve the rules above-mentioned, yet women from all parts may remain here unmoleſted. It appeared that the whole place could not furniſh fifty females who were natives of Europe; yet the town abounded with white women, who were deſcended from Europeans, that had ſettled there at different times, all the men having paid the debt of nature; for ſo it is, that the climate of Batavia deſtroys the men much faſter than the women. Theſe women follow the delicate cuſtom of chewing beetle, after the example of the native Javaneſe, whoſe dreſs they imitate, and whoſe manners they copy, in all reſpects. Mercantile buſineſs is conducted at Batavia with the ſlighteſt trouble imaginable.

imaginable. When a merchant receives an order for goods of any kind, he communicates the contents of it to the Chineſe, who are the univerſal manufacturers. The Chineſe agent delivers the effects on board the ſhip for which they are beſpoke, and taking a receipt for them from the maſter of the veſſel, he delivers it to the merchant, who pays the Chineſe for the goods, and reſerves a conſiderable profit, without the leaſt trouble, riſque, or anxiety. But when a merchant imports goods of any kind, he receives them himſelf, and lodges them in his own warehouſes. It may be wondered that the Chineſe do not ſhip the goods on their account, but from this they are reſtricted, and compelled to ſell them to the merchants only. The inhabitants of Java diſtinguiſh the Portugueſe by the name of Oranſeranc, that is, Nazarene-men; but theſe uſe the general term of Caper, or Caſir, reſpecting all who do not profeſs the religion of Mahomet, and in this they include the Portugueſe. But the Portugueſe of Batavia are ſo only in name; for they have neither any connection with, or knowledge of the kingdom of Portugal, and they have changed the religion of the church of Rome, for that of Luther; with the manners of the natives, they are wholly familiariſed, and they commonly ſpeak their language, though they are able to converſe in a corrupt kind of Portugueſe. They dreſs in the habit of the country, with a difference only in the manner of wearing their hair; their noſes are more peaked and their ſkin of a deeper caſt than that of the natives. Some of them are mechanics and artificers, others ſubſiſt by waſhing of linen, and the reſt procure a maintenance by hunting.

The Indians of Batavia, and the country in its neighbourhood, are not native Javaneſe, but are either born on the ſeveral iſlands from whence the Dutch bring their ſlaves, or the offſpring of ſuch as have been born on thoſe iſlands; and theſe having been made free either in their own perſons or in the perſons of their anceſtors, enjoy all the privileges of freemen. They receive the general appellation of believers of the true faith. The various other Indian inhabitants of this country attach themſelves

themſelves each to the original cuſtoms of that in which themſelves or their anceſtors were born; keeping themſelves apart from thoſe of other nations, and practiſing both the virtues and vices peculiar to their own countries. The cultivation of gardens, and the conſequent ſale of flowers and fruit afford ſubſiſtence to great numbers of them: theſe are the people who raiſe the beetle and areca, which being mixed with lime, and a ſubſtance that is called gambir, the produce of the Indian continent, is chewed by perſons of all ranks, women as well as men: indeed ſome of the politer ladies make an addition of cardamom, and other aromatics, to take off the diſagreeable ſmell with which the breath would be otherwiſe tainted. Some of the Indians are very rich, keep a great number of ſlaves, and live, in all reſpects, according to the cuſtom of their reſpective countries, while others are employed to carry goods by water: and others again ſubſiſt by fiſhing. The Oranſlams, or believers of the faith, feed principally on boiled rice, mixed with a ſmall quantity of dried ſhrimps and other fiſh, which are imported from China, and a little of the fleſh of buffaloes and chickens; they are fond of fruit, of which they eat large quantities, and with the flour of the rice they make ſeveral ſorts of paſtry. They ſometimes make very ſuperb entertainments, after the faſhion of their reſpective countries; but, in general, they are a very temperate people; of wine they drink very little, if any, as the religion of Mahomet, which they profeſs, forbids the uſe of it. When a marriage is to be ſolemnized among them, all the gold and ſilver ornaments that can be procured, are borrowed to deck out the young couple, who, on theſe occaſions, never fail to make the moſt ſplendid appearance; ſumptuous entertainments are given by thoſe who can afford them, which continue twelve or fourteen days, and frequently more, during all which time the women take care that the bridegroom ſhall not viſit his wife privately, though the wedding takes place previous to the feſtival. All theſe Indians, though they come from different countries, ſpeak the Malay language if it deſerves that name. On the iſland of Java there

are two or three different dialects, and there is a language peculiar to every ſmall iſland; it is conjectured that the Malay tongue is a corruption of the language of Malacca. The hair of theſe people, which is black without a ſingle exception, grows in great abundance; yet the women make uſe of oils, and other ingredients, to increaſe the quantity of it: they faſten it to the crown of the head with a bodkin, having firſt twiſted it into a circle, round which they place an elegant wreath of flowers, ſo that the whole head-dreſs has a moſt beautiful appearance. It is the univerſal cuſtom both with the men and women, to bathe in a river once every day, and ſometimes oftener, which not only promotes health, but prevents that contraction of filth, that would be otherwiſe unavoidable in ſo hot a climate. The teeth of the Oranſlams have ſome particulars in them well worthy of notice. With a kind of whetſtone they rub the ends of them till they are quite flat and even; they then make a deep groove in the teeth of the upper jaw, in the centre between the bottom of each tooth and the gum, and horizontally with the latter; this groove is equal in depth to a quarter of the thickneſs of the teeth; yet none of theſe people have a rotten tooth, though according to the dentiſts of England and France, ſuch a thing muſt be unavoidable, as the tooth is placed much deeper than what we call the enamel. The teeth of theſe people became very black by the chewing of beetle, yet a ſlight waſhing will take off this blackneſs, and they will then become perfectly white; but they are very ſeldom waſhed, as the depth of the colour is very far from being thought diſagreeable. Moſt of our readers muſt have heard of the Mohawks; and theſe are the people who are ſo denominated, from a corruption of the word amock, which will be explained by the following ſtory and obſervations. To run amock is to get drunk with opium, and then ſeizing ſome offenſive weapon, to ſally forth from the houſe, kill the perſon or perſons ſuppoſed to have injured the Amock, and any other perſon that attempts to impede his paſſage, till he himſelf is taken priſoner or killed on the ſpot. While Captain Cook was at Batavia, a perſon,

perſon, whoſe circumſtances in life were independent, being jealous of his brother, intoxicated himſelf with opium, and then murdered his brother, and two other men who endeavoured to ſeize him. This man, contrary to the uſual cuſtom, did not leave his own houſe, but made his reſiſtance from within it; yet he had taken ſuch a quantity of the opium, that he was delirious, which appeared from his attempting to fire three muſquets, neither of which had been loaded, nor even primed. Jealouſy of the women is the uſual reaſon of theſe poor creatures running amock [or a-muck] and the firſt object of their vengeance is the perſons whom they ſuppoſe to have injured them. The officer, whoſe buſineſs it is to apprehend theſe unhappy wretches, is furniſhed with a long pair of tongs, in order to take hold of them without coming within the reach of the point of their weapon. Thoſe who may be taken alive, which is not often the caſe, are generally wounded; but they are always broken upon the wheel; and if the phyſician, who is appointed to examine their wounds, thinks them likely to be mortal, the puniſhment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the ſpot where the firſt murder was committed. A number of abſurd cuſtoms prevailed among theſe people, and opinions no leſs ridiculous. They believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the author of ſickneſs and adverſity; therefore, when ſick, or in diſtreſs, they offer meat, money, and other things, as propitiatory ſacrifices. Should one among them be reſtleſs, or ſhould he dream for two or three nights ſucceſſively, he imagines the devil has laid his commands upon him, when, upon neglect to fulfil, he concludes his puniſhment will certainly be ſickneſs or death, though ſuch commands may not be revealed with ſufficient perſpicuity. To interpret his dream therefore, he ſtrains his wits to the uttermoſt, and if, by taking it literally, or figuratively directly, or by contraries, he can put no explanation that ſatisfies him, he applies to the Cawin or prieſt, who unravels the myſterious ſuggeſtions of the night, by a comment, in which it generally appears, that Satan wants victuals or money. Theſe are placed

on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, and hung upon the branch of a tree near the river, ſo that it ſeems not to be the opinion of theſe people, that in prowling the earth the devil "walketh through dry places." Mr. Banks once aſked, whether they thought Satan ſpent the money, or eat the victuals; they ſaid, that as to the money it was conſidered rather as a mulet upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it; and that therefore if it was devoted by the dreamer, it did not ſignify into whoſe hands it came, and they ſuppoſed it was generally the prize of ſome ſtranger who wandered that way; but reſpecting the meat, they were clearly of opinion, that, although the devil did not eat the groſs parts, yet by bringing his mouth near it, he ſucked out all its ſavour without changing its poſition, ſo that afterwards it was as inſipid as water.

Another ſuperſtitious notion of this people is ſtill more unaccountable. They imagine that women, when delivered of children, are at the ſame time delivered of a young crocodile; and that thoſe animals being received carefully by the midwifes, are immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which ſuch a birth is ſuppoſed to have happened, conſtantly puts victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, eſpecially the twin, who as long as he lives, goes down to the river at ſtated times, to fulfil his fraternal duty; for an omiſſion of which, according to the general opinion, he will be viſited with ſickneſs or death. We are at a loſs to account for an opinion ſo extravagant and abſurd, eſpecially as it ſeems to be unconnected with any religious myſtery, and how it ſhould be pretended to happen by thoſe who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent intereſt in the fraud, is a problem ſtill more difficult to ſolve. The ſtrange belief of this abſurdity, however, is certain, for which we had the concurrent teſtimony of every Indian who was queſtioned about it; and as to its origin, it ſeems to have taken its riſe in the iſlands of Celebes and Boutou, at which places many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that be, this opinion has ſpread

over

over all the eaſtern iſlands, even to Timor and Cream, and weſtward as far as Java and Sumatra. The crocodile twins are called ſudaras, and we ſhall here relate one of the innumerable and incredible ſtories, in proof of their exiſtence, as was confidently affirmed, from ocular demonſtrations; yet for the credibility of this relation we will not vouch.

At Bencoolen was born and bred among the Engliſh a young female ſlave, who had learnt a little of the language. This girl told Mr. Banks that her father, when on his death bed, informed her that he had a crocodile for his ſudara, and in a ſolemn manner charged her to give him meat when he ſhould be dead, telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in conſequence of her father's injunctions, ſhe repaired to that part of the river he had deſcribed, and ſtanding upon the bank, called out Radja Pouti, "white king;" whereupon the crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the proviſions ſhe had brought him. Being deſired to deſcribe this paternal uncle, ſhe ſaid, that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handſomer, that his body was ſpotted and his noſe red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and earrings of the ſame metal in his ears. This ridiculous tale was heard by Mr. Banks patiently to the end, and he then diſmiſſed the girl, without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as ſtrange a monſter as a dog with a cloven foot. Not long after this a ſervant whom Mr. Banks had hired at Batavia, a ſon of a Dutchman by a Javaneſe women, told his maſter, that he had ſeen a crocodile of the ſame kind, and it had been ſeen by ſeveral others both Dutchmen and Malays. This crocodile the ſervant ſaid was very young, two feet long, and its feet were ornamented with bracelets of gold. I cannot credit theſe idle ſtories, ſaid Mr. Banks. The other day a perſon aſſerted that crocodiles had earrings, and you know that cannot be true, becauſe crocodiles have not ears. Ah, Sir, replied the man, theſe ſudara oran are unlike other crocodiles; for they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their

mouth, and ears likewiſe, though indeed they are very ſmall. Who can ſet bounds to the ignorance of credulity and folly! However, in the girl's relation were ſome things in which ſhe could not be deceived; and therefore muſt be guilty of wilful falſehood. Her father might command her to feed a crocodile, in conſequence of his believing it to be his ſudara; but its coming out of the river at her call, and eating the food from her hand, muſt have been a fable of her own invention, and being ſuch, it was impoſſible that ſhe could believe it to be true. However, the girl's ſtory, and that of the man's, evinces, that they both believed the exiſtence of crocodiles that were ſudaras to men; and the fiction invented by the girl may be eaſily accounted for, if we do but conſider, how earneſtly every one deſires to make others believe what he believes himſelf. The Bougis, Macaſſars, and Boetons, are ſo firmly perſuaded that they have relations of the crocodile ſpecies, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties go out in a boat, furniſhed with great plenty of proviſions, and all kinds of muſic. They then row backwards and forwards, in places of the river where crocodiles and allegators are moſt common, ſinging and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears, when the muſic inſtantly ſtops, and proviſions, beetle, and tobacco, are thrown into the water. This civility is intended to recommend themſelves to their relations at home; not without hopes, perhaps, that it will be accepted inſtead of more expenſive offerings which may not be in their power to pay.

The Chineſe ſtand in the next rank to the Indians, and are very numerous, but poſſeſs very little property. Many of them live within the walls, and are ſhopkeepers. We have already mentioned the fruit-ſellers of Paſſar Piſſang; but others have a rich ſtock of European and Chineſe goods. However, the far greater part of theſe people live without the walls, in a quarter by themſelves, which is called Campang China. Moſt part of them are carpenters, joiners, ſmiths, taylors, ſlipper-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers. They maintain

maintain the character of induſtry, univerſally beſtowed upon them; and many are ſcattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, ſow rice and ſugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whoſe milk they bring every day to town. Yet notwithſtanding their commendable ſpirit of induſtry, we muſt obſerve, there is nothing honeſt or diſhoneſt, provided there is no danger of a halter, that the Chineſe will not readily do for money; and though they work with much diligence, nor are ſparing of their labour, yet no ſooner have they laid down their tools, than they begin to game either at cards or dice, or at other diverſions altogether unknown among Europeans. To theſe they apply with ſuch eagerneſs, as ſcarcely to allow time for neceſſary refreſhments of food and ſleep. In manners they are always rather obſequious; and in dreſs they are remarkably neat and clean, in whatever rank of life they are placed. A deſcription of their perſons or dreſs is unneceſſary, ſeeing the better kind of China paper common in England, exhibits an exact repreſentation of both, though perhaps with ſome ſlight exaggerations. With reſpect to their eating, they are eaſily ſatisfied; but the few that are rich have many ſavory diſhes. The food of the poor is rice, with a ſmall proportion of fleſh or fiſh; and they have the advantage of the Mahomedan Indians, on account of their religion; for the Chineſe, being under no reſtraint, eat, beſides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, ſerpents, and a great variety of ſea animals, which the other inhabitants do not conſider as food. They alſo eat many vegetables, which an European, except he was periſhing with hunger, would not taſte. They have a ſingular cuſtom reſpecting the burying their dead; for they cannot be prevailed upon to open the ground a ſecond time, where the body has been depoſited. On this account, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, their burying-grounds contain many hundred acres; and the Dutch, pretending this to be a waſte of land, will not ſell any for this purpoſe, unleſs at an exorbitant price. The Chineſe, however, contrive to raiſe the purchaſe money, and afford another inſtance of the folly and weakneſs of human nature, in

transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that an object of ſolicitude and expence, which cannot receive the leaſt benefit from either. Under the influence of this univerſal prejudice, they take an uncommon method to preſerve the body entire, and to prevent the remains of it from mixing with the earth that ſurrounds it. To this end they encloſe it in a large thick wooden coffin, hollowed out of ſolid timber like a canoe. This when covered and let down into the grave, is ſurrounded with a coat of mortar, called chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a ſhort time cements, and becomes as hard as ſtone. The relatives of the deceaſed attend the funeral ceremony, with a conſiderable number of female mourners, hired to weep. In Batavia, the law requires, that every man ſhould be interred according to his rank, which is in no caſe to be diſpenſed with; ſo that if the deceaſed has not left ſufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what was in his poſſeſſion when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner preſcribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors.

The loweſt claſs of people in this country are the ſlaves, by whom the Dutch, Portugueſe, and Indians, whatever their rank or ſituation, are conſtantly attended. They are bought in Sumatra, Malacca, and almoſt all the Eaſtern Iſlands: but the natives of Java, very few of whom live in Batavia, are exempted from ſlavery, under the ſanction of very ſevere penal laws, ſeldom we believe violated. Theſe ſlaves are ſold from ten to twenty pounds ſterling each; but girls, if handſome, will fetch ſome times a hundred. Being of an indolent diſpoſition, they will not do much work, and are therefore content with a little victuals, ſubſiſting altogether upon boiled rice, and a ſmall quantity of the cheapeſt fiſh. They are natives of different countries, on which account they differ from each other extremely both in perſon and temper. The Papua, as they are here called, or the African negroes are the worſt, moſt of them thieves and all incorrigible; conſequently they may be purchaſed for the leaſt money. The next claſs to theſe are the Bougis and Macaſſars, both from the iſland of Celebes;

Celebes; who, in the higheſt degree are lazy, though not ſo much addicted to theft as the negroes; yet they are of a cruel and vindictive ſpirit, whereby they are rendered exceeding dangerous, eſpecially as to gratify their reſentment, they make no ſcruple of any means, nor of ſacrificing life itſelf. Beſides theſe there are Malays and ſlaves of other denominations: but the beſt, and of courſe the deareſt, are thoſe brought from the iſland of Bali; and the moſt beautiful women from Nias, a ſmall iſland on the coaſt of Sumatra; but being of a tender and delicate conſtitution, they quickly fall a ſacrifice to the unwholeſome air of Batavia. All theſe ſlaves are wholly in the power of their maſters, who may inflict upon them any puniſhment that does not take away life; and ſhould one die in conſequence of puniſhment, though his death may be proved not to have been intended, yet the maſter is called to a ſevere account, and generally ſentenced to ſuffer capitally. For this reaſon a maſter ſeldom corrects a ſlave with his own hands, but by an officer called a marineu, one of whom is ſtationed is every diſtrict. The duty of this officer is to quell riots, and take offenders into cuſtody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway ſlaves, and puniſh them for ſuch crimes as the maſter has ſupported by proper evidence; the puniſhment, however, is not inflicted by the marineu in perſon, but by ſlaves who are appointed to the buſineſs. The puniſhment is ſtripes, the number being proportioned to the nature of the offence; and the inſtruments are rods made of rattans, which are ſplit into tender twigs for the purpoſe, and every ſtroke draws blood. A common puniſhment coſts the maſter a rixdollar, and a ſevere one a ducatoon, about ſix ſhillings and eight-pence. The maſter is alſo obliged to allow a ſlave, as an encouragement, three dubbelcheys, equal to about ſeven-pence half-penny a week; this is alſo done to prevent his indulging his ſtrong temptations to ſteal.

Reſpecting the government of this place we can ſay but little. We obſerved a remarkable ſubordination among the people. Every houſe-keeper has a certain ſpecific rank, according to the length of time he has

ſerved

ſerved the company. The different ranks thus acquired are diſtinguiſhed by the ornaments of the coaches, and the dreſſes of the coachmen: ſome ride in plain coaches, ſome are allowed to paint them with different devices, and ſome to gild them. The coachmen alſo are obliged to appear in clothes quite plain, or ornamented in various manners and degrees.

The chief officer in this place has the title of governor-general of the Indies, to whom the Dutch governors of all other ſettlements are ſubordinate; and they are obliged to repair to Batavia in order to have their accounts paſſed by him. Should they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he detains them during pleaſure; ſometimes three years; for they cannot without his permiſſion quit the place. The members of the council, called by the natives Edele Heeren, and by the Engliſh, Idoleers, are next in rank to the governor-general. Theſe aſſume ſo much ſtate, that whoever meets them in a carriage, are expected to riſe up and bow, and after this compliment, they drive to one ſide of the road and ſtop, till the members of the council are paſt: their wives and children expect alſo the ſame homage, and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. Some Engliſh Captains have thought this a flaviſh mark of reſpect, derogatory to their dignity as ſervants of his Britannic majeſty, and for this reaſon have refuſed to pay it; nevertheleſs, when in a hired coach, nothing but a menace of immediate death could prevent the coachman from honouring the Dutch grandee, at the expence of their mortification.

With reſpect to the diſtribution of juſtice, it is adminiſtered in Batavia by the lawyers, who have peculiar ranks of diſtinction among themſelves. Their deciſions in criminal caſes ſeem to be ſevere with reſpect to the natives, but lenient in a partial degree to their own people. A chriſtian is always indulged with an opportunity of eſcaping before he is brought to trial, whatever may be his offence, and when convicted, he is ſeldom puniſhed with death. On the contrary, the poor Indians are hanged, broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive. As to the Malays and Chineſe,

they

they have judicial officers of their own, named captains and lieutenants, who determine in civil caſes, ſubject to an appeal to the Dutch tribunal. The taxes laid upon theſe people by the company are very conſiderable, among which, that exacted for liberty to wear their hair is not the leaſt. The time of payment is monthly, and to ſave the charge and trouble of collecting them, notice is given of this by hoiſting a flag upon the top of a houſe in the middle of the town, and the Chineſe find that it is their intereſt to repair thither when a payment is due without delay.

At Batavia the current money conſiſts of ducates, valued at one hundred and thirty-two ſtivers; ducatoons, eighty ſtivers: imperial rix-dollars, ſixty; rupees, thirty; ſchellings, ſix; double cheys, two ſtivers and a half; and doits one fourth of a ſtiver. During our ſtay here Spaniſh dollars were at five and five-pence; and we were told they were never lower than five ſhillings and four-pence, even at the company's warehouſe. For Engliſh guineas the exchange upon an average was nineteen ſhillings; for though the Chineſe would give twenty ſhillings for ſome of the brighteſt, thoſe that were much worn were valued at only ſeventeen ſhillings. There are two ſorts of coin current here of the ſame denomination; theſe are milled and unmilled; the former of which is of moſt value. A milled ducatoon is valued at eighty ſtivers; and an unmilled one at no more than ſeventy-two. A rix-dollar is equal to forty-eight ſtivers, about four ſhillings and ſix-pence Engliſh currency. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and ſtivers, which here, at leaſt, are nominal, like our pound ſterling.

On Thurſday, the 27th of December, early in the morning, we weighed, left the harbour of Batavia, and ſtood out to ſea. On the 29th, after much delay by contrary winds, we weathered Pulo Pare, and ſtood for the main. On the ſame day paſſed a ſmall iſland between Batavia and Bantam, called Maneater's iſland. On Sunday the 30th, we weathered Wapping and Pulo Babi iſlands, and the next day, being the 31ſt, we ſtood over to the Sumatra ſhore.

On the morning of this new year's day, being Tueſ-
A.D. 1771. day, January the 1ſt, we ſteered for the Java ſhore, and continued our courſe, as the wind permitted us, till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we caſt anchor on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of Prince's Iſland, in eighteen fathom water, in order to recruit our ſtores, and procure refreſhments for the ſick, many of whom were much worſe than they were at our departure from Batavia. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solandar, accompanied by the captain and other gentlemen, went aſhore. We met upon the beach ſome Indians, by whom we were conducted to one, who, they ſaid, was their king. Having exchanged a few compliments with this perſon, we entered upon buſineſs, but in ſettling the price of turtle could not agree. Upon this we took leave, the Indians diſperſed; and we proceeded along ſhore in ſearch of a watering-place. We happily ſucceeded in finding a very convenient one, and had no reaſon to believe, with care in filling, it would prove agreeable to our wiſhes. On our return, ſome Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, ſold us three turtle, but we were obliged to promiſe, that we would not tell the king. On Sunday the 6th, we renewed with better ſucceſs our traffic for turtle. About noon the Indians lowered their demands ſlowly, inſomuch, that before the evening they accepted our ſtipulated price, and we had turtle in plenty. In the mean time, the three we had purchaſed were ſerved to the ſhip's company, who, till yeſterday, had not fed on ſalt proviſions from the time of our arrival at Savu, which was now near three months. Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid a viſit to the king, by whom he was received very graciouſly at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, notwithſtanding his majeſty was buſily employed in dreſſing his own ſupper. The day following, Monday the 7th, the Indians reſorted to the trading place with fowls, fiſh, monkeys, ſmall deer, and ſome vegetables; but no turtle appeared till next day, Tueſday the 8th, after which ſome were brought to market every day, while we ſtaid,

but

but the whole quantity together was not equal to that we bought the day after our arrival.

Friday the 11th, Mr. Banks having received intelligence from a ſervant he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this iſland had a town ſituated near the ſhore, to the weſtward, he determined to go in ſearch of the ſame. With this view he ſet out in the morning, accompanied by the ſecond lieutenant; and apprehending his viſit might not be agreeable to the natives, he told ſuch of them as he met, that he was in ſearch of plants, which was indeed alſo true. Having come to a place where there were three or four houſes, they met with an old man, of whom they ventured to make a few enquiries concerning the town. He would have perſuaded them, that it was at a great diſtance; but, perceiving they proceeded forward, he joined company, and went on with them. The old man attemped ſeveral times to lead them out of the way, though without ſucceſs; but when at length they came within ſight of the houſes, he entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town, the name of which is Samadang. It conſiſts of about four hundred houſes, and is divided by a brackiſh river into two parts, one called the old, and the other the new town. When they had entered the former, they were accoſted by ſeveral Indians whom they had ſeen at the trading place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at two-pence per head. The bargain being made, they embarked in two ſmall canoes, placed along-ſide of each other, and laſhed together, to prevent their over-ſetting. They landed ſafely, though not without ſome difficulty; and when they came to the new town, the people ſhewed them every mark of a cordial friendſhip, ſhewing them the houſes of their king and principal people. Few of the houſes were open at this time, the inhabitants having taken up their reſidence in the rice-grounds, to defend their crops againſt the birds and monkeys, who without this neceſſary precaution would deſtroy them. When their curioſity was ſatisfied, they hired a large ſailing boat

for two rupees, value four ſhillings, which conveyed them to the bark time enough to dine upon one of the ſmall deer, weighing only forty pounds, which proved to be exceeding good and ſavory food. In the evening we again went on ſhore, to ſee how our people went on, who were employed in wooding and watering, when we were told, that an axe had been ſtolen. Application was immediately made to the king, who, after ſome altercation, promiſed, that the axe ſhould be reſtored in the morning; and it was accordingly brought to us by a man, who pretended, that the thief, afraid of a diſcovery, had left it at his houſe in the night.

On Sunday, the 13th, having nearly compleated our wood and water, Mr. Banks took leave of his majeſty, to whom he had made ſeveral trifling preſents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciouſly accepted. During their converſation, the king enquired, why the Engliſh did not touch at the iſland as they had uſed to do. Mr. Banks replied, that the reaſon was, he ſuppoſed, becauſe they found a deficiency of turtle, of which there not being enough to ſupply one ſhip, many could not be expected; and to ſupply this defect, Mr. Banks adviſed his majeſty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and ſheep; but he did not ſeem diſpoſed to adopt this prudent meaſure.

On Monday, the 14th, we had got on board a good ſtock of freſh proviſions, conſiſting of turtle, fowl, fiſh, two ſpecies of deer, one about the ſize of a ſheep, the other not bigger than a rabbit; alſo cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer, however, ſerved only for preſent uſe, for we could ſeldom keep one of them alive more than twenty-four hours.

The trade on our parts, was carried on chiefly with Spaniſh dollars, the natives ſeeming not to ſet value upon any thing elſe; ſo that our people who had a general permiſſion to trade, parted with old ſhirts and other articles, which they were obliged to ſubſtitute for money to great diſadvantage. On Tueſday, the 15th, in the morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at

N. E.

N. E. and ſtood out to ſea. We took our departure from Java Head, which is in latitude 6 deg. 49 min. S. and in longitude 253 deg. 12 min. Weſt.

Prince's Iſland, where we were ſtationed about ten days, in the Malay language, called Pulo Selan, and in that of the inhabitants, Pulo Paneitan, is a ſmall iſland, ſituated in the weſtern mouth of the ſtreight of Sunda. It is woody, a very ſmall part of it having been cleared. We could perceive no remarkable hill upon it; but a ſmall eminence, juſt over the landing place, has been named, by the Engliſh, the Pike. Formerly this place was much frequented by India ſhips belonging to various nations, eſpecially from England; but of late they have forſaken it, becauſe the water is bad, and touch either at North Iſland, or at New Bay, a few leagues diſtant from Prince's Iſland, at neither of which places any conſiderable quantity of other proviſions can be procured; and, upon the whole, we muſt give it as our opinion, that Prince's Iſland is more eligible than either of them; for though, as we have already obſerved, the water is brackiſh, if filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up we found it excellent.

The firſt, ſecond, and perhaps the third ſhip, that arrives here in the ſeaſon, may be well ſupplied with turtle; but ſuch as come afterwards muſt be content with ſmall ones. What we purchaſed were of the green kind, and coſt us, at an average, about three farthings a pound. They were neither fat nor well flavoured, which circumſtance we imputed to their being long kept in pens of brackiſh water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spaniſh dollar, which is about five pence a piece. The ſmall deer coſt us two-pence a piece, and the larger, two only of which were brought to market, a rupee. The natives ſell many kinds of fiſh by hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Cocoa-nuts, if they were picked, we bought at the rate of a hundred for a dollar; and if taken promiſcuouſly, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in abundance; alſo

pine-

pine-apples, water-melons, jaccas, and pompions, beſides rice, yams, and ſeveral other vegetables, all which we purchaſed at reaſonable rates.

In this iſland the inhabitants are Javaneſe, and their Raja is ſubject to the Sultan of Bantam. In their manners and cuſtoms they reſemble the Indians about Batavia; but they are more jealous of their women, for all the time we were there, we ſaw not any of them, except one by chance in the woods, as ſhe was running away to hide herſelf. They profeſs the Mahomedan religion; but not a moſque did we diſcover in the whole iſland. While we were among them, they kept the faſt called by the Turks Ramadan, with extreme rigour, not one of them touching a morſel of victuals, nor would they chew their beetle till ſun-ſet. Their food is likewiſe the ſame with that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, by eating of which, upon the coaſt of New Holland, ſome of our people were made ſick, and ſome of our hogs poiſoned. We enquired by what means theſe nuts were deprived of their noxious deleterious quality, and were informed, that they firſt cut them into thin ſlices, and dried them in the ſun, then ſteeped them in freſh water for three months, and afterwards, preſſing out the water, dried them a ſecond time in the ſun; but after all, we found they are eaten only in times of ſcarcity, when they mix them with their rice to make it go farther.

The houſes of theſe people are built upon piles, or pillars, and elevated about four or five feet above the ground. Upon theſe is laid a floor of bamboo canes, at ſuch a diſtance from each other, as to leave a free paſſage for the air from below. The walls alſo are of bamboo, interwoven hurdlewiſe, with ſmall ſticks, and faſtened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building; it has a ſloping roof, ſo well thatched with palm-leaves, that neither the ſun, nor rain can find entrance. The ground plot, upon which the building is erected, is an oblong ſquare. On the ſide is the door, and in the ſpace between that and the other end of the houſe, in the center, towards the left hand,

hand, is a window. A partition runs out from each end of the houſe, which continues ſo far as to leave an opening oppoſite the door. Each end of the houſe, therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two apartments, all open towards the paſſage from the door to the wall on the oppoſite ſide. In that on the left hand, next to the door, the children ſleep; that oppoſite to it is for the uſe of ſtrangers; in the inner room, on the left hand, the maſter and his wife ſleep; and that oppoſite to it is the kitchen. The only difference between the poor and the rich, with reſpect to theſe houſes, conſiſts in their ſize: but we muſt except the royal palace, and the houſe of one Gundang, the next man in riches and influence to the king; for thoſe inſtead of being wattled with ſticks and bamboos, are encloſed with boards. Theſe people have occaſional houſes in the rice fields, at the ſeaſon when they are infeſted with the birds and monkeys. They differ only from their town houſes, by being raiſed ten feet inſtead of four from the ground.

The inhabitants of this iſland are of a good diſpoſition; and dealt with us very honeſtly; only like other Indians, and the retailers of fiſh in London, they would aſk twice, and ſometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged, in different proportions, to a conſiderable number of the natives, they put all that was bought of one kind, as cocoas or plantains together, and when we had purchaſed a lot, they divided the money that was paid for it among the proprietors, in a proportion correſponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they would change our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five ſhillings, for a Spaniſh dollar, and ninety-ſix, amounting to two ſhillings, for a Bengal rupee.

The natives of Prince's Iſland have a language of their own, yet they all ſpeak the Malay language. Their own tongue they call Catta Gunung, the language of the mountains. They ſay, that their tribe originally migrated from the mountains of Java to New Bay, and then

then to their preſent ſtation, being driven from their firſt ſettlement by tygers, which they found too numerous to ſubdue. Several languages are ſpoken by the native Javaneſe, in different parts of their iſland; but the language of theſe people is different from that ſpoken at Samarang, though diſtant only one day's journey from the reſidence of the Emperor of Java. The following liſt contains ſeveral correſponding words in the languages of Prince's Iſland, Java, and Malacca.

PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.	JAVANESE.	MALAY.
Jalma, -	*A man.*	Oong Lanang,	Oran Lacki Laki.
Becang, -	*A woman.*	OongWadong,	Parampuan.
Oroculatacke,	*A child.*	Lari, -	Anack.
Holo, -	*The head.*	Undaſs, -	Capalla.
Erung, -	*The noſe.*	Erung, -	Edung.
Mata, -	*The eyes.*	Moto, -	Mata.
Chole, -	*The ears.*	Cuping, -	Cuping.
Cutock, -	*The teeth.*	Untu, -	Ghigi.
Beatung, -	*The belly.*	Wuttong, -	Prot.
Serit, -	*The backſide.*	Celit, -	Pantat.
Pimping, -	*The thigh.*	Poopoo, -	Paha.
Hulloctoor,	*The knee.*	Duncul, -	Lontour.
Metis, -	*The legs.*	Sickil, -	Kauki.
Cucu, -	*A nail.*	Cucu, -	Cucu.
Langan, -	*A hand.*	Tangan, -	Tangan.
Ramo Langan,	*A finger.*	Jari, - -	Jaring.

In this ſpecimen the different parts of the body are choſen, becauſe they are eaſily obtained from thoſe whoſe language is unknown; and it is worthy of obſervation, that the Malay, the Javaneſe, and the language in Prince's Iſland, have words, which if not exactly ſimilar to thoſe uſed in the South-Sea Iſlands, are manifeſtly derived from the ſame ſource, as will appear from the following liſt.

SOUTH-

SOUTH-SEA.	MALAY.	JAVANESE.	PRINCE'S ISLAND.	ENGLISH.
Mata,	Mata,	Moto,	Mata,	*An eye.*
Maa,	Macan	Mangan,	——	*The ear.*
Einu,	Menum,	Gnumbe,	——	*To drink.*
Matte,	Matte,	Matte,	——	*To kill.*
Outou,	Coutou,	——	——	*A louſe.*
Euwa,	Udian,	Udan,	——	*Rain.*
Owhe,	———	——	Awe,	*Bamboo-cane.*
Eu,	Souſou,	Souſou,	——	*A beaſt.*
Mannu,	———	Manny,	Mannuck,	*A bird.*
Eyea,	Ican,	Iwa,	———	*A fiſh.*
Tapao,	——	Tapaan,	———	*The foot.*
Tooura,	Udang,	Urang,	———	*A lobſter.*
Eufwhe,	Ubi,	Urve,	———	*Yams.*
Etannou,	Tannam,	Tandour,	———	*To bury.*
Enammou,	Gnammuck,	——	———	*A muſchito.*
Hearu,	Garru,	Garu,	———	*To ſcratch.*
Taro,	Tallas,	Talus,	———	*Cocoa-roots.*
Uta,	Utan,	——	———	*In-land.*

But the ſimilitude in theſe languages is more remarkable in words expreſſing number, which ſeems to prove that they have one common root. Mr. Banks, with the aſſiſtance of a negro ſlave, born at Madagaſcar, and who was on board an Engliſh ſhip at Batavia, drew up the following comparative table, from whence it will appear, that the names of numbers, in particular, are in a manner common to all theſe countries: but we muſt obſerve, that in the iſland of Madagaſcar, the names of numbers, in ſome inſtances, are ſimilar to all theſe, which is a difficulty not eaſy to be ſolved; yet the fact will appear unqueſtionable from the following liſt of words, drawn up, as we have obſerved, by Mr. Banks.

South-Sea Islands.	Malay.	Javanese.	Prince's Isle.	Madagascar.	English.
Tahie,	Satou,	Sigi,	Hegie,	Iſſe,	*One.*
Rua,	Dua,	Lorou,	Dua,	Rua,	*Two.*
Torou,	Tiga,	Tullu,	Tollu,	Tellou,	*Three.*
Haa,	Ampat,	Pappat,	Opat,	Effats,	*Four.*
Reina,	Lima,	Limo,	Limah,	Limi,	*Five.*
Wheney,	Annam,	Nunnam,	Gunnap,	Ene,	*Six.*
Hetu,	Tudju,	Petu,	Tudju,	Titou,	*Seven.*
Waru,	Delapau,	Wolo,	Delapan,	Walon,	*Eight.*
Iva,	Sembilan,	Songo,	Salapan,	Sivi,	*Nine.*
Ahoura,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Tourou,	*Ten.*

From the ſimilitude between the Eaſtern Tongue and that of the South-Sea, many conjectures may be formed concerning the peopling of thoſe countries, which cannot eaſily be referred to Madagaſcar. The people of Java and Madagaſcar appear to be a different race: the Javaneſe has long hair, and his complexion is of an olive caſt; whereas a native of Madagaſcar is black, and his hair woolly; yet this will not conclude againſt the opinion of their having had common anceſtors: and, poſſibly, the learning of ancient Egypt might run in two courſes, one through Africa, and the other through Aſia, diſſeminating the ſame words in each, eſpecially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communications with each other.

In the month of February we held on our courſe, and made the beſt of our way for the Cape of Good Hope; but now the fatal ſeeds of diſeaſe, our people had imbibed at Batavia, began to appear, with the moſt alarming ſymptoms, in dyſenteries and ſlow fevers. Our ſituation in a ſhort time was truly deplorable, and the ſhip was little better than an hoſpital, in which thoſe who did duty, were too few to attend thoſe who were confined to their hammocks. Many of theſe were in the laſt ſtage of the deſtructive diſorder; and almoſt every

every night we committed a body to the ſea. Mr. Banks was among the number of the ſick, and for ſome time we deſpaired of his life. In the courſe of ſix weeks we buried Mr. Sporing, a gentleman of Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinſon, his natural hiſtory painter, Mr. Green the aſtronomer, the boatſwain, the carpenter, and his mate. Mr. Monkhouſe the midſhipman, our jolly ſail-maker, and his aſſiſtant, the cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenter's crew, a midſhipman, and nine ſailors; in all three and twenty perſons, beſides the ſeven that we had buried at Batavia. Such was the havock diſeaſe made among our ſhip's company, though we omitted no means, which we conceived might be a remedy; and to prevent the infection from ſpreading, we purified the water taken in at Prince's Iſland with lime, and waſhed all parts of the bark between decks with vinegar.

Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock P. M. we brought the ſhip to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope. Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the governor, who chearfully promiſed him every refreſhment the country afforded; on which a houſe was hired for the ſick, and it was agreed they ſhould be lodged and boarded for two ſhillings each man per day. Our run from Java Head to the Cape afforded few obſervations that can be of uſe to future navigators, but ſome occurrences we muſt not paſs over in ſilence. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general S. E. trade-wind, during which time, we did not advance above 5 deg. to the ſouthward, and 3 deg. to the W. having an unwholeſome air, occaſioned probably by the load of vapours, which the eaſtern wind, and weſterly monſoons, bring into theſe latitudes, both of which blew in theſe ſeas, at the time we happened to be there. Our diſeaſes were certainly aggravated by thoſe poiſonous vapours, and unwholeſome air, particularly the flux, which was not in the leaſt degree checked by any medicine; ſo that whoever was ſeized with it, conſidered himſelf as a dead man; but we no ſooner got into the trade wind, than we felt its ſalutary effects.

It is true, we buried ſeveral of our crew afterwards, but they were ſuch as had been taken on board in a ſtate ſo low and feeble, that there were ſcarcely a poſſibility of their recovery. We ſuſpected at firſt, that this dreadful diſorder might have been generated by the water that we took on board at Prince's Iſland, or by the turtle we purchaſed there; but this ſuſpicion we found to be groundleſs; becauſe all the ſhips that came from Batavia at the ſame ſeaſon, ſuffered in like manner, and ſome even more ſeverely, though none of them touched at Prince's Iſland in their way.

Not many days after our departure from Java we were attended by the boobies for ſeveral nights ſucceſſively, and as theſe birds are known to rooſt every night on ſhore, we concluded land was not far diſtant; perhaps it might be the iſland of Selam, which in different charts is very differently laid down both in name and ſituation. After theſe birds had left us, we were viſited by no more, till we got nearly a-breaſt of Madagaſcar, where in latitude 27 deg. three quarters S. we ſaw an albatroſs, the number of which increaſed every day, with others of different kinds, particularly one about the ſize of a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yellowiſh bill; and they became more numerous as we approached the ſhore. When we got into ſoundings, we were viſited by gannets, which we continued to ſee as long as we were upon the bank that ſtretches off Anguillas to the diſtance of forty leagues, and extends along ſhore to the eaſtward, from Cape Falſe, according to ſome charts, one hundred and ſixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is however uſeful as a direction to ſhipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

At the time the Endeavour lay at the Cape of Good Hope, the Houghton Indiaman ſailed for England. She had buried near forty of her crew, and when ſhe left the Cape, had many of her hands in a helpleſs condition, occaſioned by the ſcurvy. Other ſhips likewiſe experienced a proportionable loſs by ſickneſs; ſo that our

our ſufferings were comparatively light, conſidering that we had been abſent near three times as long. We continued at the cape till the 13th of April, in order to recover the ſick, procure ſtores, and to do ſome neceſſary work upon the ſhip and rigging. When this was finiſhed we got all the ſick on board, ſeveral of whom were ſtill in a dangerous ſtate; and on Sunday the 14th, having taken leave of the governor, we unmoored, and got ready to ſail.

The hiſtory of Caffraria is well known in Europe, and a deſcription of the Cape of Good Hope has been given by moſt of our circumnavigators; yet we think a particular account of this country will be acceptable to our numerous ſubſcribers; and they will meet with ſome particulars which fell under our obſervation, that have either been wholly omitted or miſrepreſented in other narratives.

Caffraria, or Caffreria is well ſituated for navigation and commerce, both which advantages are almoſt wholly neglected. The interior part of the country is fertile, but wants the benefit of cultivation. The inhabitants are naturally ſagacious, but their faculties are abſorbed in indolence; thus both the lands and minds of the people require improvement; but leſt cultivation in the firſt ſhould introduce luxury, and information in the laſt produce diſobedience, neither of theſe are encouraged by the politic Dutch, who poſſeſs a great part of the ſea coaſt. This country extends about ſeven hundred and eighty miles from N. to S. that is, from Cape Negro to the Cape of Good Hope, from hence turning N. E. to the mouth of the river Spiritu Santo, it runs about ſix hundred and ſixty miles; and proceeding up the country almoſt to the equinoxial line, it is about one thouſand ſeven hundred and forty miles farther. In ſome places it is nine hundred, and in others not above ſix hundred broad. Caffraria is ſo named from the Caffres, its inhabitants; though ſome authors affirm, that this name is a term of reproach given by the Arabs to all who have but confuſed notions

of

of the deity, and which the Portugueſe have by miſtake applied to theſe people.

The Cape of Good Hope, which is the moſt ſouthern part of Africa, was firſt diſcovered, A. D. 1493, by Bartholomew Diaz, admiral of a Portugueſe fleet, who on account of the boiſterous weather he met with when near it, diſtinguiſhed it by the name of Cabodos totos Tormentos, or the Cape of all Plagues; ſince which, no place in the univerſe has been more ſpoken of, though little of the country, except the coaſt, has been penetrated or known. The reaſon why it has ſo much attracted the attention of mariners of all nations, is, their being under a neceſſity of frequently calling there for water or other refreſhments, and alſo of doubling it, in their voyages to the Eaſt-Indies. But John king of Portugal, not liking the name which his admiral had beſtowed upon this large promontory, changed it to that of Cabode Bona Eſperanca, the "Cape of Good Hope," which appellation it has ever ſince retained.

Neither Diaz, nor his ſucceſſor Vaſco de Gama, though they ſaw the Cape, thought proper to land: but in 1498 the Portugueſe admiral, Rio del Infanta, was the firſt who ventured aſhore; and from his report, Emanuel, king of Portugal, on account of the eligibility of the ſituation, determined to eſtabliſh a colony there; but the Portugueſe, who are naturally puſillanimous, having taken it into their heads, that the inhabitants of the Cape were cannibals, were too much afraid of being devoured, to obey their ſovereign in making the ſettlement he intended: however, ſome time after, another body of thoſe timid adventurers made good their landing, under the conduct of Francis d'Almeyda, a viceroy of Braſil, when the Portugueſe were ſhamefully defeated by the ſcarce armed, and unwarlike natives. The viceroy and fifty of his men being killed in the engagement, the remainder retired with precipitation to their ſhips. The Portugueſe were much diſappointed and chagrined at the idea of ſuch martial ſuperiority in a people by them deemed at once ſavage and deſpicable,

ble. They determined to be revenged; but not having magnanimity enough to ſhew a becoming reſentment, they contrived a moſt inhuman and cowardly expedient. About two years after, touching at the cape, they landed with all the appearance of amity, accompanied with ſtrong profeſſions of friendſhip, and under this maſk brought with them a large cannon loaded with grape ſhot. The unſuſpecting natives, overjoyed by the gift of ſo great a treaſure, began to drag it away by the means of two long ropes, which had been previouſly faſtened to the muzzle. Great numbers laid hold of the ropes, and many others went before by way of triumph, when the treacherous Portugueſe firing off the cannon, a prodigious ſlaughter enſued, as moſt of the people ſtood within the range of the ſhot. Many were killed, ſeveral wounded; and the few who eſcaped, abandoned with the utmoſt precipitation the fatal preſent.

About the year 1600, the Dutch began to touch at the cape, in their way to and from the Eaſt-Indies; and becoming annually more ſenſible of the importance of the place, they effected a ſettlement in 1650, which ſince that time hath riſen to great power and opulence, and been of eſſential ſervice to that nation. M. Van Ricbeeck, a ſurgeon, in his return from India, obſerving the conveniency of the place for a ſettlement, and laying before the Dutch Eaſt-India Company a plan of its advantages, the ſcheme was approved, and the projector appointed governor. This adventurer ſailing with four ſhips to the cape, entered into a negotiation with the people, who, in conſideration of fifty thouſand guilders, or four thouſand three hundred and ſeventy-five pounds ſterling, agreed to yield up to the Dutch a conſiderable tract of country round the cape. Van Ricbeeck, in order to ſecure his new purchaſe, immediately erected a ſtrong ſquare fort; laid out a large garden, and planted it with a great variety of the productions from Europe, that he might render the place as commodious and agreeable as poſſible. Having thus ſucceſsfully founded a ſettlement, the Dutch Company

propoſed, in order the more effectually to eſtabliſh it, that every man, who would ſettle three years at the cape, ſhould have an inheritance of ſixty acres of land, provided that during that ſpace he would ſo improve his eſtate, as to render it ſufficient to maintain himſelf, and contribute ſomewhat towards the maintenance of the garriſon; and at the expiration of the time, he might either keep poſſeſſion of it, or ſell it, and return home. Induced by theſe propoſals, many went to ſeek their fortunes at the cape, and were furniſhed on credit with cattle, grain, plants, utenſils, &c. The planters, however, at length grew weary of their habitations for want of conjugal ſociety: therefore the governors of the company, to prevent their leaving the place, provided them with wives from the Orphan-houſes, and other charitable foundations. In proceſs of time they greatly increaſed, and ſpread themſelves farther up the country, and along the coaſt, till they occupied all the lands from Saldanna Bay, round the ſouthern point of Africa, to Noſſel Bay, on the E. and afterwards purchaſed Terra de Natal, in order to extend their limits ſtill farther.

It appears, however, that on the firſt ſettlement of the Dutch at the cape, all the Hottentot tribes did not acquieſce in the ſale of the country to foreigners; for the Gunyemains diſſented from the agreement of the others, and, in 1659, diſputed the poſſeſſion of the purchaſed territories with the Dutch. They always made their attack in boiſterous weather, as thinking the fire-arms then of leſs uſe and efficacy; and upon theſe occaſions they would murder indiſcriminately all the Europeans they could meet, burn down their houſes, and drive away their cattle. At length a Hottentot, called by the Dutch Doman, who had reſided ſome time at Batavia, and afterwards lived at Cape Town, retired to his countrymen, and perſuaded them, that it was the intent of the Europeans to enſlave them, and ſtirred them up to war. Accordingly they took up arms, and, being headed by Doman, attended by another chief named Garabinga, they committed great depredations.

But

But the Hottentots themſelves at length growing tired of the war, one hundred of them, belonging to one nation, came unarmed to the Dutch fort, with a preſent of thirteen head of fine excellent cattle, in order to ſue for peace. This, it may be imagined, was readily granted by the Dutch, who were heartily ſick of a conteſt, in which themſelves were ſuch great loſers, without reaping any advantages from it.

Notwithſtanding all that has been ſaid to the contrary, no country we ſaw during the voyage, makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more ſterile deſart. The land over the cape, which conſtitutes the peninſula formed by Table Bay on the N. and Falſe Bay on the S. conſiſts of high mountains, altogether naked and deſolate: the land behind theſe to the E. which may be conſidered as the iſthmus, is a plain of vaſt extent, conſiſting almoſt wholly of a light kind of ſea ſand, which produces nothing but heath, and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the ſpots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the ſame proportion to the whole as one to one thouſand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and moſt of theſe little ſpots lie at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. There is alſo the greateſt reaſon to believe, that in the interior parts of the country, that which is capable of cultivation, eſpecially what is ſituated at no great diſtance from the coaſt, does not bear a greater proportion to that which is barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had ſettlements eight and twenty days up the country, a diſtance equal at leaſt to nine hundred miles, from which they bring proviſions to the cape by land; ſo that it ſeems reaſonable to conclude, that proviſions are not to be had within a leſs compaſs. While we were at the cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the diſtance of fifteen days journey, and brought his children with him. We were ſurpriſed at this, and aſked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour. Neighbour! ſaid the man, I have no neighbour within leſs than five days journey of me.

Surely the country muſt be deplorably barren in which thoſe who ſettle only to raiſe proviſions for a market, are diſperſed at ſuch diſtances from each other. That the country is every where deſtitute of wood is a certain fact; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almoſt as dear as food. We ſaw not a tree, except in plantations near the town, that was ſix foot high; and the ſtems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, had roots as thick as an arm or leg, ſuch is the influence of the winds here to the diſadvantage of vegetation, without conſidering the ſterility of the ſoil.

Cape Town is the only one the Dutch have built here, and it conſiſts of about a thouſand houſes neatly built of brick, whited in general on the outſide. They are covered only with thatch, for the violence of the S. E. winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The ſtreets are broad and commodious, croſſing each other at right angles. In the main one is a canal, on each ſide of which is planted a row of oaks, that have grown tolerably well, and yield an agreeable ſhade. In another part of the town is alſo a canal, but the ſlope of the ground in the courſe of both is ſo great, that they are furniſhed with locks at intervals of little more than fifty yards. The houſes in general have pleaſant gardens behind, and neat court yards before them. Building, as well as tillage, is greatly encouraged here, and land given for either purpoſe to thoſe who chuſe to accept of it; but then the government claims an annual tenth of the value of the former, and produce of the latter, and a tithe of all purchaſe money when eſtates are ſold. The town extends from the ſea ſhore to the Company's garden, ſpreading along Table Bay. The fort is in a valley at a ſmall diſtance, its form pentagonal, it commands the landing-place, and is garriſoned by two hundred ſoldiers. The governor's ſtorehouſes are within it, other officers beſides himſelf have apartments here, as well as ſix hundred ſervants: the ſame number of ſlaves are lodged in a commodious building in the town, which is divided into two wards, the one for the men, the other for the women;

women; and there is a houſe of correction for the reception of diſſolute perſons of either ſex. The hoſpital for ſick ſeamen is of eſſential uſe to the Dutch fleets in going to or returning from India. The church is a large edifice, elegantly plain; but the roof and ſteeple are thatched, for the reaſon already mentioned. Thatching indeed, from the nature of the hurricanes, ſeems abſolutely neceſſary; but from the method in which it was formerly done, it appears that it was frequently attended with danger, and we were informed, there uſed to be ſhelving pent houſes erected on both ſides the ſtreets, to ſhelter paſſengers in rainy weather; but theſe brought the inhabitants under ſuch dangers and inconveniences, that they were all pulled down by order of government. Sailors and Hottentots were continually aſſembling, and ſmoaking their pipes under them, and ſometimes, through careleſſneſs ſet them on fire. The government laid hold of that occaſion to rid the ſtreets of thoſe fellows that were continually peſtering them, by publiſhing an order, which is ſtill in force, and from time to time republiſhed, that no Hottentot, or common ſailor, ſhall ſmoke in the ſtreet, and that upon preſuming ſo to do they ſhould be tied to the whipping poſt and be ſeverely laſhed. This has kept the ſtreets clear of all who have no buſineſs there; for it is with great difficulty that either the ſeamen or Hottentots can forbear ſmoaking while they are awake, if they have tobacco, which they are ſeldom without. What is moſt to be admired at the cape is the company's garden, where they have introduced almoſt all the fruits and flowers that are found in the other three quarters of the globe; moſt of which are improved, and flouriſh more than they did in their reſpective climates and countries from whence they were brought; and the garden is watered with ſprings that fall down from Table mountain juſt above them. Apples and pears are planted here, with the grapes of Aſia, as well as thoſe of Europe, all of a delicious flavour. Here are alſo excellent lemons, oranges, citrons, figs, Japan apples, and a great variety of other fruits. In this place a much

greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch than in Batavia; and as the town is ſupported principally by entertaining ſtrangers, and ſupplying them with neceſſaries, every man to a certain degree, imitates the manners and cuſtoms of the nations with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are ſo faithful to the mode of their country, that not one of them will ſtir without a chaudpied, or chauffet, which is carried by a ſervant, that it may be ready to place under her feet, whenever ſhe ſits down: though few of theſe chauffets have fire in them, which indeed the climate renders unneceſſary.

Notwithſtanding the natural ſterility of the climate, induſtry has ſupplied this place with all the neceſſaries, and even luxuries of life in the greateſt profuſion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the oxen and ſheep are natives of the country: the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that ſpread to a much wider extent. The ſheep are clothed with a ſubſtance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous ſize: we ſaw ſome that weighed twelve pounds, and we heard there were many much larger. Good butter is made from the milk of cows, but the cheeſe is very much inferior to our own. Here are hogs and a variety of poultry; alſo goats, but theſe laſt are never eaten. Hares are to be found exactly like thoſe in Europe; likewiſe many kinds of antelopes; quails of two ſorts, and buſtards, all well flavoured, but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley; the gardens European vegetables; fruit of all kinds; beſides plantains, guavas, jambu, and other Indian fruits, but theſe are not in perfection; the plantains, in particular, are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooſeberries. The vineyards alſo produce wines of various ſorts, but not equal to thoſe of Europe, except the Conſtantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles diſtant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made, and called by the ſame name, but it is greatly inferior.

With

With reſpect to the animals of this country, the wild differ in nothing from thoſe found in other parts. There are great numbers of domeſtic animals in the various colonies and ſettlements at the cape, and the woods and mountains abound with wild beaſts. The horſes, which were brought originally from Perſia, are of a bay or cheſnut colour, and rather ſmall. The dogs have a very unſightly appearance, and are of little uſe. Among the wild beaſts, the elephant claims the firſt place. The rhinoceros is of a dark aſh colour, and has a ſnout like a hog. A horn projects about two feet from the noſe, reſembling in ſhape a plough ſhare, and of a grey dingy colour. With this he tears up the ground, pulls up trees by their roots, throws large ſtones over his head, and rips up the elephant, to whom he is a mortal enemy. Another horn of about ſix inches long, turns up from his forehead. His legs are ſhort, his ears ſmall, and his ſenſe of ſmelling ſurprizingly acute. When he ſcents any thing he purſues in a right line, and tears up every thing in his way; but his eyes being exceeding ſmall and fixed, he can only ſee ſtrait forward, ſo that it is eaſy to avoid him by ſtepping aſide, as he is a long time in turning himſelf about, and longer ſtill in getting ſight again of the object. He will not attack a man without being provoked, or unleſs he is dreſſed in ſcarlet. When he has killed any creature, he licks the fleſh from its bones with his rough tongue, which is like a raſp. He feeds much on herbs, thiſtles, and a plant reſembling juniper, and which, from its fondneſs of it, is called rhinoceros-buſh. The blood, ſkin, and horn of this animal, are medicinally uſed, and ſaid to be very efficacious in many diſorders. Wine, poured into cups made of the horn, bubbles up in a ſtrange kind of fermentation, appearing as if boiling. Should a ſmall portion of poiſon be put into the wine, the cup ſplits; but if poiſon only is poured into the cup, it flies into a thouſand pieces; hence cups made of this horn are deemed excellent ſafeguards, and, on that account, independent of their ſalubrious qualities, are highly valued. At the cape, wolves are of

two

two kinds; the one reſembles a ſheep-dog, and is ſpotted like a tyger; the other is like an European wolf: they both prowl about, and do great miſchief in the night-time, but lie concealed in the day. Lions, tygers, leopards, &c. alſo abound here, and are ſo troubleſome, that the perſon who kills one of either ſort, is rewarded with twenty-five florins, or fifty ſhillings. The fleſh of the lion is eſteemed equal to veniſon, and the fat is much valued. Here are much larger buffaloes than in Europe. They are of a brown colour: the horns are ſhort, and curve towards the neck, where they incline to each other. Between them is a tuft of hair upon the forehead, which adds to the fierceneſs of the look. The ſkin is exceeding hard, and the fleſh rather tough. He is a ſtrong fierce creature, and is enraged at any thing red, like many other animals. We ſaw here elks five feet high, with horns a foot long. This is a very handſome creature, having a beautiful head and neck, ſlender legs, and ſoft ſmooth hair of an aſh colour. Their upper jaw is larger than the under, the tail about a foot in length, and the fleſh by the cape epicures is ſaid to exceed the beſt beef. They run ſwift, and climb the rocks with great agility, though they uſually weigh about four hundred pounds each. Another ſingular animal is that called ſtink-box, from its offenſive ſmell both living and dead; it is about the ſize of a common houſe dog, and made much like a ferret. The goats are of various ſpecies. One, called the blue goat, is of a fine azure colour. The ſpotted goat is larger, and beautifully marked with brown, white, and red ſpots. The horns are a foot long. The fleſh fine eating. The rock-goat is no larger than a kid, but very miſchievous in the plantations. The diving-goat is much like the tame one, and receives its name from its method of ſquatting down in the graſs to hide itſelf. We ſaw another animal called a goat, without any additional appellation, it is of the ſize of a hart, and extremely beautiful. The hair of the ſides and back is grey, ſtreaked with red, and that on the belly white. A white ſtreak paſſes from his forehead to

the ridge of his tail, and three others ſurround his body in circles. The female hath no horns; but thoſe of the male are three feet in length, and the fleſh is exceedingly delicate. The horns of the hart do not branch like thoſe of Europe; but the roebuck is in every reſpect like ours. Wild cats are of ſeveral ſorts. The firſt the Dutch call the civit cat, not that it is really the animal of that name, but becauſe of the fine ſcent of the ſkin. The next is called the tyger-cat, from its being very large, and ſpotted like a tyger. The third ſort is the mountain cat, which, as well as the tame cat, reſembles thoſe of Europe. The fourth ſpecies is denominated the blue cat, from its colour, having a fine blue tinge, with a beautiful red liſt down its back. There is a ſpecies of mice peculiar to this country, called the rattle-mouſe, which is about the ſize of a ſquirrel, and makes a rattling noiſe with its tail. It is very nimble, lives upon nuts and acorns, and purs like a cat. Among the hogs with which this country abounds, is the wild hog, or rather wild boar, which is very fierce, and harbours in woods; and the earth hog, which is of a red colour, and without teeth: this lodges like a badger in holes, and feeds upon ants; theſe he procures by forcing his long rough tongue into their hills, from whence he draws it with a great number glued thereto. Many jackalls, ſome ermines, baboons, monkeys, &c. are found about the cape; and frequently do great miſchief in the gardens, orchards, and vineyards. The porcupine is very common, and its fleſh eſteemed delicious. There are two ſorts of wild aſſes in this country, one of which is a beautiful creature, called the zebra, and bears a greater affinity in make and ſhape to the horſe than the aſs. Indeed the ears are ſomewhat like thoſe of the latter animal, but in all other reſpects it has a much more noble appearance. It is admirably well made, exceeding lively, and ſo extremely ſwift, that it throws almoſt every purſuer at a diſtance. Its legs are fine; it has a twiſted tail, round fleſhy haunches, and a ſmooth ſkin. The females are white and black, and the males white.

white and brown. Theſe colours are placed alternately in the moſt beautiful ſtripes, and are parallel, diſtinct, and narrow. The whole animal is ſtreaked in this admirable manner, ſo as to appear to a diſtant beholder as if covered with ribbons. Moſt naturaliſts affirm, that the zebra never can be tamed. That which was preſented to her preſent majeſty queen Charlotte, and kept ſeveral years at the ſtables near Buckingham-gate, continued vicious till its death, though it was brought over young, and every poſſible means uſed to render it tractable: it fed upon hay, and the noiſe it made rather reſembled the barking of a maſtiff dog, than the braying of an aſs. The camelopardalis, we were informed, has been found in the countries round the cape. Captain Carteret, having, by order of his preſent majeſty, performed a voyage round the world in the Swallow ſloop of war, mentions this animal in a letter to the late Dr. Matty, ſecretary to the Royal Society. "From the ſcarcity of this creature (ſays he) as I believe none have been found in Europe, ſince Julius Cæſar's time (when I think there were two of them at Rome) I imagine a more certain knowledge of its reality will not be diſagreeable to you, as the exiſtence of this fine animal has been doubted by many. The preſent governor of the Cape of Good Hope has ſent out parties of men on inland diſcoveries, ſome of which have been abſent from eighteen months to two years, in which traverſe they have diſcovered many curioſities. One of theſe parties croſſed many mountains and plains, in one of which they found two of theſe creatures, but they only caught the young one. This they endeavoured to bring alive to Cape Town, but unfortunately it died. They took off his ſkin, and it has, as a confirmation of this truth, been ſent to Holland." The ſkin here alluded to is now in the cabinet of natural hiſtory at Leyden. Linnæus ranks this animal among the deer kind. Its head is like that of a ſtag; the horns are blunt, about ſix inches long, covered with hair, but not branched. The neck reſembles a camel's, only longer, being near ſeven feet. It has a mane like that of a horſe; feet,

ears,

ears, and a tongue like thoſe of a cow; ſlender legs, the fore ones being conſiderably longer than the hinder; the body is but ſmall, covered with white hair, and ſpotted with red; the tail is long, and buſhy at the end; the upper jaw contains no fore teeth; he moves both the fore feet together when he runs, and not one after the other like other animals; he is eighteen feet long from the tail to the top of the head, and is ſixteen feet from the ground when he holds up his head.

A great variety of birds and fowls are found at the cape, both wild and tame. Here are three ſorts of eagles, namely, 1. The bone breaker, who feeds on tortoiſes; to obtain the fleſh of which it uſes this ſingular method. Having carried the tortoiſe aloft in the air, it drops it upon ſome hard rock, by which means the ſhell is broken, and the eagle can eaſily come at its prey. 2. The dung-eagle, which tears out the entrails of animals to ſubſiſt on, and, though no bigger than a common gooſe, is exceeding ſtrong and voracious. 3. The duck-eagle, ſo called becauſe it feeds principally on ducks. Here are alſo wild geeſe of three ſorts. 1. The water gooſe, which reſembles ours. 2. The mountain gooſe, which is the largeſt of all, having a green head, and green wings. 3. The crop gooſe, ſo named from its remarkable large craw, of which bags, pockets, and tobacco-pouches are made. All theſe kinds of geeſe are ſuch good eating, ſo plentiful, and ſo eaſily taken, that the people of the cape do not think the tame gooſe worth the trouble of breeding. But of all the numerous birds that are to be found here, the flamingo is one of the moſt ſingular. It has a long neck, and is larger than a ſwan: the legs are remarkably long, and of an orange tawny, and the feet are like thoſe of a gooſe: the bill contains blue teeth with black points; the head and neck are intirely white; the upper part of the wings are of a bright flame colour, and the lower black.

Reptiles are very numerous at the cape, particularly the following ſerpents, 1. The tree ſerpents, ſo called from reſembling the branch of a tree, and from being

fond of winding itſelf about trees. 2. The aſh coloured aſp, ſpeckled with white and red, which is ſeveral yards long. 3. The ſhoot ſerpent, ſo named from the amazing velocity with which it darts itſelf at an enemy. Some call it the eye ſerpent, on account of the numerous white ſpots reſembling eyes, with which its ſkin is marked. 4. The blind ſlow-worm, a black ſcaly ſerpent, ſpotted with brown, white, and red. 5. The thirſt ſerpent, or inflamer, a moſt venomous and dangerous ſerpent, about three quarters of a yard long; it has a broad neck, black back, and is very active. 6. The hair ſerpent, which is about three feet in length, as thick as a man's thumb, and received its name from its yellow hair. Its poiſon is ſo malignant, that nothing but the ſerpent ſtone can prevent its being mortal. This ſtone is ſaid to be an artificial compoſition, prepared by the Bramins in India, who keep the ſecret to themſelves. It is ſhaped like a bean, in the middle whitiſh, the reſt of a ſky-blue. Whenever this is applied, it ſticks cloſe without bandage or ſupport, and imbibes the poiſon till it can receive no more, and then drops off. Being laid in milk, it purges itſelf of the venom, turning the milk yellow, and ſo is applied again, till by its not ſticking, it proves that the poiſon is exhauſted.

The neighbouring ſea affords a plentiful ſupply of fiſh to the inhabitants of the cape. The meat of the ſea cows is much admired. The flying fiſh, which has wings like a bat, is reckoned a great delicacy. The brown fiſh is as big as an ox, and is deemed good food either freſh or ſalted. The bennet is near three feet long, and weighs about ſeven pounds: the eyes and tails are red; the fins yellow, and the ſcales purple, with gold ſtreaks. The meat is of a crimſon colour, and ſo remains after it is dreſſed; nevertheleſs it is delicious eating. The gold fiſh has a ſtreak from head to tail, circles round his eyes of a gold colour, it is eighteen inches long, weighs about a pound, and its fleſh of an exquiſite taſte. The braſſem is found only about the cape. Of this fiſh there are two ſorts; the one has a black

black back, and purple head; the other is of a dark blue colour, and the former is rounder than the latter. They are both cheap and wholeſome food. The ſtone braſſem is good either freſh or ſalted, reſembles a carp in make, but is more delicious in taſte. One ſpecies of this fiſh is called flat-noſe, from the ſhape of the head, and is much more valued than the other ſort. The red ſtone fiſh is exceeding beautiful to the eye, and exquiſite to the taſte: the back is ſcarlet ſpotted with blue, and beſpangled with gold; the eyes are of a bright red, and ſurrounded with a ſilver circle, and the belly is of a pale pink colour, has a ſhining ſilver tail, reſembles a carp both in ſhape and taſte, and weighs about a pound. Of ſhell-fiſh, which are innumerable, there is a ſingular ſpecies called klin-kouſen, which has an upper and under ſhell, thick, rough, twiſted, and incruſted. In vinegar the cruſt will drop off, and the ſhell exhibits an admirable pearl colour. Sea-ſuns and ſea-ſtars, are ſmall round ſhell-fiſh, and receive their denominations from the great variety of prickles, which ſhoot from them like rays of light. The fiſh called pagger has a prickly ſhell, and is much dreaded by the people of the cape, as a wound from one of its protuberances turns to a mortification, unleſs great care is taken to prevent it. The ſea-ſpout reſembles a piece of moſs ſticking faſt to the rocks. It is of a green colour, emits water, and within is like a tough piece of fleſh. The torpedo, or cramp-ray is a very curious fiſh. The body is circular, the ſkin ſoft, ſmooth and yellow, marked with large annular ſpots; the eyes ſmall, and the tail tapering. It is of different ſizes, and weighs from five to fifteen pounds. The narcotic or benumbing quality of this fiſh was known to the ancients, and hath furniſhed matter of ſpeculation to the philoſophers of all ages. If a perſon touches it when alive, it inſtantly deprives him of the uſe of his arm, and has the ſame effect if he touches it with a ſtick. Even if one treads upon it with a ſhoe on, it affects not only the leg, but the thigh upwards. They who touch it with the feet are ſeized with a ſtronger palpitation than even thoſe

who touch it with the hand: this numbneſs bears no reſemblance to that which we feel when a nerve is a long time preſſed, and the foot is ſaid to be aſleep: it rather appears to be like a ſudden vapour, which paſſing through the pores in an inſtant, penetrates to the very ſprings of life, from whence it diffuſes itſelf all over the body, and gives real pain. The nerves are ſo affected, that the perſon ſtruck imagines all the bones of his body, and particularly thoſe of the limb that received the blow, are driven out of joint. All this is accompanied with a univerſal tremor, a ſickneſs of the ſtomach, a general convulſion, and a total ſuſpenſion of the faculties of the mind. In ſhort, ſuch is the pain, that all the force of our promiſes and authority could not prevail upon a ſeaman to undergo the ſhock a ſecond time. It has been obſerved, that the powers of this fiſh decline with its ſtrength, and intirely ceaſes when it expires. This benumbing faculty is of double uſe to the torpedo: firſt it enables it to get its prey with great facility; and ſecondly it is an admirable defence againſt its enemies, as by numbing a fiſh of ſuperior force with its touch, it can eaſily eſcape. The narcotic power of the torpedo is greater in the female than the male. According to Appian, it will benumb the fiſherman through the whole extent of hook, line and rod. The fleſh of this remarkable fiſh having, however, no pernicious quality, is eaten by the people of the cape in common with others.

The air at the Cape of Good Hope is ſalutary in a high degree; ſo that thoſe who bring diſeaſes from Europe generally recover health in a ſhort time; but the diſeaſes that are brought hither from India are not ſo certainly cured. The weather at the cape may be divided into two ſeaſons, namely, the wet monſoon, and the dry monſoon; the former begins in March, and the latter in September; ſo that ſummer commences at the cape about the time that it concludes with us. The inconveniences of the climate are exceſſive heat in the dry ſeaſon, and heavy rains, thick fogs, and N. W. winds in the wet ſeaſon. Thunder and lightning are never

never known here but in March and September. Water ſeldom freezes, and when it does, the ice is but thin, and diſſolves upon the leaſt appearance of the ſun. In the hot weather, the people are happy when the wind blows from the S. E. becauſe it keeps off the ſea-weeds which otherwiſe would float to the ſhore, and corrupt there. The appearance of two remarkable clouds, which frequently hang over the ſummits of the two mountains of Table-hill and Devil-hill, commonly enable the inhabitants of this country to prognoſticate what weather will happen. The clouds are at firſt ſmall, but gradually increaſing, they at length unite into one cloud, which invelops both mountains, when a terrible hurricane ſoon enſues. A gentleman, who reſided many years at the cape, ſays, "The ſkirts of this cloud are white, but ſeem much compacter than the matter of common clouds. The upper parts are of a lead colour, owing to the refracted rays of light. No rain falls from it, but at times it diſcovers great humidity, when it is of a darker hue; and the wind iſſuing from it is broken, raging by guſts of ſhort continuance. In its uſual ſtate, the wind keeps up its firſt fury, unabated, for one, two, three, or eight days, and ſometimes a whole month. The cloud ſeems all the time undiminiſhed, though little fleeces are ſeen torn from the ſkirts from time to time, and hurried down the ſides of the hills, vaniſhing when they reach the bottom; ſo that during the ſtorm the cloud ſeems to be ſupplied with new water. When the cloud begins to brighten up, thoſe ſupplies fail, and the wind proportionably abates. At length the cloud growing tranſparent, the wind ceaſes." During the continuance of the S. E. winds, the Table-valley is torn by furious whirlwinds. If they blow warm, they are generally of ſhort duration, and in this caſe the cloud ſoon diſappears; but when the wind blows cold, it is a ſure ſign it will laſt long, except an hour or two at noon, or midnight when it ſeems to recover new ſtrength, and afterwards renews its boiſterous rage.

Near the cape the water of the ocean is of a green colour,

colour, owing principally to the coral ſhrubs, and the weed called tromba. The firſt, while in the water, are green and ſoft; but when expoſed to the air, they grow hard, and change their colour to white, black, or red. The latter are ten or twelve feet in length, hollow within, and when dry, become firm and ſtrong. They are often framed into trumpets, and the ſound they produce is very agreeable to the ear.

The ſources of the rivers in this country are in the mountains: they glide over a gravelly bottom, are clear, pleaſant, and ſalubrious; but other ſtreams are dark, muddy, and unwholeſome. Here are a few brackiſh ſprings, whoſe waters medicinally uſed, greatly purify the blood; and ſeveral hot baths are very efficacious in various diſorders. Upon the whole, the reputation of the cape waters is ſo great, that every Daniſh ſhip returning from India, is obliged to fill a large caſk with the clear ſweet water that abounds here for the uſe of his Daniſh majeſty.

The ſoil in general about the cape conſiſts of a clayey earth, and is ſo fat, that it requires but little manuring. White and red chalk are found in abundance; the former is uſed by the Dutch, to whitewaſh their houſes, and the latter by the Hottentot women to paint their faces. Various bituminous ſubſtances of ſeveral colours are found in Drakenſtoin colony, particularly a kind of oil which trickles from the rocks, and has a very rank ſmell. With reſpect to minerals, ſilver ore has been found in ſome of the mountains, and alſo ſeveral iron mines. The Namaqua Hottentots, who are ſituated above three hundred miles from the cape, bring copper to trade with the Dutch.

When we ſpeak of agriculture, it is to be obſerved, that the Europeans of the cape, and their lands, are implied; for the Hottentots in general deteſt the very idea of cultivation, and would ſooner ſtarve than till the ground, ſo greatly are they addicted to ſloth and indolence. The working of the plough here is ſo laborious from the ſtiffneſs of the ſoil, that it frequently requires near twenty oxen to one plough. The ſowing

ſeaſon

ſeaſon is in July, and the harveſt about Chriſtmas. The corn is not thraſhed with a flail, but trod out by horſes or oxen, on an artificial floor made of cow-dung, ſtraw, and water, which when mixed together cements, and ſoon becomes perfectly hard. It is laid in an oval form. The cattle are confined by halters which run from one to the other, and the driver ſtands in the middle, where he exerciſes a long ſtick to keep them continually to a quick pace. By this method half a dozen horſes will do more in one day, than a dozen men can in a week. A tythe of the corn belongs to the Dutch Company, and the reſt they purchaſe at a price ſtipulated between them and the huſbandmen.

We have already obſerved of the inhabitants of the cape, that their numbers bear a greater proportion to the natives and ſtrangers, than thoſe in Batavia; and have only to add, that the women in general are very handſome: they have fine clear ſkins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of conſtitution, and high health. They make the beſt wives in the world, both as miſtreſſes of a family and mothers, and there is ſcarcely a houſe that does not ſwarm with children. The common method in which ſtrangers live here, is to lodge and board with ſome of the inhabitants, many of whoſe houſes are always open for their reception; the rates are from five ſhillings to two a day, for which all neceſſaries are found. Coaches may be hired at twenty-four ſhillings a day, and horſes at ſix; but the country affords very little temptation to uſe them. There are no public entertainments, and to thoſe that are private, all ſtrangers of the rank of gentlemen are always admitted.

We come now to ſpeak of the Caffres or natives of this country, none of whoſe habitations, where they retain their original cuſtoms, are within leſs than four days journey from Cape Town; thoſe that we ſaw at the cape were all ſervants to Dutch farmers, whoſe cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meaneſt kind. There are ſixteen Hottentot nations,

nations, which inhabit this ſouthern promontory; at leaſt, there are ſo many that hold a correſpendence with the Dutch, though it is preſumed, there are many more to the northward.

The ſtature of the Hottentot men is from five to ſix feet in height. Their bodies are proportionable, and well made: they are ſeldom either too fat or lean, and ſcarce ever any crooked or deformed perſons amongſt them, any farther than they diſfigure their children themſelves by flatting and breaking the griſtles of their noſes, looking on a flat noſe as a beauty. Their heads as well as their eyes, are rather of the largeſt: their lips are naturally thick; their hair black and ſhort like the negroes, and they have exceeding white teeth: and after they have taken a great deal of pains with greaſe and ſoot to darken their natural tawny complexions, reſemble the negroes pretty much in colour. The women are much leſs than the men; and what is moſt remarkable in them, is a callous flap or ſkin that falls over the pudenda, and in a manner conceals it. The report of which uſually excites the curioſity of the European ſailors, to viſit the Hottentot villages near the cape, where a great many of thoſe ladies, on ſeeing a ſtranger, will offer to ſatisfy his curioſity for a half-penny, before a crowd of people, which perfectly ſpoils the character that Mr. Kolben has given of their modeſty.

The head of the men are covered with greaſe and ſoot mixed together; and going without any thing elſe on their heads in the ſummer-time, the duſt ſticks to it, and makes them a very filthy cap, which they ſay cools them, and preſerves their heads from the ſcorching heat of the ſun; and in the winter, they wear flat caps of cat-ſkin or lamb-ſkin, half dried, which they tie with a thong of the ſame leather under their chins. The men alſo wear a kroſſe or mantle, made of ſheep-ſkins or other ſkins, over their ſhoulders, which reaches to the middle; and, being faſtened with a thong about their neck, is open before. In winter they turn the woolly or hairy ſides next their backs, and in ſummer the other: this ſerves the man for his bed at night; and this

this is all the winding-ſheet or coffin he has when he dies. If he be a captain of a village, or chief of his nation, inſtead of a ſheep-ſkin, his mantle is made of tyger-ſkins, wild cat-ſkins, or ſome other ſkins they ſet a value upon: but though theſe mantles reach no lower, generally, than their waiſts, yet there are ſome nations who wear them as low as their legs, and others that have them touch the ground.

A Hottentot alſo hangs about his neck a greaſy pouch, in which he keeps his knife, his pipe and tobacco, and ſome dahka (which intoxicates like tobacco) and a little piece of wood, burnt at both ends, as a charm againſt witchcraft. He wears alſo three large ivory rings on his left arm, to which he faſtens a bag of proviſions when he travels. He carries in his right hand two ſticks, the firſt called his kirri, which is about three feet long, and an inch thick, but blunt at both ends; the other, called his rackum-ſtick, about a foot long, and of the ſame thickneſs, but has a ſharp point, and is uſed as a dart, to throw at an enemy or wild beaſt; which he ſeldom miſſes, if he be within diſtance. In his left hand he has another ſtick, about a foot long, to which is faſtened a tail of a fox or wild cat; and this ſerves him as a handkerchief to wipe off the ſweat. They wear a kind of ſandals, alſo made of the raw hide of an ox or elephant, when they are obliged to travel through ſtoney countries; and ſometimes have buſkins, to preſerve their legs from buſhes and briars; but ordinarily their legs and thighs have no covering.

The women wear caps, the crowns whereof are a little raiſed; and theſe are made of half dried ſkins, and tied under their chins. They ſcarce ever put them off night or day, winter or ſummer. They uſually wear two kroſſes or mantles, one upon another, and, as theſe are only faſtened with a thong, about their necks, they appear naked down to the middle: but they have an apron, larger than that of the men to cover them before, and another of ſtill larger dimenſions that cover their hind parts. About their legs they wrap thongs of half dried ſkins, to the thickneſs of a jack-boot, which are ſuch a load to them,

that they lift up their legs with difficulty, and walk very much like a trooper in jack-boots: this ſerves both for a diſtinction of their ſex, and for ornament. But this is not all their finery: if they are people of any figure, inſtead of a ſheep ſkin, they wear a tyger ſkin, or a mantle of wild cat ſkin. They have alſo a pouch hanging about their necks, in which they carry ſomething to eat, whether they are at home or abroad, with their dahka, tobacco, and pipe. But the principal ornaments both of men and women are braſs or glaſs beads, with little thin plates of glittering braſs and mother of pearl, which they wear in their hair, or about their ears. Of theſe glaſs or braſs beads ſtrung, they alſo make necklaces, bracelets for the arms, and girdles, wearing ſeveral ſtrings of them about their necks, waiſt, and arms, chuſing the ſmalleſt beads for their necks: thoſe are fineſt that have moſt ſtrings of them, and their arms are ſometimes covered with bracelets from the wriſt to the elbow. The largeſt beads are on the ſtrings about the middle: in theſe they affect a variety of colours, all of which the Dutch furniſh them with, and take their cattle in return. There is another kind of ornament peculiar to the men, and that is, the bladder of any wild beaſt they have killed, which is blown up, and faſtened to the hair as a trophy of their valour. Both ſexes powder themſelves with a duſt they call bachu; and the women ſpot their faces with a red earth or ſtone (as ours do with black patches) which is thought to add to their beauty, by the natives; but, in the eyes of Europeans, renders them more frightful and ſhocking than they are naturally. But as part of their dreſs, we ought to have mentioned, in the firſt place, the cuſtom of daubing their bodies, and the inſide of their caps and mantles, with greaſe and ſoot. Soon after their children are born, they lay them in the ſun, or by the fire, and rub them over with fat or butter, mixed with ſoot, to render them of a deeper black, it is ſaid; for they are naturally tawny: and this they continue to do almoſt every day of their lives, after they are grown up, not only to increaſe their beauty, but to render their limbs

ſupple

ſupple and pliable. As ſome nations pour oil upon their heads and bodies, ſo theſe people make uſe of melted fat: you cannot make them a more acceptable preſent than the fat or ſcum of the pot that meat is boiled in to anoint themſelves.

Nor are the Hottentots more cleanly in their diet than in their dreſs; for they chooſe the guts and entrails of cattle and of ſome wild beaſts (with very little cleanſing), rather than the reſt of the fleſh, and eat their meat half boiled or broiled; but their principal food conſiſts of roots, herbs, fruits or milk: they ſeldom kill any of thoſe cattle, unleſs at a feſtival; they only feed on ſuch as die of themſelves, either of diſeaſes or old age, or on what they take in hunting; and, when they are hard put to it, they will eat the raw leather that is wound about the womens legs, and even ſoles of ſhoes; and, as their mantles are always well ſtocked with lice of an unuſual ſize, they are not aſhamed to ſit down in the public ſtreets at the cape, pull off the lice, and eat them. And we ought to have remembered, that they boil their meat in the blood of beaſts when they have any of it. They rather devour their meat than eat it, pulling it to pieces with their teeth and hands, diſcovering a canine appetite and fierceneſs: they abſtain, however, from ſwines-fleſh, and ſome other kinds of meat, and from fiſh that have no ſcales, as religiouſly as ever the Jews did. And here it may not be improper to ſay ſomething of the management of their milk and butter: they never ſtrain their milk, but drink it with all the hairs and naſtineſs with which it is mixed in the milking by the Hottentot women. When they make butter of it, they put it into ſome ſkin made in the form of a ſoldier's knapſack, the hairy ſide inwards; and then two of them taking hold of it, one at each end, they whirl and turn it round till it is converted into butter, which they put up for anointing themſelves, their caps and mantles with, for they eat no butter; and the reſt they ſell to the Dutch, without clearing it from the hairs and dirt it contracts in the knapſack. The Hollanders, when they have it indeed, endeavour to ſeparate the

naſtineſs from it, and ſell to the ſhipping, that arrives there, frequently for butter of their own making; and ſome they eat themſelves (but ſurely none but a Dutchman could eat Hottentot butter) and the dregs and dirt that is left they give to their ſlaves; which having been found to create diſeaſes, the governor of the cape ſometimes prohibits their giving their ſlaves this ſtuff by public edict; which is not, however, much regarded. The butter-milk, without any manner of cleaning or ſtraining, the Hottentots drink themſelves; giving what they have to ſpare to their lambs and calves. Their uſual drink is cow's milk or water, and the women ſometimes drink ewe's milk; but this the men never touch: and it is obſerved, that the women are never ſuffered to eat with the men, or come near them, during the time of their menſes.

Since the arrival of the Dutch among them, it appears that the Hottentots are very fond of wine, brandy, and other ſpirituous liquors; theſe, and the baubles already mentioned, the Hollanders truck for their cattle; and though a Hottentot will turn ſpit for a Dutchman half a day for a draught or two of ſour wine, yet do they never attempt to plant vineyards (as they ſee the Dutch often do) or think of making wine themſelves.

We ſhall proceed, in the next place, to give an account of their towns and houſes, or rather, their camps and tents.

Like the Tartars and Arabs, they remove their dwellings frequently for the conveniency of water and freſh paſture: they encamp in a circle formed by twenty or thirty tents, and ſometimes twice the number, contiguous to each other; within the area whereof they keep their leſſer cattle in the night, and the larger on the outſide of their camp: their tents, or, as ſome call them, houſes, are made with ſlender poles, bent like an arch, and covered with mats or ſkins, and ſometimes both; they are of an oval figure, the middle of the tent being about the height of a man, and decreaſing gradually (the poles being ſhorter) towards each end, the loweſt arch, which is the door or entrance, being about three feet high, as is the oppoſite

arch

arch at the other end; the longeſt diameter of the tent being about twelve or fourteen feet, and the ſhorteſt ten; and in the middle of the tent is a ſhallow hole about a yard diameter, in which they make their fire, and round which the whole family, conſiſting of nine or ten people of all ages and ſexes, ſit or lie night and day in ſuch a ſmoak (when it is cold, or they are dreſſing of victuals) that it is impoſſible for an European to bear it, there being uſually no vent for the ſmoak but the door, though ſome have ſeen a hole in the top of ſome of their huts, to let out the ſmoak, and give them light. Such a circle of tents or huts as has been deſcribed, is called by the Hottentots a kraal, and ſometimes by the Europeans a town or village; but ſeems to be more properly a camp: for a town conſiſts of more ſubſtantial buildings, and is ſeldom capable of being removed from one place to another: whereas theſe dwellings conſiſt of nothing more than ſmall tent-poles, covered with ſkins or mats, which are moveable, and carried away upon their baggage oxen whenever they remove with their herds to a diſtant paſture. As to the furniture of their tents; they conſiſt of little more than their mantles which they lie on, ſome other ſkins of wild beaſts they have killed or purchaſed, an earthen pot they boil their meat in, their arms, and perhaps ſome other trivial utenſils. The only domeſtick animals they keep are dogs, as ugly in their kind as their maſters, but exceeding uſeful to them in driving and defending their cattle.

The Hottentots are agreed by all to be the lazieſt generation under the ſun: they will rather ſtarve, or eat dried ſkins, or ſhoe ſoles at home, than hunt for their food; and yet, when they apply themſelves to the chace, or any other exerciſe, no people are more active and dexterous than the Hottentots; and they ſerve the Europeans often with the greateſt fidelity and application, when they contract to ſerve them for wages: they are alſo exceeding generous and hoſpitable; they will ſcarce eat a piece of veniſon, or a diſh of fiſh they have catched, or drink their beloved drams alone, but call

call in their neighbours to partake with them as far as it will go.

Concerning their government, people agree, that every nation has its king or chief, called konquer, whoſe authority devolves upon him by hereditary ſucceſſion; and that they do not pretend to elect their reſpective ſovereigns. That this chief has the power of making peace and war, and preſides in all their councils and courts of juſtice: but then his authority is ſaid to be limited; and that he can determine nothing without the conſent of the captains of the ſeveral kraals, who ſeem to be the Hottentot ſenate. The captain of every kraal, whoſe office is hereditary alſo, is their leader in time of war, and chief magiſtrate of his kraal in time of peace; and, with the head of every family, determines all civil and criminal cauſes within the kraal; only ſuch differences as happen between one kraal and another, and matters of ſtate, are determined by the king and ſenate. The Dutch, ſince their arrival at the cape, have preſented the king, or chief of every nation of the Hottentots in alliance with them, with a braſs crown; and the captains of each kraal with a braſs-headed cane, which are now the badges of their reſpective offices; formerly they were diſtinguiſhed only by finer ſkins, and a greater variety of beads and glittering trifles. In their councils their king ſits on his heels in the center, and the captains of the kraals ſit in like manner round about him. At his acceſſion, it is ſaid, he promiſes to obſerve their national cuſtoms; and gives them an entertainment, killing an ox, and two or three ſheep, upon the occaſion; on which he feaſts his captains, but their wives are only entertained with the broth: but then the next day, we are told, her Hottentot majeſty treats the ladies, and their huſbands are put off in like manner with the ſoup.

The captain of each kraal alſo, at his acceſſion, engages to obſerve the cuſtoms of his kraal, and makes an entertainment for the men, as his lady does the next day for the women; and, though theſe people ſhew their chiefs great reſpect, they allow neither their king

or inferior magiſtrates any revenue; they ſubſiſt, as other families do, upon their ſtock of cattle, and what they take in hunting.

Having no notion of writing or letters, they can have no written laws: but there are ſome antient cuſtoms, from which they ſcarce ever deviate. Murder, adultery, and robbery, they conſtantly puniſh with death; and, if a perſon is ſuſpected of any of theſe crimes, the whole kraal join in ſeizing and ſecuring him; but the guilty perſon ſometimes makes his eſcape to the mountains, where robbers and criminals like himſelf, ſecure themſelves from juſtice, and frequently plunder the neighbouring country; for no other kraal or nation of Hottentots will entertain a ſtranger, unleſs he is known to them, and can give a good reaſon for leaving his own kraal. If the offender is apprehended, the captain aſſembles the people of his kraal in a day or two; who, making a ring, and ſitting down upon their heels, the criminal is placed in the center of them: the witneſſes on both ſides are heard, and the party ſuffered to make his defence: after which, the caſe being conſidered, the captain collects the ſuffrages of the judges; and, if a majority condemn him, the priſoner is executed on the ſpot. The captain firſt ſtrikes him with a truncheon he carries in his hand, and then the reſt of the judges fall upon him and drub him to death: then wrapping up the corpſe in his kroſſe or mantle, it is carried to ſome place diſtant from the kraal, where they bury it. In civil caſes alſo, the cauſe is determined by a majority of voices, and ſatisfaction immediately ordered to the injured perſon, out of the goods of the perſon that appears to be in the wrong. There is no appeal to any other court: the king and his council, conſiſting of the captains of the kraals, never interpoſe unleſs in matters that concern the public, or where the kraals are at variance. To which we may add, that the Hottentots cattle and perſonal eſtate deſcend to his eldeſt ſon: he cannot diſinherit him, or give his effects to his other children; but, as for property in lands, or any certain real eſtate, no man has any; the whole

whole country is but one common, where they feed their cattle promiſcuouſly, moving from place to place, to find water or freſh paſture as neceſſity requires. Even the ſeveral nations have no ſtated bounds; but uſe ſuch tracts of land as their anceſtors did before them: it is true, their reſpective limits ſometimes create great differences between the ſeveral nations, and occaſion bloody wars; which brings us now to treat of their arms, and the arts and ſtratagems they uſe in war.

The arms of a Hottentot are, 1. His lance, which reſembles a half-pike, ſometimes thrown, and uſed as a miſſive weapon; and at others, ſerves to puſh with in cloſe fight, the head or ſpear whereof is poiſoned. 2. His bow and arrows, the arrows bearded and poiſoned likewiſe, when they engage an enemy or wild beaſt they do not intend for food. Their bows are made of iron, or olive-wood; the ſtring, of the ſinews or guts of ſome animal: the quiver is a long narrow caſe, made of the ſkin of an elephant, elk, or ox, and ſlung at their backs, as ſoldiers ſling their knapſacks. 3. A dart of a foot long, which they throw exceeding true, ſcarce ever miſſing the mark they aim at, though it is not above the breadth of half a crown; theſe alſo are poiſoned, when they engage an enemy or a wild beaſt that is not to be eaten: and laſtly, when they have ſpent the reſt of their miſſive weapons, they have recourſe to ſtones, ſeldom making a diſcharge in vain; and, what is moſt remarkable in their ſhooting or throwing arrows, darts, or ſtones, they never ſtand ſtill, but are all the while ſkipping and jumping from one ſide to the other, poſſibly to avoid the ſtones and darts of the enemy. They are all foot, and never engage on horſeback; but have diſciplined bulls or oxen taught to run upon the enemy, and to toſs and diſorder them; which theſe creatures will do with the utmoſt fury on the word of command, not regarding the weapons that are thrown at them: for though the Hottentots have number of large elephants in their country, they have not yet learned the art of taming them, or training them up to war, as the military men in the Eaſt Indies do.

do. Every able bodied man is a ſoldier, and poſſeſſed of a ſet of ſuch arms as has been deſcribed; and on the ſummons of his prince, appears at the rendezvous with all imaginable alacrity and contempt of danger, and every man maintains himſelf while the expedition laſts. As their officers, civil and military, have no pay, ſo neither do the private men expect any; a ſenſe of honour, and the public good, are the ſole motives for hazarding their lives in their country's ſervice.

The Hottentots, in war, have very little conception of diſcipline, nor indeed is it poſſible they ſhould; for the only method of raiſing an army, is, for the kraal captains to order the people to follow them; the only method of maintaining one, is by hunting as they march: and the only way of deciding a diſpute between two nations, is, by fighting one battle; the ſucceſs of which determines the whole affair. In an engagement, they attack with an hideous yell, fight in great confuſion, and put more confidence in their war oxen than their own ſkill: for, as we have hinted above, theſe animals, when trained to the buſineſs, are better diſciplined and much more formidable, than the Hottentots themſelves. The principal inducements to their entering into a war at any time, is the preſervation of their territories. As they have no land marks or written treaties to adjuſt the exact bounds of every nation, they frequently diſagree about the limits of their reſpective countries; and, when any neighbouring nation grazes their cattle upon a ſpot of ground another claims, ſatisfaction is immediately demanded; and, if it be not given, they make repriſals, and have recourſe to arms. But this is not the only occaſion of wars amongſt the Hottentots: they are not always that chaſte and virtuous people Mr. Kolben has repreſented them; ſome tempting Helen (for Hottentots poſſibly may appear amiable in one another's eyes, with all the greaſe and carrion they are cloathed with) has ſmitten a neighbouring chief, perhaps, who prevails on his people to aſſiſt him in the rape of the deſired female; and this frequently ſets their tribes together by the ears. The

ſtealing each others cattle is another cauſe of deadly ſtrife; for though each kraal puniſhes theft among themſelves with death, yet it is looked upon as an heroic act to rob thoſe of another nation; at leaſt the body of the people are ſo backward in giving up the offender, that they frequently come to blows upon it.

When they march into the field, every man follows his particular captain, the chief of his kraal: they obſerve little order; neither do they take the precaution of throwing up trenches to defend themſelves: and what is ſtill more ſurpriſing, have no ſhields to defend themſelves againſt miſſive weapons, though ſome ſay they will ward off a lance or dart, and even a ſtone, with a little truncheon about a foot long, which they carry in their hand. The ſeveral companies advance to the charge, at the command of their chief; and, when thoſe in the front have ſhot one flight of arrows, they retreat and make room for thoſe in the rear; and, when they have diſcharged, the former advance again, and thus alternately they continue till they have ſpent all their miſſive weapons, and then they have recourſe to ſtones, unleſs they are firſt broken and diſperſed by a troop of bulls: for the wife chiefs and generals of each ſide, according to the European practice, remaining on an eminence in the rear, to obſerve the fortune of the day, when they obſerve their people are hard preſſed, give the word of command to their corps de reſerve of bulls, who break into the body of the enemy, and generally bring all into confuſion; and that ſide that preſerves their order beſt, on this furious attack of theſe bulls of Baſan, are ſure to be victorious. The ſkill of the general ſeems to be chiefly in managing his bulls; who never charge each other, but ſpend their whole rage upon the men, who have, it ſeems, no dogs of Engliſh breed to play againſt them, or this ſtratagem would be of little ſervice: but we ſhould have obſerved, that as the battle always begins with horrid cries and noiſe, which perhaps ſupplies the place of drums and trumpets; ſo the victors inſult with no leſs noiſe over the conquered enemy, killing all that

fall

fall into their hands: but they ſeldom fight more than one battle, ſome neighbouring power uſually interpoſing to make up the quarrel; and of late the Dutch perform this good office, between ſuch nations as lie near their ſettlements. From their wars with each other, we naturally proceed to their wars with wild beaſts, with which their country abounds more than any other; theſe people, it ſeems, eſteem it a much greater honour to have killed one of theſe foes to mankind, than an enemy of their own ſpecies.

Inſtances are not wanting of a Hottentot's engaging ſingly with the fierceſt wild beaſts, and killing them; but uſually the whole kraal or village aſſemble, when a wild beaſt is diſcovered in their neighbourhood, and, dividing themſelves in ſmall parties, endeavour to ſurround him. Having found their enemy, they uſually ſet up a great cry, at which the frighted animal endeavours to break through and eſcape them: if it prove to be a rhinoceros, an elk, or elephant, they throw their lances at him, darts and arrows being too weak to pierce through their thick hides: if the beaſt be not killed at the firſt diſcharge, they repeat the attack, and load him with their ſpears; and, as he runs with all his rage at the perſons who wound him, thoſe in his rear follow him cloſe, and ply him with their ſpears, on whom he turns again, but is overpowered by his enemies, who conſtantly return to the charge, when his back is towards them, and ſcarce ever fail of bringing the creature down, before he has taken his revenge on any of them. How hazardous ſoever ſuch an engagement may appear to an European, theſe people make it their ſport; and have this advantage, that they are exceeding ſwift of foot, and ſcarce ever miſs the mark they aim at with their ſpears: if one of them is hard preſſed by the brute, he is ſure to be relieved by his companions, who never quit the field till the beaſt is killed, or makes his eſcape: though they ſometimes dexterouſly avoid the adverſary, they immediately return to the charge, ſubduing the fierceſt either by ſtratagem or force. When attacking a lion, a leopard, or a tyger,

their darts and arrows are of ſervice to them; and therefore they begin the engagement at a greater diſtance, than when they charge an elephant or rhinoceros; and the creature has a wood of darts and arrows upon his back, before he can approach his enemies, which make him fret and rage and fly at them with the greateſt fury; but thoſe he attacks, nimbly avoid his paws, while others purſue him, and fininſh the conqueſt with their ſpears. Sometimes a lion takes to his heels, with abundance of poiſoned darts and arrows in his fleſh: but, the poiſon beginning to operate, he ſoon falls, and becomes a prey to thoſe he would have preyed upon. The elephant, the rhinoceros, and the elk, are frequently taken in traps and pitfalls, without any manner of hazard. The elephants are obſerved to go in great companies to water, following in a file one after another, and uſually take the ſame road till they are diſturbed: the Hottentots therefore dig pits in their paths, about eight feet deep, and four and five over; in which they fix ſharp ſtakes pointed with iron, and then cover the pit with ſmall ſticks and turf, ſo as it is not diſcernable: and as theſe animals uſually keep in one track, frequently one or other of them falls in with his fore feet into the pit, and the ſtake pierces his body; the more he ſtruggles, the deeper the weight of his monſtrous body fixes him on the ſtake. When the reſt of the herd obſerve the misfortune of their companion, and find he cannot diſengage himſelf, they immediately abandon him: whereupon the Hottentots, who lie concealed, in expectation of the ſucceſs of their ſtratagem, approach the wounded beaſt, ſtab him with their ſpears, and cut his largeſt veins, ſo that he ſoon expires; whereupon they cut him to pieces, and, carrying the fleſh home, feaſt upon it as long as it laſts. His teeth they make into rings for their arms, and, when they have any ivory to ſpare, diſpoſe of it to the Europeans. The rhinoceros and elk are frequently taken in pitfalls, as the elephants are. The Hottentot, who kills any of theſe, or a lion, leopard, or tyger, ſingly, has the higheſt honour conferred upon

upon him, and ſeveral privileges, which belong only to ſuch intrepid heroes. At his return from his hazardous and important ſervice, the men of the kraal depute one of the ſeniors to congratulate him on his victory, and deſire that he will honour them with his preſence; whereupon he follows the old deputy to the aſſembly, whom he finds, according to cuſtom, ſitting upon their heels in a circle; and, a mat of diſtinction being laid for him in the center, he ſets himſelf down upon it: after which the old deputy urines plentifully upon him, which the hero rubs in with great eagerneſs, having firſt ſcratched the greaſe off his ſkin with his nails; the deputy all this while pronouncing ſome words unintelligible to any but themſelves. After this, they light a pipe of tobacco, which they ſmoke and hand one to another till there remain nothing but aſhes in the pipe, and theſe the old deputy ſtrews over the gallant man, who rubs them in as they fall upon him, not ſuffering the leaſt duſt to be loſt. After which the neighbours having ſeverally congratulated him on his advancement to the high honour, they diſperſe, and go to their reſpective tents. The conqueror, afterwards, faſtens the bladder of the furious beaſt he has killed to his hair, which he ever after wears as a badge of his knighthood; and is from that time eſteemed by every one a brave man, and a benefactor to his country. When retired to his tent, his neighbours ſeem to vie which of them ſhall oblige him moſt, and are, for the next three days, continually ſending him one delicious morſel or other; nor do they call upon him to perform duty during that time, but ſuffer him to indulge his eaſe: but, what is ſtill more unaccountable, his wife, or wives, (for he may have more than one) are not allowed to come near him for three days after this honour is conferred on him; but they are forced to ramble about the fields, and to keep to a ſpare diet, leſt they ſhould, as Mr. Kolben ſurmiſes, tempt the huſbands to their embraces: but on the third day in the evening, we are told the women return to the tent, are received with the utmoſt joy and tenderneſs; mutual congratulations paſs between

tween them; a fat ſheep is killed, and their neighbours invited to the feaſt, where the proweſs of the hero, and the honour he has obtained, are the chief ſubject of their converſation.

There is ſcarce any wild beaſt, but the fleſh is good eating, if it be not killed with poiſonous weapons; but the tyger is the moſt delicious morſel; and as the whole kraal partake of the feaſt, the perſon who kills him meets with a double ſhare of praiſe, as he both rids the country of an enemy, and pleaſes their palates. But to return to the field ſports of the Hottentots: when they hunt a deer, a wild goat, or a hare, they go ſingly, or but two or three in company, armed only with a dart or two, and ſeldom miſs the game they throw at: yet, as has been obſerved already, ſo long as they have any manner of food left, if it be but the raw hides of cattle, or ſhoe ſoles, they will hardly be perſuaded to ſtir to get more; though it is true, when they apprehend their cattle in danger from wild beaſts, no people are more active, or purſue the chaſe of them with greater alacrity and bravery. From hunting, we proceed to treat of their fiſhing; at which they are very expert; taking fiſh with angles, nets, and ſpears; and they get a certain fiſh, called rock-fiſh, particularly by groping the holes of the rocks near the ſhore, when the tide is out: theſe are mightily admired by the Europeans; but having no ſcales, the Hottentots will not eat them.

The manner of the Hottentots ſwimming, is as particular as of his fiſhing; for he ſtands upright in the ſea, and rather walks and treads the water, than ſwims upon it, his head, neck, and ſhoulders being quite above the waves, as well as his arms, and yet they move faſter in the water than any European can; even in a ſtorm, when the waves run high they will venture into the ſea, riſing and falling with the waves like a cork.

The next thing we ſhall notice, is the marriages of the Hottentots: and it ſeems every young fellow has ſuch regard to the advice of his father, (or rather the laws and cuſtoms of the country require it) that he always



1 Tiger..... 2 Lion..... 3 Lioneſs.....

ways conſults the old man before he enters into a treaty with his miſtreſs, and if he approves the match, the father and ſon, in the firſt place, pay a viſit to the father of the damſel, with whom having ſmoked, and talked of indifferent things for ſome time, the father of the lover opens the matter to the virgin's father, who having conſulted his wife, returns an anſwer immediately to the propoſal: if it be rejected, the lover and his father retire without more words; but if the offer be approved by the old folks, the damſel is called, and acquainted, that they have provided a huſband for her; as ſhe muſt ſubmit to their determination, unleſs ſhe can hold her lover at arms end, after a night's ſtruggling; for we are told, that when the parents are agreed, the two young people are put together, and if the virgin loſes her maidenhead, ſhe muſt have the young fellow, though ſhe be never ſo averſe to the match: but then ſhe is permitted to pinch and ſcratch, and defend herſelf as well as ſhe can; and if ſhe holds out till morning, the lover returns without his miſtreſs, and makes no further attempts; but if he ſubdues her, ſhe is his wife to all intents and purpoſes, without further ceremony; and the next day the man kills a fat ox, or more, according to his circumſtances, for the wedding dinner, and the entertainment of their friends, who reſort to them upon the occaſion, bringing abundance of good wiſhes for the happineſs of the married couple, as is uſual among politer people. The ox is no ſooner killed, but the company get each ſome of the fat, and greaſe themſelves with it from head to foot, powdering themſelves afterwards with buchu, and the women, to add to their charms, make red ſpots with oker, or red chalk, on their black faces. The entertainment being ready, the men form a circle in the area of the kraal (for a large company cannot ſit within doors) and the women form another; the bridegroom ſitting in the middle of the men's circle, and the bride in the center of her own ſex. Then the prieſt enters the men's circle, and urines upon the bridegroom, which the young man rubs in very joyfully. He then goes to the ladies circle,

circle, where he does the bride the ſame favour. Then the old man goes from the bride to the bridegroom, till he has exhauſted all his ſtore. The prieſt then pronounces his benediction in theſe words: "That they may live long and happily together; that they may have a ſon before the end of the year; and that he may prove a brave man, and an expert huntſman, and the like." After which, the meat is ſerved up in earthen pots glazed with greaſe: and ſome of them having knives ſince the Europeans came amongſt them, they divide their meat pretty decently; but more of them make uſe of their teeth and claws, pulling it to pieces, and eating it as voraciouſly as ſo many dogs, having no other plates or napkins than the ſtinking corners of the napkins they wear; and ſea ſhells without handles uſually ſerve them for ſpoons. When they have dined, a pipe is filled with tobacco, which they ſmoke all round, every one taking two or three whiffs, and then handing it to the next. It is ſingular, that though the Hottentots are immoderately fond of ſpirituous liquors, muſic and dancing, yet they do not drink the firſt, nor practiſe the latter at weddings.

The Hottentots allow of polygamy; but ſeldom have more than three wives at a time; and it ſeems it is death to marry or lie with a firſt or ſecond couſin, or any near relation. A father ſeldom gives his ſon more than two or three cows, and as many ſheep, upon his marriage, and with theſe he muſt make his way in the world; and we do not find they give more with their daughters than a cow, or a couple of ſheep; but the latter are to be returned to the father, if the bride dies without having had any children: on the contrary, if ſhe ever bore any children to her huſband, the portion becomes his, even though the children are defunct. They do not leave their daughters, or younger ſons, any thing when they die; but all the children depend upon the eldeſt brother, and are his ſervants, or rather ſlaves, when the father is dead, unleſs the eldeſt brother infranchiſe them; nor has the mother any thing to ſubſiſt on, but what the eldeſt ſon allows her. Their being no great

great fortunes among them, they match purely for love; an agreeable companion is all their greateſt men aim at: their chiefs intermarry frequently with the pooreſt man's daughter; and a brave fellow, who has no fortune, does not deſpair of matching with the daughter of a prince. A widow, who marries a ſecond time, is obliged to cut off a joint of one of her fingers; and ſo for every huſband ſhe marries after the firſt. Either man or woman may be divorced, on ſhewing ſufficient cauſe before the captain and the reſt of the kraal; the woman, however, muſt not marry again, though the man is allowed to marry, and have as many wives as he pleaſes at the ſame time. A young Hottentot never is maſter of a hut or tent till he maries, unleſs his father dies and leaves him one: therefore the firſt buſineſs the bride and bridegroom apply themſelves to, after their marriage feaſt, is to erect a tent or hut of all new materials, in which work the woman has as great a ſhare as the man; and this taking them up about a week's time, the new married couple are entertained in the mean time in the tents of ſome of their relations. When they reſort to their new apartment, and come to keep houſe together, the wife ſeems to have much the greateſt ſhare of the trouble of it: ſhe fodders the cattle, milks them, cuts out the firing, ſearches every morning for roots for their food, brings them home, and boils or broils them, while the drone of a huſband lies indolently at home, and will ſcarce give himſelf the trouble of getting up to eat when the food is provided for him by the drudge his wife. The more wives he has, ſtill the more indolent life he leads, the care of making proviſion for the family being thrown upon them. It is ſaid he will, in his turn, attend his cattle in the field; but expects every one of his wives ſhould do, at leaſt, as much towards taking care of them as he does. He will alſo, ſometimes, but very rarely, go a hunting with the men of his kraal, and bring home a piece of veniſon, or a diſh of fiſh; but this is not often; and if he is of any handicraft trade, he may work at it two or three hours in a week, and inſtruct his chil-

dren in the art. He alſo takes upon him to ſell his cattle, and purchaſe tobacco, and ſtrong liquors of the Dutch, with neceſſary tools, beads and other ornaments, for which the Hottentots barter away their cattle: their wives are not permitted to intermeddle in the buſineſs of buying and ſelling, this being the ſole prerogative of the man. When a woman brings a living ſon into the world, there is great rejoicing; but the firſt thing they do with the child, is to daub it all over with cow-dung; then they lay it before the fire, or in the ſun, till the dung is dried: after which they rub it off, and waſh the child with the juice of certain herbs, laying it in the ſun, or before the fire again, till the liquor is dried in, after which they anoint the child from head to foot with butter, or ſheeps fat melted, which is dried in as the juice was: and this cuſtom of anointing their bodies with fat, they retain afterwards as long as they live. After the child has been thus ſmeared and greaſed, the mother gives it what name ſhe thinks proper, which is uſually the name of ſome wild beaſt, or domeſtic animal. When the women is well again, and able to leave her hut, ſhe rubs herſelf all over with cow-dung; and this filthy daubing is by theſe delicate people termed a purification. Being thus delightfully perfumed, and elegantly decorated with ſheep's guts, ſhe is permitted to go abroad, or to ſee company at home.

If the woman has twins, and they are girls, the man propoſes it to the kraal, that he may expoſe one of them, either upon pretence of poverty, or that his wife has not milk for them both; and this they uſually indulge one another in; they do the ſame when they have a boy or a girl; but always preſerve the boys, though they happen to have two at a birth. The expoſed child is carried to a diſtance from the kraal; and if they can find a cave or hole in the earth, that ſome wild beaſt has made, they put the child alive into it; and then having ſtopped up the mouth of the den with ſtones or earth, leave it there to ſtarve: if they cannot meet ſuch a cavity, they tie the infant to the lower bough

bough of a tree, or leave it in ſome thicket of buſhes, where it is frequently deſtroyed by wild beaſts. They do not deal thus, however, as has been obſerved, by their male children: on the birth of a boy, they kill a bullock; and if they have twins, two bullocks; and make an entertainment for all the neighbourhood, who congratulate the parents on their good fortune; and, as with us, the greateſt rejoicings are on the birth of the firſt ſon.

The males, at about ten years of age, are always deprived of their left teſticle: the operation is performed with a dexterity that would ſurprize an European ſurgeon, and bad conſequences are ſeldom or never known to enſue. A ſheep is killed, and great rejoicings are made upon the occaſion; but it is to be obſerved, that the men devour all the meat, and allow the women nothing but the broth. The reaſon of this abſurd cuſtom of mutilating their male youth is unknown: ſome of the Hottentots ſay, it is to make them run ſwift; but the greateſt part of theſe people give their general reaſon, which they uſe upon all occaſions, when they are unable to account for any of their abſurd practices; namely, That it is the Hottentot cuſtom; and has been practiſed by their anceſtors time immemorial. At the age of eighteen, the male Hottentots, being deemed men, are admitted into male ſociety: the men of the village (if it may be ſo called) ſquat down, and form a circle, as is uſual upon moſt public occaſions, the youth ſquats down without the circle, at ſome diſtance. The oldeſt man of the kraal then riſes from the circle, and, having obtained the general conſent for the admiſſion of a new member, he goes to the youth, acquaints him with the determination of the men of the kraal, and concludes his harangue with ſome verſes, which admoniſh him to behave like a man for the future. The youth being then daubed with ſoot and fat, and well ſprinkled with urine, is congratulated by the company in general in a kind of chorus, which contains the following wiſhes: that good fortune may attend him, that he may live long, and thrive daily; that he

may ſoon have a beard, and many children; till it is univerſally allowed he is a uſeful man to the nation. A feaſt concludes the ceremony; but the youth himſelf is not permitted to participate of any part thereof till all the reſt are ſerved. Having been thus admitted into male ſociety, it is expected that he ſhould behave ill to women in general, and to his mother in particular, in order to evince his contempt of every thing feminine. Indeed it is uſual for a youth as ſoon as admitted, to go to his mother's hut, and cudgel her heartily, for which he is highly applauded by the whole kraal; and even the ſuffering parent herſelf admires him for his ſpirit, and proteſts that the blows do not give her ſo much pain, as the thoughts of having brought ſuch a mettleſome ſon into the world afford her pleaſure. The more ill treatment he gives his mother, the more eſteem he obtains; and every time he ſtrikes her ſhe is in the higheſt raptures, and thanks providence for having bleſſed her with ſuch a ſpirited child. So egregiouſly will cuſtom counteract the very dictates of nature, and impoſe upon the underſtanding of the ignorant.

It may be proper now to ſay ſomething of thoſe officers amongſt them, which the Europeans generally denominate their prieſts. Theſe perſons are called ſurri or maſter, and are elected by every kraal: they are the men who perform the ceremony of making water at their weddings, and other feſtivals; the ſurri alſo is the perſon who extracts the left teſticle from the young males at eight years of age; for all which he has no ſtated revenue, but a preſent now and then of a calf or a lamb, and makes one at all their entertainments. Every kraal alſo has its phyſician, as well as its prieſt, who are perſons that have ſome ſkill in phyſic and ſurgery, and particularly in the virtues of ſalutary herbs; theſe alſo are choſen by a majority of voices, and make it their buſineſs to look after the people's health: but have no other reward neither for their pains, than voluntary preſents. And ſuch is the opinion of the Hottentots of theſe phyſicians, that, if they cannot effect a cure, they conclude they are certainly bewitched; as

the

the doctor himself also never fails to give out: whereupon application is made to some pretended conjurer for relief; and if the patient happens to recover, it gives the cunning man, as we call him, a mighty reputation. The physician and surgeon, as has been hinted, is the same person; and though these gentlemen scarce ever saw a body dissected, it is said, they have pretty good notions of anatomy: they cup, bleed, make amputations, and restore dislocated limbs, with great dexterity: cholicks and pains in the stomach they relieve by cupping. Their cup is an horn of an ox, the edges cut very smooth: the doctor, having sucked the part where the pain lies, claps on the cup; and, after it has remained some time, till he thinks the part is insensible, he pulls off the horn-cup, and makes two or three incisions, half an inch in length, with a common knife, having no other instrument: after which, he applies the cup again, which falls off when it is full of blood, but the patient, it is said, suffers great pain in the operation. If the pain removes to another part, they rub it with hot fat; and, if that does not ease the pain, they use the cup again on the part last affected; and, if the second cupping does not relieve the patient, they give him inward medicines, being infusions or powders of certain dried roots and herbs. They let blood in plethories and indispositions of that kind, having no other instrument than a common knife; and, if bleeding will not effect the cure, they give the patient physic. For head-achs, which they are pretty much subject to in calm weather, they shave their heads in furrows, as they do when they are in mourning; but a brisk gale of wind usually carries off the head-ach, without any other application; and this they do not often want at the cape. They seldom make any other amputations, than of the fingers of such women as marry a second time, or oftner: and, in this case, they bind the joint below that which is to be cut off very tight, with a dried sinew, and then cut off the joint at once with a knife, stopping the blood with the juice of myrrh-leaves; after which, they wrap up the finger in some healing herbs,

and never any part of the finger receives any hurt beyond the amputation. They have little or no ſkill in ſetting fractured limbs; but are pretty dexterous at reſtoring of diſlocations.

The Hottentot phyſician, in caſe he meets with a foul ſtomach, gives the juice of aloe leaves; and, if one doſe will not do, repeats it two or three days; and, for any inward ail, they give chiefly the powders, or infuſions of wild ſage, wild figs and fig leaves, buchu, garlic or fennel: but, whatever the diſeaſe be, it ſeems the patient never fails to ſacrifice a bullock, or a ſheep, upon his recovery.

The Hottentots are exceedingly ſuperſtitious, and fond of divination. In order to know the fate of a ſick perſon, they ſlay a ſheep alive; after having its ſkin intirely taken off, if the poor animal is able to get up and run away, it is deemed a propitious omen; but, on the contrary, if the excruciating pain kills it, they imagine that the patient will certainly die, and accordingly give him up intirely to nature, without taking any further care of him.

Whatever they believe of departed ſouls, they have no notion either of heaven or hell, or of a ſtate of rewards or puniſhments; this is evident from the behaviour of a dying Hottentot, and thoſe about him; neither he or his friends offer up any prayers to their gods for the ſalvation of his ſoul; or even mention the ſtate of departed ſouls, or their apprehenſions of his being happy or miſerable after death: however, they ſet up terrible howlings and ſhriekings, when the ſick man is in his laſt agonies; and yet theſe very people are frequently guilty of murdering their antient parents, as well as their innocent children; for when the father of a family is become perfectly uſeleſs and ſuperannuated, he is obliged to aſſign over his ſtock of cattle, and every thing elſe he has in the world, to his eldeſt ſon; and in default of ſons, to his next heir male: after which, the heir erects a tent or hut in ſome unfrequented place, a good diſtance from the kraal or camp he belongs to; and, having aſſembled the men of the kraal, acquaints them

them with the condition of his ſuperannuated relation, and deſires their conſent to expoſe him in the diſtant hut; to which the kraal ſcarce ever refuſe their conſent. Whereupon a day being appointed to carry the old man to the ſolitary tent, the heir kills an ox, and two or three ſheep, and invites the whole village to feaſt and be merry with him; and at the end of the entertainment, all the neighbourhood come and take a formal leave of the old wretch, thus condemned to be ſtarved or devoured by wild beaſts: then the unfortunate creature is laid upon one of their carriage oxen, and carried to his laſt home, attended to the place, where he is to be buried alive, by moſt of his neighbours. The old man being taken down, and ſet in the middle of the hut provided for him, the company return to their kraal, and he never ſees the face of a human creature afterwards; they never ſo much as enquire whether he was ſtarved to death, or devoured by wild beaſts: he is no more thought of, than if he had never been. In the ſame manner they deal with a ſuperannuated mother; only as ſhe has nothing ſhe can call her own, ſhe has not the trouble of aſſigning her effects to her ſon. Whenever the Hottentots are upbraided with this unparallelled piece of barbarity, they reply, it would be a much greater cruelty to ſuffer an old creature to languiſh out a miſerable life, and to be many years a dying, than to make this quick diſpatch with them; and that it is out of their extreme tenderneſs they put an end to the lives of theſe old wretches; all the arguments in the world againſt the inhumanity of the cuſtom, can make no impreſſion on them: and, indeed, as long as the Dutch have reſided at the cape, they have not been able to break them of one ſingle cuſtom, or prevail with them to alter any part of their conduct, how barbarous or abſurd ſoever: and, it ſeems, the captain of a kraal is not exempted from ſeeing his funeral ſolemnized in this manner, while he is alive, if he happens to become uſeleſs. And this leads us to treat of ſuch funerals as are ſolemnized after the perſon is really dead.

The ſick man, having reſigned his breath, is immediately

mediately bundled up, neck and heels together, in his ſheep-ſkin mantle, exceeding cloſe, ſo that no part of the corpſe appears: then the captain of the kraal with ſome of the ſeniors, ſearch the neighbouring country for ſome cavity in a rock, or the den of a wild beaſt, to bury it in, never digging a grave, if they can find one of theſe within a moderate diſtance. After which, the whole kraal, men and women, prepare to attend the corpſe, ſeldom permitting it to remain above ground more than ſix hours. When all things are ready, all the neighbourhood aſſemble before the door of the deceaſed, the men ſitting down on their heels in one circle, and reſting their elbows on their knees (their uſual poſture) as the women do in another: here they clap their hands, and howl, crying, Bo, bo, bo; (i. e. father) lamenting their loſs. The corpſe being then brought out on that ſide the tent, where the perſon died, and not at the door, the bearers carry him in their arms to the grave, the men and women follow it in different parties, but without any manner of order, crying all the way, Bo, bo, bo! and wringing their hands, and performing a thouſand ridiculous geſtures and grimaces, which is frequently the ſubject of the Dutchmen's mirth; it being impoſſible, it is ſaid, to forbear laughing at the antic tricks they ſhew on ſuch an occaſion. Having put the corpſe into the cavity prepared for it, they ſtop up the mouth of it with ant hills, ſtones, and pieces of wood, believing the ants will feed on the corpſe, and ſoon conſume it. The grave being ſtopped up, the men and women rendezvous again before the tent of the deceaſed, where they repeat their howling, and frequently call upon the name of their departed friend: after which two of the oldeſt men get up; and one of them going into the circle of the men, and the other into the circle of the women, urine upon every one of the company; and, where the kraals are ſo very large, that two cannot find water enough for this ceremony, they double or treble the number. Then the old men go into the tent of the deceaſed; and, having taken up ſome aſhes from the

the fire-place, they ſprinkle them upon the bodies of the people, bleſſing them as they go: and, if the deceaſed was a perſon of diſtinction, this is acted over again ſeveral days. But we ſhould have remembered, that the ceremony always concludes with an entertainment. If the deceaſed had any cattle, a ſheep is killed on the occaſion; and the caul being powdered with buchu, is tied about the heir's neck, who is forced to wear it while it rots off, which is no great penance, all ſtinks being perfumes to a Hottentot. All the relations alſo wear the cauls of ſheep about their necks; which it ſeems is their mourning, unleſs the children of the deceaſed are ſo poor, that they cannot kill a ſheep; and then they ſhave their heads in furrows of about an inch broad, leaving the hair on of the ſame breadth between every furrow.

It is not an eaſy matter to come at a Hottentot's religious notions; he is ſparing of his words, and laconic in his anſwers upon all occaſions; but when religious topics are introduced, he generally conceals his ſentiments in ſilence. Some on this account have doubted whether the Hottentots have any religion at all: but the moſt intelligent among the Dutch at the cape poſitively affirm, that they believe in a Supreme Being, whom they ſtile Gounya Taquoa, or God of gods, and fancy that his place of reſidence is beyond the moon. They allow that Gounya Taquoa is a humane benevolent being, yet they have no mode of worſhipping him; for which they give this reaſon, "That he curſed their firſt parents for having greatly offended him, on which account their poſterity have never from that time paid him adoration." They believe that the moon is an inferior viſible god, and the repreſentative of the high and inviſible: that ſhe has the direction of the weather; and therefore they pray to her when it is unſeaſonable. They never fail to aſſemble and worſhip this planet at the new and full moon, let the weather be never ſo bad; and though they diſtort their bodies, grin and put on very frightful looks, crying and howling in a terrible manner, yet they

have ſome expreſſions that ſhew their veneration and dependance on this inferior deity; as, 'Mutſchi Atze, I ſalute you; you are welcome: Cheraqua kaka chori Ounqua, grant us paſture for our cattle and plenty of milk.' Theſe and other prayers to the moon they repeat, frequently dancing and clapping their hands all the while; and, at the end of every dance, crying, Ho, ho, ho, ho! raiſing and falling their voices, and uſing abundance of odd geſtures, that appear ridiculous to European ſpectators; and which no doubt, made them at firſt, before they knew any thing of their language, conclude, that this could not be the effect of devotion, eſpecially when the people themſelves told them, it was not an act of religion, but only intended for their diverſion. They continue thus ſhouting, ſinging and dancing, with proſtrations on the earth, the whole night, and even part of the next day, with ſome ſhort intervals, never reſting, unleſs they are quite ſpent with the violence of the action; and then they ſquat down upon their heels, holding their heads between their hands, and reſting their elbows on their knees; and, after a little time, they ſtart up again, and falling to ſinging and dancing in a circle as before, with all their might.

The Hottentots alſo adore a fly about the bigneſs of a hornet, called by ſome the gold beetle: whenever they ſee this inſect approach their kraal, they all aſſemble about it, and ſing and dance round it while it remains there, ſtrewing over it the powder of buchu, by botaniſts called ſpiræam; which when it is dried and pulverized, they always powder themſelves with it at feſtivals. They ſtrew the ſame powder alſo over the tops of their tents, and over the whole area of the kraal, as a teſtimony of their veneration for the adored fly. They ſacrifice alſo two ſheep as a thankſgiving for the favour ſhewn their kraal, believing they ſhall certainly proſper after ſuch a viſit: and, if this inſect happens to light upon a tent, they look upon the owner of it for the future as a ſaint, and pay him more than uſual reſpect.

reſpect. The beſt ox of the kraal alſo is immediately ſacrificed, to teſtify their gratitude to the little winged deity, and to honour the ſaint he has been pleaſed thus to diſtinguiſh: to whom the entrails of the beaſt, the choiceſt morſel in their opinion, with the fat and the caul is preſented; and the caul being twiſted like a rope, the ſaint ever after wears it like a collar about his neck day and night, till it putrifies and rots off; and the ſaint only feaſts upon the entrails of the beaſt, while the reſt of the kraal feed upon the joints, that are not in ſo high eſteem among them: with the fat of the ſacrifice alſo the ſaint anoints his body from time to time, till it is all ſpent; and, if the fly lights upon a woman ſhe is no leſs reverenced by the neighbourhood, and entitled to the like privileges. It is ſcarce poſſible to expreſs the agonies the Hottentots are in, if any European attempts to take or kill one of theſe inſects, as the Dutch will ſometimes ſeem to attempt, to put them in a fright; they will beg and pray, and fall proſtrate on the ground, to procure the liberty of this little creature, if it falls into a Dutchman's hands; they are on ſuch an occaſion, in no leſs conſternation than the Indians near Fort St. George, when the kite, with a white head, which they worſhip, is in danger. If a ſoldier takes one of theſe alive, and threatens to wring the neck of it off, the Indians will gather in crowds about him, and immediately collect the value of a ſhilling or two, to purchaſe the liberty of the captive bird they adore. But to return to the Hottentots: they imagine if this little deity ſhould be killed, all the cattle would die of diſeaſes, or be deſtroyed by wild beaſts; and they themſelves ſhould be the moſt miſerable of men, and look upon that kraal to be doomed to ſome imminent misfortue, where this animal ſeldom appears.

The Hollanders have ſent ſeveral reverend divines to the cape as miſſionaries, who have ſpared no pains to bring the Hottentots off from their idolatry, and induce them to embrace Chriſtianity; even their covetouſneſs and ambition have been applied to, and temporal re-

wards offered them, on condition of their being inſtructed in the principles of Chriſtianity. But no motives whatever, whether thoſe relating to this or another ſtate, have yet been able to make the leaſt impreſſion on any one of them: they hold faſt and hug their ancient ſuperſtitions, and will hear of no other religion. The reaſon that they neither imitate the Europeans in their building, planting or cloathing, is becauſe they imagine themſelves to be religiouſly obliged to follow the cuſtoms of their anceſtors; and that, if they ſhould deviate from them in the leaſt of theſe matters, it might make way for a total change of their religion and manners, which they cannot think of without abhorrence. One of the Dutch governors at the cape bred up an Hottentot from his infancy, obliging him to follow the faſhions and cuſtoms of the Europeans, to be taught ſeveral languages, and to be fully inſtructed in the principles of the Chriſtian religion, cloathing him handſomely, and treating him, in all reſpects, as a perſon for whom he had a high eſteem; and let him know, that he deſigned him for ſome beneficial and honourable employment. The governor afterwards ſent him a voyage to Batavia, where he was employed, under the commiſſary his friend, for ſome time, till that gentleman died; and then he returned to the Cape of Good Hope: but, having paid a viſit to the Hottentots of his relations and acquaintance, he threw off all his fine cloaths, bundled them up, and laid them at the governor's feet, and deſired he would give him leave to renounce his Chriſtianity, and live and die in the religion and cuſtoms of his anceſtors; only begged the governor would give him leave to keep the hanger and collar he wore for his ſake; which while the governor was deliberating with himſelf upon, ſcarce believing the fellow to be in earneſt, the young Hottentot took the opportunity of running away, and never came near the cape afterwards, thinking himſelf extremely happy that he had exchanged his European cloaths for a ſheep ſkin, and the reſt of the Hottentots dreſs and ornaments:

the

the Engliſh Eaſt India company, we are informed, made the like experiment, bringing over two of that nation hither, whom they cloathed decently after the European manner, and uſed them, in all reſpects, with the greateſt goodneſs and gentleneſs, hoping, by that means, to be better informed of the condition of their country, and whether it might be worth the while to make a ſettlement there: but the two Hottentots only learnt Engliſh enough to bewail their misfortune in being brought from their country and their friends; and, after two years trial of them, being again ſet on ſhore at the cape, they immediately ſtripped off their European cloaths, and, having taken up the ſheep ſkin mantle again, rejoiced beyond meaſure for their happy eſcape from the Engliſh.

The poor Hottentots ſometimes employ themſelves in making arms, viz. bows and arrows, lances and darts, bartering them with the rich for cattle, to begin the world with: others get elephants teeth, and what they do not uſe in making rings and ornaments for themſeves, are generally diſpoſed of, it is thought, to the Portugueſe and other Europeans, who touch at Terra de Natal, and other parts of the eaſtern or weſtern coaſt. The Hottentots ſell very few teeth to the Dutch; though it is manifeſt they kill abundance of elephants: they ſupply the Hollanders however with cattle, and take wine, brandy or tobacco, in return; and an ox may be purchaſed of them for a pound of tobacco, and a large ſheep for half a pound. As to coin, the reader will conclude they have none; nor do they ever ſee any, unleſs ſome ſmall pieces of money the Dutch ſometimes give them for their wages at the cape; and it muſt not be forgot, that the Hottentots find abundance of oſtrich's eggs in the ſand, which they barter with the ſea-faring men, that touch at the cape, for brandy and tobacco; every ſailor almoſt being proud of bringing home one of theſe egg ſhells to his friends, after he has fried and eaten the yolk, which

makes

makes a large pancake, and is pretty good food, but rather of the ſtrongeſt.

Their butchers are ſaid to be great artiſts in their way, and to handle a knife as dexterouſly as an anatomiſt: having tied the hind and fore legs of a ſheep, they throw the creature on his back, and with cords, two of them extend it to its full ſtretch, while a third rips it up; ſo that all the entrails appear: then, with one hand, he tears the guts from the carcaſe, and, with the other, ſtirs the bood, avoiding as much as he can the breaking any of the blood-veſſels about the heart; ſo that the ſheep is a long time a dying: in the mean time he gives the guts to another, who juſt rids them of the filth, and rinces them in water, and part of them are broiled and eaten amongſt them, before the ſheep is well dead: having ſcooped the blood out of the body of the animal with their hands or ſea ſhells, they cut the reſt of the guts in ſmall pieces, and ſtew them in the blood, which is the Hottentots favourite diſh. An ox alſo is killed in the ſame barbarous manner; being thrown upon his back, and his legs extended with cords, he is ripped up, and his guts taken out firſt; in which cruel operation the beaſt is half an hour a dying: they ſeparate the parts with great exactneſs, dividing the fleſh, the bones, the membranes, muſcles, veins, and arteries, and laying them in ſeveral parcels every thing entire. The bones alſo are taken out of the fleſh, and laid together in ſuch order, that they might be eaſily formed into an exact ſkeleton: theſe they boil by themſelves, and get the marrow out of them, with which they anoint their bodies. Of the ſheep ſkin, as has been obſerved already, they make a mantle, if it be large; but, if it is ſmall, they cut it into thongs, to adorn their women's legs: and the hide of an ox ſerves either to cover their tents, or to make girts and ſtraps of, with which they bind their baggage on their carriage oxen when they decamp; and, if they have no other uſe for their ox-hides, they lay them by, and eat them when they want other food.

They

They have another artificer, who is both felmonger and taylor: that is, he dreſſes ſkins after their way, and then makes them into mantles: he takes a ſheep ſkin juſt flayed off, and, rubbing it well with fat, the ſkin becomes tough and ſmooth; and, if it be for one of his countrymen, he rubs it over alſo with freſh cow-dung, and lays it in the ſun till it is dry: then he rubs it with fat and cow dung again; which he repeats ſeveral times, till it becomes perfectly black, and ſtinks ſo, that no European can bear it; and then, with a little ſhaping and ſewing, it is a compleat mantle for a Hottentot: but, if it be dreſſed for a Duchman, he only rubs the ſkin well with fat, which ſecures the wool from coming off. If he be to dreſs an ox's hide, he rubs the hairy ſide with wood aſhes; then ſprinkling it with water, rolls it up, and lays it a day or two in the ſun; which expedients effectually brings off the hair; this ſkin is then well greaſed, ſtretched out, and dried again, when it is deemed good leather.

Their ſmiths do not only faſhion their iron, but melt it from the ore: they find plenty of iron ſtones in ſeveral parts of their country; and having got a heap of theſe, they put them into a hole in the ground, heated and prepared for their purpoſe: then they make a fire over the ſtones, which they ſupply with fuel, and keep up till the iron melts; and then it runs into another hole, which they make for a receiver, a little lower than the firſt: as ſoon as the iron in the receiver is cold they break it to pieces with ſtones; and, heating the pieces again in other fires, beat them with ſtones, till they ſhape them into the heads of lances, darts, arrows, and bows, and ſuch weapons as they uſe; for they ſcarce ever form any other utenſils, but arms of this metal: they get the hardeſt flat ſtone, according to monſieur Vogel, and, laying the iron upon it, as upon an anvil, beat it with another round ſtone, which ſerves them for a hammer; then they grind it upon the flat ſtone, and poliſh it as nicely as any European artificer could do with all his tools: they have ſome copper ore too, which

which they melt in like manner; but they make only toys and ornaments for their dreſs of this metal: nor, indeed, do they ever work in iron, but when they want weapons. They would never labour, if their neceſſities did not ſometimes compel them to it: but, when they do, no people work harder, or more indefatigably; for they never leave a piece of work, till they have finiſhed it.

The ivory-turner makes the ivory rings that are worn ornamentally about the arms; and conſidering that his only tool is a common claſp knife, which he procures from the Dutch, the wormanſhip has great merit.

The potter or maker of earthen veſſels is another art; but this, it ſeems, they are all dexterous at, every family making the pots and pans they want. For theſe they uſe only the earth of ant-hills, clearing them of all ſand and gravel; after which, they work it together with the bruiſed ant eggs, that are ſaid to conſtitute an extraordinary cement. When they have moulded theſe materials into a kind of paſte, they take as much of them as will make one of their pots, and faſhion it by hand upon a flat ſtone, making it of the form of a Roman urn; then they ſmooth it within and without very carefully, not leaving the leaſt roughneſs upon the ſurface; and, having dried it in the ſun two or three days, they put the pot into a hole in the ground, and burn it, by making a fire over it; and, when they take it out, it appears perfectly black: every family alſo make their own mats, with which they cover their tents or huts; but this is chiefly the buſineſs of the women: they gather the flags and ruſhes by the river ſide, or weave or plat them into mats ſo cloſely, it is ſaid, that neither the weather or light can penetrate them.

The laſt artificer we ſhall mention is the rope-maker, who has no better materials, than ſuch flags and ruſhes as the mats are made of; and yet they appear almoſt as ſtrong as thoſe made of hemp: the Dutch, at the cape, buy

buy and uſe them in ploughing, and in draught-carriages.

As to the way of travelling here, the natives all travel on foot, except the aged and infirm; and theſe are carried on their baggage oxen. As there are no inns or places for refreſhment, the travelling Hottentot calls at the kraals in his way, where he meets with a hearty welcome from his countrymen, who endeavour to ſhew their hoſpitality to ſtrangers, whether of their own country or of Europe. Such indeed is the general urbanity of theſe people, and their ſtrict integrity when any confidence is placed in them, that when the Hollanders travel either on foot or horſeback, if they cannot reach an European ſettlement, they alſo call at the kraals of the Hottentots, where they are complimented with a hut, and ſuch proviſion as they have, or they may lie in the area of the kraal, in the open air, if they pleaſe, and the weather be good; and here they are ſecure, both from robbers and wild beaſts; for the buſhis banditti on the mountains are dangerous, as they give no quarter; but the Hottentot nations in general hold them in abhorrence, and unanimouſly concur in ſeizing and puniſhing them upon all occaſions.

Their language is very inarticulate and defective; one word ſignifies ſeveral things, the definitive meaning being determined by the manner of pronouncing; and the pronunciation is ſo harſh and confuſed, that they ſeem to ſtammer in all they ſpeak. Hence, though they are eaſily taught to underſtand other languages, they can ſeldom be brought to ſpeak them with any degree of intelligibility.

We ſhall here ſubjoin a ſmall Hottentot vocabulary, for the ſatisfaction of the curious; khauna, ſignifies a lamb; kgou, a gooſe; bunqvaa, trees: knomm, to hear; quaqua, a pheaſant; tkaka, a whale; horri, beaſts in general; knabou, a fowling piece; qua-araho, a wild ox; ounequa, the arms; quienkha, to fall; likhanee, a dog; konkequa, a captain; quas, the neck; quan, the heart; kgoyes, a buck or doe; tikquoa, a

god; komma, a houſe; khoaa, a cat, kowkuri, iron; konkerey, a hen; thoukou, a dark night; tkoume, rice; ghoudie, a ſheep; toya, the wind; ttkaa, a valley; tkaonoklau, gunpowder; kamkamma, the earth; quaouw, thunder; duckatere, a duck; kamma, water; quayha, an aſs; naew, the ears; kirri, a ſtick; nombha, the beard; ka-a, to drink; durieſa, an ox; hek-kaa, an ox of burden; ounvie, butter; houteo, a ſea-dog; bikgua, the head; kamma, a ſtag; kouquil, a pigeon; anthuri, to-morrow; kou, a tooth; khamouna, the devil; hakqua, a horſe; koo, a ſon; kammo, a ſtream; tika, graſs; toqua, a wolf; koanqua, the mouth; khou, a peacock; gona, a boy; gois, a girl; khoakamma, a baboon; kerhanehou, a ſtar; mu, an eye; tquaſſouw, a tyger.

The Hottentots have only ten numerical terms, which they repeat twice to expreſs the multiplication of the firſt term, and three times to expreſs the re-multiplication of the latter. Their terms are: q'kui, one; k'kam, two; kouna, three; kakka, four; koo, five; nanni, ſix; hounko, ſeven; khiſſi, eight; khaſſi, nine; ghiſſi, ten.

Thus have we given a circumſtantial and full account of the cape, its inhabitants, productions, and adjacent country; from whence the French, at Mauritius, are ſupplied by the Dutch with ſalted beef, biſcuit, flour, and wine: the proviſions for which the French contracted this year were five hundred thouſand lb. weight of ſalt beef, four hundred thouſand lb. of flour; four hundred thouſand lb. of biſcuit, and one thouſand two hundred leagers of wine. We have only to add to this account a few obſervations on the bay, and garriſon. The former is large, ſafe, and exceeding convenient. It is indeed open to the N. W. winds, but they ſeldom blow hard; yet as they ſometimes occaſion a great ſea, the ſhips moor N. E. and S. W. The S. E. winds blow frequently with great fury, but their direction being right out of the bay prevents them from being dangerous. For the convenience of landing and

ſhipping

ſhipping goods, a wharf of wood is run out near the town, to a proper diſtance. Water is conveyed in pipes to this wharf, and many large boats and hoys are kept by the Company to carry ſtores and proviſions to and from the ſhipping in the harbour. This bay is covered by a ſmall fort on the E. ſide of the town, and cloſe to the beach; and is alſo defended by ſeveral outworks and batteries extending along the ſhore, as well on this ſide of the town as the other; nevertheleſs they are by their ſituation expoſed to the ſhipping, and in a manner defenceleſs againſt an enemy of any force by land. As to the garriſon, this conſiſts of eight hundred regular troops, beſides militia of the country, in which laſt is comprehended every man able to bear arms. By ſignals they can alarm the country in a very ſhort time, and when theſe are made, the militia is to repair immediately to their place of rendezvous in the town.

On Sunday, the 14th of April in the morning, we weighed, ſtood out of the bay, and anchored at five in the evening under Penguin, or Robin Iſland. Here we lay all night, and being prevented from ſailing by the wind, the captain diſpatched a boat to the iſland for a few trifling articles, which we had omitted to take in at the cape; when our people drew near the ſhore, they were warned by the Dutch not to land at their peril. At the ſame time ſix men, armed with muſquets, paraded upon the beach. The commanding officer in the boat did not think it prudent to riſk the lives of his men, on account of a few cabbages, and therefore returned without them to the ſhip. To this iſland the Dutch at the Cape baniſh ſuch criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, according to the nature of their crimes. They are employed as ſlaves in digging lime-ſtone, which though ſcarce upon the continent is here in great abundance. A Daniſh ſhip touched at this iſland, having been refuſed aſſiſtance at the cape, and ſending her boat on ſhore, overpowered the guard, and then took

as many of the criminals as were neceſſary to navigate her home; for ſhe had loſt great part of her crew by ſickneſs. To this incident we attributed our repulſe; concluding, that the Dutch, to prevent a ſimilar reſcue of their priſoners, had ordered their garriſon at this place, not to ſuffer any boat of foreign nations to land the crew, and come aſhore.

On Thurſday the 25th, we put to ſea, and about four o'clock in the afternoon died our maſter, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a youth of good parts, but unhappily for his own ſelf preſervation too much addicted to intemperance, a habit we would caution all thoſe who undertake long voyages to avoid, if they have any regard to their perſonal ſafety. We now continued our voyage without any other remarkable incident; and on Monday the 29th, we croſſed our firſt meridian, having circumnavigated the globe from E. to W. and conſequently loſt a day, for which upon correcting our reckoning at Batavia, we made an allowance. On Monday the 1ſt of May, we came to anchor at break of day, before James's fort in the iſland of St. Helena; and as we propoſed to refreſh here, Mr. Banks employed his time in viſiting the moſt remarkable places, and in ſurveying every object worthy of notice.

St. Helena is ſituated in the Atlantic ocean, in ſix degrees W. longitude, and ſixteen S. latitude, almoſt in the midway between Africa and America, being twelve hundred miles diſtant from the former, and eighteen hundred from the latter. It was ſo named by the Portugueſe, who diſcovered it on St. Helen's-day. This iſland is 36 miles long, 18 broad, and about 61 in circumference. It is the ſummit of an immenſe mountain riſing out of the ſea, and of a depth unfathomable at a ſmall diſtance round it. It may be diſcerned at ſea, at above twenty leagues diſtance, and looks like a caſtle in the middle of the ocean, whoſe natural walls are of that height, that there is no ſcaling them. The ſmall valley called Chapel-valley, in a bay on the eaſt ſide of it, is defended by a battery of forty or fifty great guns,

guns, planted even with the water; and the waves daſhing perpetually on the ſhore, make it difficult landing even here. There is alſo one little creek beſides, where two or three men may land at a time; but this is now defended by a battery of five or ſix guns, and rendered inacceſſible. No anchorage is to be found any where about the iſland, but at Chapel-valley bay, and as the wind always ſets from the S. E. if a ſhip overſhoots the iſland ever ſo little, ſhe cannot recover it again. The ſeat of volcanoes has been found to be the higheſt part of the countries in which they are found. Heela is the higheſt hill in Iceland; and the Peak of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of ſubterraneous fire. Theſe are ſtill burning: but there are other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct: among theſe is St. Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, and its external ſurface, are evidently the effects of the ſinking of the earth; and that this was cauſed by ſuterraneous fire, is equally manifeſt from the ſtones, for ſome of them, eſpecially thoſe in the bottom of the valleys, are burnt almoſt to cinders. This iſland, as the Endeavour approached it on the windward ſide, appeared like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of an amazing height, and conſiſting of a kind of ſtone, which ſhews not the leaſt ſign of vegetation: nor is it more promiſing upon a nearer view. Sailing along ſhore, we came near the huge cliffs, that ſeemed to overhang the ſhip. At length we opened Chapel-valley, which reſembles a trench, and in this valley we diſcovered the town. The ſides of it are as naked as the cliffs next the ſea; but the bottom is ſlightly cloathed with herbage. In its preſent cultivated ſtate, ſuch appeared the iſland to us; and the firſt hills muſt be paſſed, before the country diſplays its verdure, or any other marks of fertility.

In Chapel-valley, a little beyond the landing place, is a fort where the governor reſides with the garriſon; and the town ſtands juſt by the ſea-ſide. The greater part of the houſes are ill built. The church, which

was

was originally a mean ſtructure, is in ruins; and the market-place nearly in the ſame condition. The town conſiſts of about forty or fifty buildings, conſtructed after the Engliſh faſhion, whither the people of the iſland reſort when any ſhipping appears, as well to aſſiſt in the defence of the iſland, as to entertain the ſeamen if they are friends: for the governor has always ſentinels, on the higheſt part of the iſland, to the windward, who give notice of the approach of all ſhipping, and guns are thereupon fired, that every man may reſort to his poſt. It is impoſſible for an enemy to approach by ſea in the night time, and if diſcovered the day before, preparations are ſpeedily made for his reception.

Notwithſtanding the iſland appears a barren rock on every ſide, yet on the top it is covered with a fine layer of earth, producing grain, fruits, and herbs of various kinds; and the country after we aſcended the rock, is diverſified with riſing hills and plains, plantations of fruit trees and kitchen gardens, among which the houſes of the natives are interſperſed, and in the open fields are herds of cattle grazing, ſome of which are fatted to ſupply the ſhipping, and the reſt furniſh the dairies with milk, butter, and cheeſe. Hogs, goats, turkeys, and all manner of poultry alſo abound, and the ſeas are well ſtored with fiſh. But amidſt all this affluence, the people have neither bread nor wine of their own growth; for though the ſoil is proper for wheat, yet the rats that harbour in the rocks, and cannot be deſtroyed, eat up all the ſeed, before the grain is well out of the ground; and though their vines flouriſh and produce them grapes enough, yet the latitude is too hot for making wine. This they have therefore from the Canaries, the Madeiras, or the Cape, as well as their flour and malt. Their very houſes are ſome of them brought from Europe ready framed, there being no timber on the iſland, trees not taking deep root here on account of the rock that lies ſo near the ſurface: however, they have underwood enough for neceſſary uſes.

uſes. Beſides grapes, they have plantains, bananas, figs, lemons, and ſuch other fruits as hot countries uſually produce. They alſo raiſe kidney beans, and ſome other kinds of pulſe in their gardens; and the want of bread they ſupply with potatoes and yams.

In the year 1701, there were upon the iſland about two hundred families, moſt of them Engliſh, or deſcended from Engliſh parents. Every family has a houſe and plantation on the higher part of the iſland, where they look after their cattle, fruits, and kitchen garden. They ſcarce ever come down to the town, unleſs it be to church, or when the ſhipping arrives, when moſt of the houſes in the valley are converted into punch-houſes, or lodgings for their gueſts, to whom they ſell their poultry, and other commodities; but they are not ſuffered to purchaſe any merchandize of the ſhips that touch here. Whatever they want of foreign growth or manufacture, they are obliged to buy at the company's warehouſe, where twice every month, they may furniſh themſelves with brandy, European or Cape wines, Batavia arrack, malt, beer, ſugar, tea, coffee, china, and japan-ware, linen, calicoes, chintz, muſlins, ribbands, woollen-cloth and ſtuffs, and all manner of cloathing, for which they are allowed ſix months credit. Among the very few native productions of this iſland muſt be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinct. Pieces of this wood are frequently found in the valleys of a fine black colour, and a hardneſs almoſt equal to iron; theſe pieces, however, are ſo ſhort and crooked, that no uſe can be made of them. There are few inſects here, but upon the tops of the higheſt ridges a ſpecies of ſnail is found, which has probably been there ſince the original creation of their kind. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing not formed here, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place ſo ſevered from the reſt of the world, by ſeas of immenſe extent.

The Portugueſe, who diſcovered this iſland in 1502, ſtored

ſtored it with hogs, goats, and poultry, and uſed to touch at it for water and freſh proviſions in their return from India; but we do not find they ever planted a colony here; or, if they did, having deſerted it afterwards, the Engliſh Eaſt-India Company took poſſeſſion of the iſland A. D. 1600, and held it till 1673, without interruption, when the Dutch took it by ſurprize. However, the Engliſh, commanded by Capt. Munden, recovered it again within the ſpace of a year, and took three Dutch Eaſt India ſhips that lay in the road at the ſame time. The Hollanders had fortified the landing place, and planted batteries of great guns to prevent a deſcent; but the Engliſh being acquainted with a ſmall creek where only two men could go abreaſt, climbed up to the top of the rocks in the night time, and appearing next morning at the backs of the Dutch, they threw down their arms, and ſurrendered the iſland without ſtriking a ſtroke: but, as we have before obſerved, this creek has been ſince fortified: ſo that there is now no place where an enemy can make a deſcent with any probability of ſucceſs.

The affairs of the Eaſt-India Company are managed here by a governor, deputy-governor, and ſtorehouſe-keeper, who have certain ſettled ſalaries allowed, beſides a public table, well furniſhed, to which all commanders, maſters of ſhips, and eminent paſſengers are welcome. The natives ſometimes call the reſult of their deliberations ſevere impoſitions; and though relief might perhaps be had from the company in England, yet the unavoidable delays in returning anſwers to addreſſes at that diſtance puts the aggrieved under great hardſhips; and on the other hand, was not the ſituation of this iſland very ſerviceable to our homeward-bound Eaſt-India ſhips, the conſtant trouble and expence would induce the company to abandon the iſland; for though it is furniſhed with the conveniencies of life, the merchants find no other profitable commodities there. The maſters of the plantations keep a great many blacks, who, upon ſevere treatment, hide

themſelves

themſelves for two or three months together, keeping among the rocks by day, and roving at night for proviſions: but they are generally diſcovered and taken.

The children and deſcendants of white people have not the leaſt red in their cheeks, in all other places near the tropics; but the natives of St. Helena are remarkable for their ruddy complexions and robuſt conſtitutions. Their healthfulneſs may, in general, be aſcribed to the following cauſes. They live on the top of a mountain always open to the ſea breezes that conſtantly blow here: they are uſually employed in the moſt healthful exerciſes of gardening and huſbandry; the iſland is frequently refreſhed with moderate cooling ſhowers; and no noxious fens, nor ſalt marſhes annoy them. They are uſed alſo to climb the ſteep hill between the town in Chapel-valley and their plantation; which hill is ſo ſteep, that, having a ladder in the middle of it, they call it Ladder-hill; and this cannot be avoided without going three or four miles about; ſo that they ſeldom want air or exerciſe, the great preſervers of health. As to the genius and temper of theſe people, they ſeemed to us the moſt honeſt, the moſt inoffenſive, and the moſt hoſpitable people we ever met with of Engliſh extraction, having ſcarce any tincture of avarice or ambition. We aſked ſome of them, if they had no curioſity to ſee the reſt of the world, and how they could confine themſelves to ſo ſmall a ſpot of earth, ſeparated at ſuch a diſtance from the reſt of mankind? They replied, that they enjoyed the neceſſaries of life in great plenty: they were neither parched with exceſſive heat, or pinched with cold: they lived in perfect ſecurity; in no danger of enemies, of robbers, wild beaſts, or rigorous ſeaſons; and were happy in the enjoyment of a continued ſtate of health: that as there were no rich men among them (ſcarce any planter being worth more than a thouſand dollars) ſo there were no poor in the iſland, no man being worth

leſs than four hundred dollars, and conſequently not obliged to undergo more labour than was neceſſary to keep him in health.

Our thoughts were now employed on returning to our native ſhore; and having ſufficiently recruited our ſtores, on Saturday the 4th of May, we weighed, and ſailed out of the road in company with the Portland man of war, and his convoy, conſiſting of twelve ſail of Eaſt Indiamen. With this fleet we continued our courſe for England until Friday the 10th, when perceiving they out-ſailed us, and conſequently might make their port before us, Capt. Cook, for this reaſon, made the ſignal to ſpeak with the Portland, upon which Capt. Elliot came on board the Endeavour; to whom a letter for the admiralty was delivered, with a box, containing the common log books of the ſhip, and the journals of ſome of the officers. We did not loſe ſight of the fleet till Thurſday the 23d, when they parted from us; and about one o'clock in the afternoon, we loſt our firſt lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, an active, ſkilful, judicious, and uſeful officer. He died of a conſumption, of which lingering diſorder he diſcovered ſome ſymptoms when he left England; ſo that it may be truly ſaid, that he was dying the whole voyage; and his decline was very gradual till we arrived at Batavia, from whence to the time of his diſſolution, the ſlow conſuming diſeaſe gained ſtrength daily. The whole ſhip's company attended the funeral rites, and in the evening we committed his body to the ſea with the uſual ceremonies. The next day the captain appointed Mr. Charles Clerk, a young man, to act in the room of Mr. Hicks.

We now every day drew nearer our deſired haven; but what muſt be the condition of our once good ſhip, the Endeavour, may eaſily be imagined, from a ſlight recollection of the hardſhips ſhe had ſurmounted, and the dangers ſhe had providentially eſcaped. At this time our rigging and ſails were ſo weather-beaten, that

that every day ſomething was giving way. However, we held on our courſe, without any material occurrence that might endanger our ſafety, till Monday the 10th of June, when, to our great joy, Nicholas Young, the boy who firſt diſcovered New Zealand, called out land from the maſt head, which proved to be the Lizard. The next day, being Tueſday, the eleventh, we proceeded up the channel. On Wedneſday the 12th, with the pleaſing hopes of ſeeing our relatives and friends, exciting ſenſations not to be deſcribed by the pen of the moſt able writer, we paſſed Beachy Head. At noon, to our inexpreſſible joy we were a-breaſt of Dover; and about three o'clock, P. M. we came to an anchor in the Downs. When we landed at Deal, our ſhip's company indulged freely that mirth, and ſociable jollity, common to all Engliſh ſailors upon their return from a long voyage, who as readily forget hardſhips and dangers, as with alacrity and bravery they encounter them.

We cannot cloſe this book without joining in that general cenſure, which has been juſtly beſtowed on Dr. Hawkeſworth, the late compiler of a former account of this voyage of the Endeavour. An infidel may imbibe what deiſtical chimeras may be beſt adapted to the gloomy temper of his mind; but we cannot but think him highly culpable in forcing them into a work of this kind; for though it may be ſaid, that, with reſpect to efficient and final cauſes, the opinion of a general and particular Providence will form one and the ſame concluſion, yet we think it is of great comfort to all men, particularly to thoſe who can trace the wonders of an almighty hand in the deep, to be ſenſible of a merciful interpoſition, concerned, and ever attentive to their ſupport, preſervation, and deliverance in times of danger. Beſides, this ſentiment of a divine agent ſuperintending, and correcting the diſorders introduced by natural and moral evil, is, undoubtedly a ſcripture-doctrine; and from the deductions of the mere light

of nature, it muſt appear unreaſonable to ſuppoſe, that the firſt Great Cauſe who planned the whole grand ſcheme of creation, ſhould not be allowed to interfere with reſpect to particular parts, or individuals, as occaſion, circumſtances, or times may require. And whoever has duly conſidered the wonderful protection of the Endeavour in caſes of danger the moſt imminent, particularly when encircled, in the wide ocean, with rocks of coral, her ſheathing beaten off, and her falſe-keel floating by her ſide, a hole in her bottom, and the men by turns fainting at the pumps, cannot but acknowledge the exiſtence of a Particular Providence. The hiſtory of Joſeph can only afford a more ſtriking inſtance of the interpoſition of a divine inviſible hand. This our countrymen experienced; and we have good authority to aſſert, that our company in the Endeavour do acknowledge, notwithſtanding the private opinion of the above mentioned compiler, that the hand of ſuperior power was particularly concerned in their protection and deliverance. This omniſcient and omnipotent power it is the incumbent duty of every chriſtian to believe, confide in, and adore.